The Romance of Guy of Warwick.

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxy-vi.

1875-6.
The Romance of

Guy of Warwick.

The second or 15th-century Version.

EDITED FROM THE PAPER MS. Ff. 2. 38.
IN THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY, CAMBRIDGE,

BY

DR. JULIUS ZUPITZA,
PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF BERLIN, LATE PROFESSOR IN THE UNIVERSITY OF VIENNA.

LONDON:
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,
BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXV-VI.
§ 1. All the M.E. versions of the Romance of Guy of Warwick are translations from the French. Unfortunately the French original has not yet been entirely edited. It occurs perhaps in more MSS. than I have become aware of. I know of the existence of eight, three of which are in London (Reg. MS. 8 F ix, Harley MS. 3775, and one in the College of Arms), the rest at Oxford (Rawlinson MS. Misc. 137), at Cambridge (Corpus Christi College, L), at Cheltenham, at Wolfenbüttel (Cod. Aug. 87, 4), and in Paris (1669). Mr G. A. Herbing has edited the beginning of the work from the Wolfenbüttel MS. in the Programm der grossen Stadtschule zu Wismar als Einladung zur Michaelisprüfung 1872, for a copy of which I am indebted to the editor's kindness. Prof. Stengel of Marburg was good enough to lend me a copy of the Rawlinson Fragment, made by Mr Parker, and collated with, and, in part, supplied from, the Reg. MS. by himself. The Harley and the Cambridge MSS. have been for many passages consulted by myself. In the notes, unless a particular MS. or Mr Herbing's publication be mentioned, always the Cambridge MS. is meant.

§ 2. The French Romance was done into English several times. We possess the whole, or considerable fragments, of, at least, four different M.E. versions. Cf. my paper Zur Litteraturgeschichte des Guy von Warwick in the Sitzungsberichte der phil.-hist. Classe der kais. Academie der Wissenschaften, vol. lxxiv, pp. 623-45.

I., in short couplets, incompletely preserved in three MSS.: 

a, in the Auchinleck MS., fol. 108-146, edited by Turnbull for the Abbotsford Club, 1840 (ll. 1-6898). The beginning (about 60
lines) is wanting in consequence of a leaf torn out. Another leaf is missing after l. 2336 (where Turnbull is wrong in indicating a gap of only four lines), and the larger part of a third after l. 1936 (where Turnbull is alike inaccurate, at the same time disregarding the ends of some 30 lines). In this MS. the story stops short after Guy's fight with the Dragon, the last line corresponding to l. 6966 of our text. The rest is replaced by II.; see below.

b, in the Caius MS., Cambridge, 107. As far as a goes, b has, though with considerable omissions, the same version, but, after a has stopped, b, in two pretty long passages (cf. § 4), follows the same version as our text. The story is not continued after the death of Guy and Felice.

c, in the Sloane MS. 1044. It is only one leaf (fol. 345, nr. 625), written in a hand of the 14th century, containing 216 lines, which I have printed in my paper cited above, pp. 624-9. This fragment begins after the end of a. On comparing it with the French original and b, we find it to have the same version as b, but with considerable interpolations. Cf. my paper, p. 634.

II., in twelve line stanzas, in the Auchinleck MS. It is the continuation of Guy's story from his marriage (foll. 146-167, ll. 6899-10479 in Turnbull's edition), and the story of Reinbrun, Gy sone of Warwike (foll. 167-175, ll. 1-1521 in Turnbull's edition). Of the latter the end is missing.

III., in short couplets;

a, some fragments in the Add. MS. 14408 of the British Museum, written in a hand of the 14th century. They have been privately printed by Sir Thomas Philipps (Middle Hill, 1838), and reprinted by Turnbull in the preface to his edition of Guy from the Auchinleck MS. They are in part very difficult to read, so that we must not wonder that the editions of them are very incomplete and abound in mistakes. Cf. my paper, p. 638.

b, in the Bodleian Library (Douce Fragments, 20), one leaf in black-letter. 'The same type as that used in the fragments of Bevis of Hampton and Robyn Hode, and several other books . . ., all of which were certainly printed by Wynkyn de Worde.' It agrees very closely with c.
Preface.

C, the Booke of the moste victoryous Prynce, Guy of Warwick. Imprynted at London in Lothbury, over agaynst saynt Margarits Church by wylliam Copland. I do not know where a complete copy of this work is to be found. The British Museum one wants the first twenty leaves. That C has the same version as A, only modernized, is shown in my paper, p. 640.

IV., in short couplets;

A, in the MS. of the University Library, Cambridge, Ff. 2, 38, printed here for the first time.

B, in the Caius MS. 107, in the passages pointed out below (§ 4). I do not know anything about Cawood's Guy, nor about a fragment of 36 leaves 'printed in a thinner letter than W. de Worde's' (cf. Warton, ed. Hazlitt, II, 162). I should be greatly obliged for any information about these editions, as well as about a complete copy of Copland's.

§ 3. Our text is taken from the Paper MS. Ff. 2, 38, in the Library of the University of Cambridge. Its old number was 690. In this MS., though it is written in the same hand of the 15th century, yet two originally distinct volumes are united, the Romance of Guy heading the second. It occupies fol. 121-239 according to the new pagination of Mr Bradshaw, or foll. 107-225 according to the old one. As I follow the former, and Mr Halliwell in his Dictionary, in which Guy from this MS. is pretty often cited, follows the latter, whosoever will verify Halliwell's quotations must add 14 to his number in order to get mine. Halliwell, e.g., quotes fol. 182, s.v. Tarne. Adding 14, we get fol. 196; cf. ll. 5521-2 and the note. Our poem is written in two columns, each generally containing about 40 lines. The catchwords, and perhaps what is mentioned in the foot-note to l. 7455, we owe to another hand, to which I think we must attribute also per me Robertum in the left margin of fol. 163b. We find besides some scribblings in the margins of foll. 167a (ll. 942-945 repeated), 1706 (Liber iste constat mihi), 179b, 180a, and 200b. The poem is divided into parts, marked by large initials, originally red, but now generally black. I thought it, however, necessary to make besides shorter divisions, which are indicated by ¶. This sign occurs in the MS. itself only in three places, viz. before ll. 7487, 11267, and 11337.
§ 4. Part of the same version is preserved also in MS. 107 of Caius College, Cambridge. It is a parchment MS. written about the beginning of the 15th century by two scribes, one of whom wrote pp. 1-2, and 150-271 (the end), and the other the rest. The lines of our text that occur also in this MS. are

\[ 7261 - 8024 = \text{pp. 149, l. 25} - 175, \text{l. 20, and} \]
\[ 8541 - 9874 = \text{pp. 195, l. 4} - 242, \text{l. 20.} \]

This MS. will be printed at full length in another volume, but I have used it in correcting or, at least, pointing out obvious faults of the University MS. I will give here as a specimen twenty lines from p. 175, which correspond to ll. 8015-8036 of our text.

But vp he stert withowte dwellyng:
   Therof pleyned he nothyng.
   He smote to Gye with all hys myjt
   And he hym, as a noble knyt.

5 Tho they fowghten ryght faste there:
   Nother of hem wold other spare.
   They fowght with so grete ire,
   Oute of ther helmis sprange the fyre.
   They breke lawnderberkis (sic/) and shyl dys:

10 The pecis flew into the fyldys.
   They fought so faste with her bredys,
   They corue theire armour with strengh of handys.
   Betwene them was bateyle stronge
   And hyt lastyd swyth longe.

15 Tho thought Ameraunt, tho (sic/) knyght,
   That he had be in many a fyght.
   Vp he lyfte hys arme on hye
   And thought to smyte sore sir Gye.
   On the helme he hym smote:

20 The sercle of gold of hys swerd bote.

A comparison with our text shows that ll. 1-10 are all but identical with ll. 8015-8024, whereas ll. 11-20 are quite different from ll. 8025-8036.

§ 5. In those passages which are preserved also in the Caius MS., our text is sometimes so corrupt that it would be impossible to correct it by mere conjecture with any probability of restoring the original reading. Sometimes, though it is apparently correct, yet a comparison with the Caius MS. and the French original shows it to have deviated from the author's translation. We may, therefore, be sure that in those lines in which we want the help of a second MS. have taken place a great many corruptions which we either do not
perceive at all, or, if we do, must despair of healing. Hence I was, upon the whole, content to correct obvious faults of the last scribe. But, of course, every such deviation from the MS. is mentioned in the foot-notes and, generally, justified in the notes. Only in a few trifles I do not follow the MS. without mentioning it.

\[a\] I have regulated the use of capital letters, whereas in our MS. (as in others) we find now Erle, now erle; now Gye, now gye, and often do not know whether the scribe meant Harrawde or harrawde. Thinking (with Skeat) \(f\) to mean \(F\), I have never kept it. By a mistake, the first sheet has a few inconsistent capitals.

\[b\] The MS. makes no difference between \(i\) and \(j\), \(I\) and \(J\).

\[c\] Compound pronouns and adverbs I have printed as single words, e.g. hymself, perwyth. The MS. has hymself and hym self, etc.

\[d\] The punctuation is mine, the MS. disregarding it entirely, except that a few times a stop is found in such cases as \(of\). of in l. 2906. It will be kindly excused, I hope, that my punctuation follows the German method.

My foot-note to l. 8402 shows that I think \(w\) to mean no more than \(n\). It is often difficult, and sometimes impossible to decide whether the MS. has \(w\) or \(n\). My copy of the MS., therefore, disregarded the flourish after \(n\). It was, however, on Mr Furnivall's desire, added, while the text was passing through the press, on sheets 2-10 by me, on the others by Mr Miller, of the University Library, Cambridge, who was good enough to read part of the proofs with the MS.

§ 6. As the last volume of the M.E. Guy Romances will be accompanied by a general introduction,\(^1\) literary as well as philological, I will avail myself of the present occasion only to treat of the rhymes of our text.

\[a\] A great many rhymes seem only imperfect in consequence of the scribe's orthography or dialect differing from the author's.

\[a\] Often one rhyme word only has a final \(e\) added: e.g., l. 47, Bokyngham: name; l. 69, pryse: wyse. But the final unaccented \(e\), except when standing for \(y\) (cf. note to l. 132), is silent through the whole poem.

\(^1\) In the mean time cf. The Percy Folio MS., ed. Hales and Furnivall, II.
β. The scribe often writes a silent e before terminations; cf. l. 31, otheys: clothys; l. 869, loweyng: kyng; l. 3037, thynge: looweynge; l. 3819, thynge: wepeynghe; l. 4083, mornynge: loweynge; l. 4213, stedys: medeys; l. 9547, kepeyng: kyng; l. 10071, nothyng: slepeynghe.

γ. Some terminations may be differently spelled; cf. l. 1467, togedur: toschyder; l. 2011, scheldes: feldus; l. 10067, plenyng: lenyng; l. 10883, steelys: meys; l. 19547, kepeyng: kyng; l. 110071, nothyng: slepeynghe.

δ. Terminations beginning with e or y may drop their vowels; cf. l. 160, clothe: goyth (cf. l. 11061, hors: goys); l. 1697, avyse: enmyes; l. 3737, seyde: betrayed; l. 6013, tyde: hyedde; ll. 8545 and 9921, barowns: towns; l. 9943, cuntroyse: abbayes; l. 10161, assayed: payde; l. 10303, vpbrayde: dysmayede; l. 11289, schelys: teldes.

ε. In words of Teutonic origin o may be used instead of a short a before n; cf. l. 109, man: sone; l. 1577, man: zone; ll. 2763 and 4227, lande: honde; ll. 3065 and 5115, fonde: tythande; l. 3562, launde: fonde; l. 4079, fonde: slepande; l. 4371, sonde: tythande; l. 7273, londe: lygande; l. 7453, londe: folowande; l. 9125, hande: fonde; l. 10069, man: on; l. 10185, vpon: man; l. 10229, Collebrande: stronge; l. 10835, londe: hande; l. 11859, prekande: fonde; l. 11873, londe: werrande; l. 11887, stande: londe.

ζ. We find apparently a: o before n in l. 1015, Toralde: bolde, and l. 4229, cadle: wolde. The poet, no doubt, pronounced balde and waldel.

η. A similar case occurs before gh: l. 265, nort: betagh; l. 10045, betagh: roght; l. 10929, raught: noght. In the poet’s pronunciation evidently O.E. -âht- and -oht- sounded alike, whereas the scribe kept them asunder.

iode. In the note to l. 3108 I have pointed out that the dialect of the author was more northern than that of the scribe. This is further proved by the rhymes sub ζ and by our often finding ò (= O.E. â or ȧ) written by the scribe where the rhyme requires a: cf. l. 1475, glode: hadde; l. 1443, gone: mane; ll. 1764 and 2807, tane:
gone; l. 2531, gone: tane; ll. 3015 and 7939, sowdan: anon; l. 3345, oon: tane; l. 3591, fare: thore; l. 3693, Coldran: allone; l. 3701, tane: allone; l. 3815, sowdan: allone; l. 4611, woman: none; l. 5741, echeon: tane; l. 6347, everychone: tane; l. 7447, oon: man; l. 7673, gone: Johan; l. 8369, man: everychone; l. 9997, Johan: Adelston.

i. Quite similar is aw: ow; cf. l. 7757, sawe: knowe; l. 11533, throwe: lawe.

κ. In words of French origin a before n followed by a consonant may be kept or changed to au (aw); cf. l. 7987, Amerawnt: say- leant; l. 8045, hande: Ameraivnde.

λ. The Latin termination -onem, French -on, appears promis- cuously as -ON and -own. Cf. l. 355, reson: downe; l. 485, beneson: towne; l. 973, treson: crowne; l. 1135, Hewchon: crowne; l. 2129, barons: prysouns; ll. 2281, 6729, 7787, 9261, Gyonne: resone; l. 2783, renowne: resone; l. 3603, baron: passioun; ll. 3875, 8295, Gyonne: lyon; l. 3993, lyon: Gyonne; ll. 4561 and 5109, crowne: Oton, etc., etc.

μ. Similarly we find -or-: -owr-. Cf. ll. 7455 and 7489, Triamore: honowre; l. 7475, socowre: Triamore; l. 3649, valoure: pore; l. 5213, socowre: worre.

ν. Some words have two forms, one with the diphthong ey, and the other with the monophthong y. See Ellis, On Early E. Pronunciation, 284. Cf. l. 539, hye (= high): eye; l. 971, neye: hye; l. 4095, eye: dye; ll. 7387 and 11591, sekerlye: eye; l. 8483, bye (= buy): affraye; l. 10415, bewrye (= bewray): tiveye (= twain); l. 10563, seye: dye; l. 10797, dye: weye. Can the two rhymes, l. 5603, palfrey: Payuye, and l. 8517, envye: seye, be explained in the same manner? Cf. the spelling Payuye in l. 1804, but also the note to ll. 1800-10.

ξ. Sometimes when the scribe writes herke, herte, etc., the author appears to have pronounced harke, harte. Cf. l. 209, servue: carve; l. 975, starte: herte; l. 1951, starte: smerte; l. 5053, scharpe: hawberke; l. 6905, hawberke: starke; l. 7901, hawberke: marke; l. 8147, herke: marke; l. 10295, harde: aferde.

ο. In ll. 6675, 9987, 10485, the rhymes become perfect when
we read chyrche (for churche): wyrche (or kyrke: wyrke ?); dud(de): stud(de) (cf. ll. 10545 and 10683).

\( \pi \). There seem to occur a few rhymes of voice-consonants with breath-consonants; cf. l. 2061, hande: warante; l. 3781, Harrawde: asawte; l. 4991, partes: Lumbardes; l. 19727, wyfe: on lyue. But considering such rhymes and spellings as l. 7987, Amerawnt: asaiote; l. 5057, Lumharte: part; l. 4993, Barrart: part; l. 8193, smarte: cowarte; l. 8193, smarte: cowarte; l. 7847, hande: couenande; l. 7847, hande: couenande; l. 7847, hande: couenande; l. 819, on lyue: wyue (cf. note to l. 820), we can scarcely help concluding that the poet as well as the scribe were apt to pronounce final voice-consonants (for the final e is silent) as breath-consonants (cf. Sanskrit, M.H.G., and N.H.G. dialects). In ll. 4991-2, partes: Lumbarts must be read.

\( b \). But there occur many really imperfect rhymes.

\( a a \). Rhymes imperfect as to the consonants.

\( a \). Labials: dentals: gutturals, especially very often m: n. Cf. blanne: came, ll. 3637 and 11949; came: man, ll. 215, 1799, 10483; man: came, l. 6257; them: men, l. 9; Barrardyne: pylgryme, l. 9529; brymne: peryne, l. 8277; cosyn: grymme, l. 4145; hym: kynne, l. 8089; slaunyn, l. 10379; theryme, l. 3005; pylgryme: Barrardyne, l. 9595; kynne, l. 9747; Martyne, ll. 1403, 9541; myne, l. 9719; slaunyn, ll. 10507, 10609; wyne, 10585; tyme: myne, l. 691; Segwynne, l. 2599; anon: whome, l. 9899; Argone: Rome, l. 1527; come: anon, ll. 2539, 9159, 10185; sone, ll. 10453, 11279; done: dome, l. 11757; gone: home, l. 9145; Ryngdome, l. 8533; goon: nome, l. 901; grome: Gyowne, l. 7103; sone, 8415; home: everychone, ll. 3457, 6375; pryson: rawnsome, ll. 953, 1745, 5261; rawnsome: pryson, l. 7479; sone: come, ll. 6557, 10895; ycome, 10439; nome, l. 9981; overcome, l. 10389; sonnes: gromes, l. 2017.—Cf. besides t: k; smate: brace, l. 5083; stroke: smote, l. 10285; laste: aske, l. 8927.—d: g (only after n); londe: stronge,
PREFACE.

1. 8211; fynde: prayinge, l. 9675; tythyng, l. 11889; Collebrande: stronge, l. 10229; bronde: stronge, l. 10325.—p: k; scapyd: makyd, l. 10903; scharpe: hawberke, l. 5053.—th: u or f; swythe: of lyne, l. 2239; wyfe, l. 4377. Cf. note to l. 1468. But the rhymes p: t, and pt: tt in our poem are certainly owing only to the scribe. Cf. notes to ll. 2534 and 10347.

β. A consonant wanting in one rhyme-word (cf. also the note to l. 5527).

aa. gh; cf. l. 3219, ryght: yst; l. 9505, hyt: nyght; l. 10859, ynoht: too (cf. l. 8953, ynowe: also).

ββ. r; l. 11061, hors: goys (better gos; cf. a, ë). Cf. also the notes to ll. 6682, 8930 and 10031, and the foot-note to l. 8412.

γ. Miscellaneous irregularities.

aa. s: sch; l. 11, sothefastenes: angwysche; l. 2817, wyse: englysche; l. 7727, flesche: wyldernessse; l. 3959, ravyscht(l): beste. But there is a mistake in l. 11315, elaysche: ys (cf. the note).


γγ. L: N, l. 8159, shoulder: sonder.


bb. Rhymes imperfect as to the quality of the vowels (difference in their quantity does not seem to have been much objected to).

α. A: E. The only certain instance occurs in l. 6543, haste: beste; for we might read lest in l. 1495 (laste: beste); feste in l. 1969 (faste: prest); mast in l. 10639 or lest in l. 10640 (meest: laste); dale in l. 10868 (admerall: dell). Cf. besides notes to ll. 1363, 3332, 3351, 3988, 4037, 6737, 8391, 8916, 10531, and § 6 α, ë.

β. A: Y; l. 8351, haste: Cryste.

γ. A: U; l. 1923, parte: hurte. Or does hurte stand for harte, heart, courage?

d. A: Ay (ey); l. 2357, man: Almayn; l. 2729, Sysane: payne (but see the note); l. 2993, sowdan: layne; l. 4995, Jordan: Melayn (?); l. 6529, pase: deyse; l. 6571, was: dayse; l. 8071, made: sayde. Cf. the note to l. 1126.

ε. A: Oy; l. 6549, was: noyse.
xv

\[ \zeta \] E : Y ; l. 1821, wyutterlye: lee; l. 3085, mayne: l. hye; 3787, companye: thre; l. 3865, mayne: sekerlye; l. 4925 and 11295, plente: hye; l. 5615, see: nye; l. 5367, charyte: sekerlye; l. 7879, gramercye: me; l. 8661, the: gramercye; l. 8663, folye: contre; l. 8909, meyne: sekerlye; l. 9059 and 9151, cyte: Tyrrye; l. 9745, Tyrrye: me; l. 9983, pyte: sekerlye; l. 261, hyde: glede; l. 1467, togedur: toschyder; l. 625, well: gentyll; l. 1643, stylle: stele; l. 5047, stale: eyyll; l. 5637, counsell: wyll; l. 6091, stele: wyll; l. 10403, telle: wyll; l. 10865, well: wyll; l. 11299, telle: nyle; l. 6561, chylde: falde (but in l. 731, felde, schylde; l. 5023, schylde: felde, and l. 11197, schylde: helde we must perhaps read schelde, schelde; and similarly swerde and swerdus in l. 8253, swyrde: aferde and l. 8153, sceldus: swyrbus); l. 83, then: kynne; l. 2793, ymne: brenne; l. 2901, then: pyne; l. 4077, renne: ymne; l. 7733 and 7957, sarsyn(e): kene; l. 273, hende: mynde; l. 2505 and 2921, behynde: schende; l. 2743, vende (but the author might have written wynde): fynde; l. 10163, hende: behynde; l. 487, schyppe: lepe; l. 1465, yre: pere; l. 5, herke: wyrke; l. 417, gytte: herte; l. 11, sothfastenes: angwysche; l. 3488, lesse: ys; l. 3959, revysch (but the poet may have written revest): beste. In such cases we often find e written for y; cf. l. 655, free: maystree; l. 1972, fle: boldele; l. 2367, compane: me; l. 4175, cyte: vylene; l. 4527, tree: Tyrrre; l. 7389, tre: vylane; l. 7655, tre: sore; l. 7735, the: wyutterlye; l. 9693, the: gylte; l. 11601, veline: free (cf. the note to l. 132); l. 11067, men: fenne. Cf. also servues: marches, l. 5251.

\[ \eta \] E : ey, l. 889, heyre: dere; l. 10227, leyde: nede. But in l. 11049, ageyne: grine the author may have written agen. Cf. also the notes to ll. 9031-2 and 10175.

\[ \theta \] Y : ey, l. 5603, palfrey: Payyye; l. 8517, envye: seye. But cf. above, a, v.

\[ \upsilon \] O : ou (ow) monophthongal, l. 201, wounds: stonde; l. 217, adowne: soone; l. 1353, stonde: gronymde; 3729, gronnde: stonde; 8037, bronde: gronnde; l. 8159, schoulder: sonder; l. 8337, towne: gone; l. 8343, Symonde: stownde; l. 8411, stone: Reyn- bowrne (i.e. Reynubrowne); l. 9713, fownde: londe; l. 10024, downe:
gone; l. 10259, gold: schoulde. But such rhymes as l. 2855, Rayndowne: none; l. 3745, swevon: Gyowne; l. 8241, lemmon: Mahowne; l. 9927, everychone: relygyown; l. 3649, valoure: pore; l. 5213, socoure: worre belong to a, λ and μ.

k. o : ow diphthongal, l. 8953, ynowe: also (cf. l. 10860, ynogh: too).

λ. EY : oy, l. 11223, yoye: they; cf. note to l. 2727.


v. ow monophthongal: ow diphthongal, l. 9555, knowe: prowé.

My warmest thanks are due to all my Cambridge friends, especially to Mr Bradshaw, Mr Bensly, Prof. Mayor, and the Rev. S. S. Lewis, for the kindness shown to me while I was copying the MS.; to Mr Furnivall for his friendly advice and help, and to Mr Miller for reading part of the proofs with the MS.

J. Z.

Berlin, October, 1876.
Guy of Warwick.

[Cambridge University MS, Ef 2. 38.]

Sythe þe tyme, þat god was borne
And Crystendome was set and sworne,
Mane adventewres hathe befallte,
That þyt be not knowne alle;
Therfore schulde men mekely herke
And thiynke gode allwye to wyrke
And take ensawwpull be wyse men,
That haue before thys tyme ben:
Well feyre aventurs befelle them
(And sythen scheweyd to mony men),
For þat they leuyd¹ in sothefastenes,
In grete trauell and in angwysche.
Of gode menys lyuys men schulde here
And of þer gode dedys sythen lere:
He, that myght lerne and holde faste,
He schulde wexe wyse at the laste.
Hyt ys holdyn grete maystry
To holde wysdome and leue folye.

† Of an Erle y wyll yow telle
(Of a better may no man spele)
And of hys stewarde bright of hewe,
That was bothe gode and trewe,
And of hys sone, that good squyere,
Whyll he was hole and fere,
And howe he louyd a may þynge,
The Erlys doghtur, a swete thyngue.

†† The Erle was of Ynglonde
And helde Warwyk in hys honde:

¹ MS. originally 'louyd.' in added over the line.

WARWICK.
SIR ROHOLDE AND HIS LOVELY DAUGHTER.

and was very rich
He was ryche, wythowten otherys,
Of golde and sylver and many woollys,
Of stronge castels and cyteys ryche:

and powerful.
In all that londe was none hym lyche,
Knyght nor swayne, in no wyse,
That durste agenste hym ryse,

[leaf 161 a, col. 2]
But pat he toke them, as thefe folow,
And caste them in his pryson.
Well he louyd feyre stedys
And gane gyroys and grete medys;
Therfore all men hym dradde
And to hym grete loue hadde.
Erle he was of grete poste
And lorde ouyr that cuntre:

He was also lord
of Oxford
Of Oxonford all the blys,
Every daye hym was hym;

and of Buckingham.
Of the Erledame of Bokyngham
Lorde he was and bare the name.

His name was
Roholde.
Syr Roholde, for sothe, he hyght:
He was a nobull man and a wyght.

He had a
daughter,
who was very
beautiful
¶ A doghtur he had he blys countes,
Ther myght no man telle hur fayrenes.
Lysten to me: telle y wyll
Of hur bewte; for that ys skylle.
Whyte sche was, as felde flower;
Hur vysage was of feyr colour, 
Longe, small and well farynge;
Feyre mowthe and nose syttyng,
Feyre forhede and feyr here.
Soche a mayde was neuer zere,
So feyr eschapyn and wele dyght:
Joye hym was to see that syght.

and accomplished.
Wyse sche was and curtes of mowthe,

1 MS. Bokyngham.
All the vii arse sche cowthe.
Sche had maysturs at hur honde,
The wysest men of that londe,
And taght hur astronomye,
Arsmetryck and gemetrye.
That mayde was of grete prys,
For sche was bothe warre and wyse.

† Dewkys, erlys of grete kynne
Of mony a londe come hur to wynne :
Of them all wolde sche none
For the godenes, that was hur ow.
Wele feyre was that damycell
Hyr name was Felys la Belle.¹
Of all maydenys sche bare ðe² flowre :
That tyme was none of³ hur honowre.
Yf men soght all mankynde,
A feyrer maye schall no man fynde.
Who so schulde the fayrenes telle,
All to longe schulde he dwelle.

† Now of þe stewarde speke we then,
For he was comyn of ryche kyune.
A man he was of grete myght :
In hys tyme ther was no knyght,
Of armes, of strenkyth of honde
That bare soche pryse in all þat londe.
In Wallyngforde he was borne :
All that londe to hym was sworne.
He was a man of grete poste :
Ther was none bettur on þat halfe þe see.
He cowde ynogh of nobull seruyse,
Therfore he was of nobull pryce.
Ther was noon in all that londe,
That durste ajenste ðys lorde stonde,
But he batyd anon ðys boste
Wyth the strenkyth of ðys hooste

¹ MS. felysabelle. ² MS. þe ³ of over the line.
And toke hym wyth folke ynowe,
Yf they into Scotlonde flowe.

He enforced such public order
He helde all hys lordys londe
Wyth grete honoure vndwr hys honde.

that a man loaded with gold
He made pees, as he wolde:
loaded not be afraid of a robber.

He was called Seqwarde.
Yf a man were chargyd wyth golde,
He schulde fynde no robber hym to reeve,
That wolde take oght agenste hys leue.

He had a son,
Segwarde was the stewardys name,
A trewe man, wythowten fame,
A bettur stewarde had no man.

who was courteous
That ylke stewarde had a sone,
and well educated.

He was Earl Rohold’s emp-
bearer.

Nodur of hye nor of lowe.
Curtes he was and wyse of lore
And wel belouyd wyth lesse and more.
The Erle Roholde he servyd than:
The Erle louyd that squyere,
Before all odur he louyd hym dere.
Of hys cowpe he servyd hym on a day,
In pe knyghtys chaumbur he laye.
Goode he was and bryght of hewe:
He wolde not hym chawnge for no newe.

His name was Guy of Warwick.

Gye he hyght of Warwykk:
In all pe londe was now hym lyke.
Ther was nodur squyer nor knyxt,
But pey hym louyd wyth all pe myxt,
And he pem gafe gyftys wythall,
So pat he was louyd of all.

Being liberal,
Thorow feyrenes and strenkyp allone
They honowred hym everychone.
Feyre he was and bryght of face:
He schone as bryxt, as ane glace.

beautiful, and
Hys kynne was wondur joyfull pan,
strong, Guy was loved
That he waxe so feyre a man.
and honoured by

all.
GUY OF WARWICK WAITS ON FELICE LA BELLE.

Hende he was and mylde of mode:
All men speke of hym grete gode.
Wyth a swyrde he cowde well pleye
And pryck a stede in a weye.
Gye had to maystyr a knyght
(Syr Harrawde of Ardurne he hy3t),
A nobull knyght and an hardye
Full well he taght aye Gye.

At Whytsontyde felle a daye,
As yow telle may,
The Erle made a grete feste
Of lordys of pat londe honeste:
Knyghtys, erlys and barons
Come thedur fro many townes;
Ladyes and maydenys free
Come þedur fro mony a cuntre.
Knyghtys sate in the halle,
Ladyes in the chaumbur alle.

When þey were to mete sett,
Gye came and þe Erle grett.
The Erle clepyd Gye anon)
(A sylke gowne he had vppow):
He badde hym go to chaumbur stylle
And serve hys doghtur at hur wylle.
Wele he besemed that ylke clothe:
To chaumbur forthe anon he goyth.
Gye on hys kneys sone hym sett |
And that maydynþ feyre he grett.
'Madame,' he seyde, 'god the see.
Thy lorde the gretyth well be me
And comawndyd, y schulde, par ma faye,
Before the serve thys same daye.'
Felys askyd at that case,
Who that Gyes fadur was.
'My fadur,' he seyde, 'hyght Seqwarde,
That ys thy lordys stewarde.'
praised Seqwarde and his race.
The mayde seyde: 'Seqwarde ys gode,
And so be all, \textit{pat} be of his blode.' 172

\textit{If} Than can \textit{pe} maydyn vp stande
And askyd watur to hur hande.
The maydenys wysche \textit{wyth}owten lett
And to \textit{per} mete they ben sett. 176

\textbf{At table}
Guy acquitted himself
Gye entendyd all that daye
To serve that lady to hur paye.
so well
There were maydenys thretty,
That for his seruyse in the halle
that thirty maidens
There loue on hym can falle.

\textbf{fell in love with him,}
But he cared
only for Felice,
whom he loved
above all things.
[leaf 162 a, col. 2]
Towards evening,
\textit{If} Aftur \textit{pe} mete (hyt waxyd nere eve)

\textbf{having taken leave of her,}
he went home,
a sorry man,

\textbf{Guy was}
Nowe sorowede Gye nyght \textit{and} daye,
That he ne wyste, what he do may. 192

love-sick.
He ys full of sorowe and care:
Full longe ne may he wele fare.
Ofte he began to syke and wepe.

He wakenyd ofte, when he schulde slepe:
On nyght, when odur men had reste,
Then was dys sorowe all preste.

When odur lye, \textit{pen} wyll he stonde:
For sorowe \textit{pen} wryngyp he hys honde.
Loue hath geuyn hym soche a wounde,
That he may not wele stonde.

He often wished that he never had been born.

His illness lasted for a whole fortnight.
Hys sorowe hym lastyd day \textit{and} nyght.
All that ylke fowrtnyght.
Gye ys moche bemoonyd of all
In pe Erlys cowrte and in pe Kyngys halle;
For he was wonte there to serue
Before the Erle hys mete to carue.
All, pate pere were, bope moost and leeste
Of Gye they had a grete breste.

When pe feste was broght to ende
And lordyngys can home wende,
Gye then to cowrte came,
A carefull and a sory man.
Before the mayde felle Gye adowne
And seyde: 'for py lone y muste dye soone.'
The mayde lokyd on Gye full grymme
And wele wrothely answeryd hym:
'Art thou not Sewardes sone Gye?
Who made the so folheardye
For to assaye me of loue?
Be Ieseu, that syttythy aboue,
And y pys my fadur telle vnto,
For pys worde he wyll the sloo,
Soone that pou schalt be drawe,
On galowse hangyd, and put ys lawe.
On grete folye pou the bethoght,
When pou me of lone besoght.
Neuer dud man me that vylenye
To assaye me of folye.
Wende hens owt of my syght,
Or pou schalt dye, my trowpe y plyzt.'

When Gye these wordys harde,
To hys inne soone he farde.
Now begynnyth hys sorowe newe:
Ther louyd neuer man 3yt so trewe.
Nyght and day he ys in sorowe,
Late on euyn, 3arly on morowe.
For loue now may he haue no reste:
Ofte he desyryd, hys hert schulde breste.

He was pitied and missed by all.
He was pitied
After the close of the festival, Guy opened
his heart to Felice.
But she called him fool-hardy,
[leaf 162 b, col. 1]
threatening him with her father's wrath in case she should tell him,
which she certainly would do
if he did not get out of her sight immediately.
Guy went home,
and his misery began anew.

For loun may he have no reste:
Ofte he desyryd, hys hert schulde breste.
FELICE’S REFUSAL MAKES GUY VERY ILL.

Into a chaumbur he ys gone:
Ther wyste¹ no man, but he allone.
There he felle in swownyng downe:
The chaumbur was hys grete prisowne.

When pe Erle wyste of pe state of Gye,
For hym he was sorye:
He sende to hym lechys fele
Of hys sekenes hym to hele.
Out of hem all wyste per none,
What sekenes was hym vppon.
The leche was wyse and ware
And askyd hym of hys fare.

Gye answeryd at that case
Not as the sothe was:
‘In my hed comyth a colde blode,
That makyf me to qwake, as y were wode.
Aftur comyth a stronge hete,
That makyth my body for to swete:
All y brenne boone and hyde
Also hote, as any glede.
Thys ys my lyfe nyght and daye:
For payne reste y ne maye.’

The lecheys cowde hym helpe n3t,
To Iesu they haue hym betaght.
Gye leyd stylle there
In sorowe and care, as he was eere.

If Hyt befelle vpon a daye,
Gye to the castell toke pe way.
As he romeyd all abowte,
He lokyd on a towre wythowte:
Therynne was pe maydyn hende,
That Gye louyd wythowten mynde.
‘Therinne,’ he sayde, ‘ys pat maye,
For whom y morne bope ny3t and day.’
Wyth pat worde hys body can bowe,

¹ Qu. was
Downe he felle 
He rent hys clothe, he drewe hys here,  
Ofte he felle in swownynge there. For to wynne 
And seyde: '3yt schall y oonys prove  
That y for hur to defe was do.

Yf y therfore schall dye to daye,  
Sore he wept and sore he syght :  
As he in the garden Cononde,  
Felyce, 
There sche was almoost allone,  
When Gye Felyce there sye,  
He felle before hur downe on hys kne 
And seyde: 'Felyce, haue merce on me.  
I am to blame now wyth skylle :  
I am come hedur agenste py wylle.  
I may not slepe nyght nor day :  
On nyghtys, when odur men slepe,  
On nyghtys, when odur men slepe,  
Thou makyst me full sore to wepe.  
When py lorde wottyth euerie dell,  
That y loue the so well,  
That schall to me grete worschyp be,  
Yf any man may synge or rede,
FELICE AGAIN AT FIRST REFUSES GUY.

To be killed
That y was for þe done to dede,
That men may say be many a day,

for her sake.
That y was slayne for soche a maye,' 316

This said
When Gye had these wordys seyde,
To the grownde he hym leyde.

he fell to the
Sche rewyd then on Gyes payne:

ground,
When sche sawe hym in swownynge layne,
Sche bad hur maydyn in þat stownde

but was raised
Arere vp Gye fro the grounde.
by Felice's
The maydyn 3ede to Gye thoo
attendant.
And toke hym in hur armes two.

Felice rebuked
To Felyce than sche broght Gye.
him for his folly.
Felyce seyde to hym: 'þou doyst folye.
Who gaue the thyse ylke redde,
That þou for my loue woldest be dedde? 328
Soone schalt þou to dethe be doo.'

But her attendant
'God grawnt,' quod Gye, 'þat hyt be soo,
declared,
That men myȝt saye be ony way,
That y was slayne for soche a maye.' 332

if she were
Then seyde þe maye, þat toke vp Gye,
an emperor's
to Felyce, hur ladye:
[leaf 163 a, col. 2]
'Yf my fadur were kyng or knyght,
der,
Erle or emperowre of myght,

and Guy the
And he were man poreste
poorest of men,
And y maydyn feyreste,

yet she should
And he lounyd me so derne,
grant him her
Y myȝt not hym loun weyne.' 340
love.

Felice promised
to Gye spake to Gye anone:
to procure Guy
'For thy loue y wyll now done,
the hand of
Ther ys no maydyn in þys londe
whatever lady
Nor no lady, y vndurstonde,
he chose.
That þou wyll haue to thy wyfe,

But he did not
But þou schalt haue hur, wythowtyn stryfe.' 344

care for any other.
Gye answeryd Felyce there:
'Ys hyt no better, þen hyt was eere. 348
Other, then the, kepe y none:
For the y wyll my lyfe forgoon).

\[\text{\textbf{When Gye had seyde thys reson,}}\]
Therwythall he felle downe,
Felyce on Gye began to loke
And in hur armes hym vp toke.
‘Gye,’ sche seyde, ‘be nowe stylene.
Here me, yf hyt be yowre wylle.
Knyghtys and erlys y haue forsake,
That wolde me to wyfe take.
And y loued now a yong\textsuperscript{1} knaue,
How schulde y my worschyp save?
When ou art dubbed a knyght
And proved well in euery fyght,
Then, for sothe, hyght y the,
That ou schalt haue pe loue of me.’
When thys harde Gyeowne,
For yoye in swownyng\textsuperscript{2} he felle adowne.
Felyce spake to hym wyth mowthe
And comefortyd hym, as sche well cowthe.
He rose vp fro swownyng
And toke leue at pe maydyn\textsuperscript{3} yng.
Owt of pe 3arde he went aryght,
To hys inne he well sone hym dyght.
There he was to pe secund daye,
That hys sekenes went awaye.
\[\text{\textbf{When Gye had couyrde hys estate,}}\]
To pe erlys court he toke pe gate.
Well feyrye Gye the Erle grett,
Before hym on hys knyes he hym sett.
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y prey the,
That ou knyght dubbe me.
Yf ou wylt me pe ordur yene,
I wyll the serue, whyll pat y leue.’
The Erle grauntyd hym hys boone
And seyde: ‘ou schalt be dubbed soone.’

\footnote{\textsuperscript{1} take blotted out before knaue in MS.}
\footnote{\textsuperscript{2} falling down again, he was taken up by Felice.}
\footnote{\textsuperscript{3} she declared she could not grant him her love before he was a proved knight.}
\footnote{\textsuperscript{3} On this Guy fainted away with joy.}
\footnote{\textsuperscript{3} he went home, [leaf 163 b, col. 1] and two days after he was quite restored to health.}
\footnote{\textsuperscript{3} Going to the Earl’s court, he begged the Earl to dub him a knight, and the Earl promised he would.}
Guy chose twenty other young men.

They dressed in white kirtles, purple mantles, hose (but no shoes), and garlands.

Each held a sword by its point, with spurs hanging on the hilt.

All knelt before the altar till past midnight.

Spurs were set on Guy's foot; he knelt, and the Earl knighted him.


THE CEREMONY OF KNIGHTING GUY.

Guy chose twenty other young men.

They dressed in white kirtles, purple mantles, hose (but no shoes), and garlands.

Each held a sword by its point, with spurs hanging on the hilt.

All knelt before the altar till past midnight.

Spurs were set on Guy's foot; he knelt, and the Earl knighted him.

388

392

396

400

404

408

412

416

420
There were hys felowes everychon
Dubbed knyghtys be oon and oon.

The Erle at morne a feste made:
There were feele lordlyngys glade.

When pe knyghtys had etyn
And at pe borde longe setyn,
Up they rose everychone:
To pe chaumbur be pey goone.

Guy hym went anom ryght
To Felyce, that swete wyght.

He seyde: 'lemman, for thy sake
Knyghtys ordur haue y take:
For pe y am dubbyd knyght.'

Do nowe, as pou me hyght.'

'Gye,' sche seyde, 'what wylt pou done?'
3yt haste pou not wonnen py schone.

Of a gode knyghtys mystere
Hyt ys the furste manere
Wyth some odur gode knyght
Odur to juste or to fyght.

Goo and do thy cheualrye
And pen pou schalt lye me bye:
Then pou shalt haue pe lune of me
And at py wylle my body shall be.'

'Gye toke hys leue of pat maye
And to pe halle he toke pe waye.
The Erle he fonde in the halle
And on hys kneys he can down falle.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'gyf me leue
For to go myselfe to preue.
I wyll fare to odur londe
Dedes of armes for to fonde.'

The Erle spake to Gye styllle:

The other 20 were knighted too.
The ceremony was followed by a festival, after which
Guy presented himself to Felice.

But she told him he must prove his valour
The ceremony was followed by a festival.
Guy presented himself to Felice.

Guy got the Earl’s leave to go into foreign countries.

1 d blotted out before odur in MS.
GUY STARTS TO SEEK ADVENTURES ABROAD.

And went owt fro him all.  
He wente to hys ynne warde:  
There was hys fadur Seqwarde.

His father, after an unsuc-
erful attempt to keep him at
home, gave him plenty
of money, and three
knightys, Harrawde,
Toralde, and Urry,
as companions.

with them he soon
left England.

Well sone he set hym on hys kne
And seyde: ‘fadur, lysten to mee,
For sothe, fadur, y how telle,
Noo lengur wyll y here dwelle.
Fadur, yf thy wylle bee,
Y wyl wende ouyr the see:
I wyl preue, sauns fayle,
Of turnement and batayle.’

‘Sone,’ he seyde, ‘pou art full 3ynge
For to preue of soche thynge.
3yt haste thou no myght
To turnment nor to fyght.
Lenge at home, pur charyte,
Leve soon), y prey the,
Tyll pou can more skylle.’

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘that y do nyll.’
‘Sone,’ seyde he, ‘sythe pou wylt soo,
Thou schalt not allone goo.

Of my tresure take thy fylle;
For hyt ys 3yn d all at 3y wylle.’

He gaue hym tresure gret plente
And betoke hym knyghtys three,
And betoke hym hys sone Gye,
That they schulde hym kepe wyth here myght;

That they were bothe hardy and wyght.

Gye toke hys fadurs beneson
And went forthe of the towne.
They harde of a gode schyppe:
All iiiii theryn they lepe.
They drewe sayle, pe wynde was gode,
Thay yede into the salte flode.
They sayled forthe wythowten ore:
The sight of Ynglonde loste þey þore.

Noþyng sawe þey þem abowte,
But salte watur and wawes stowte.

Forthe þey went be day lyght,
Tyll hyt drewe to the nyght.
Londe they sye at the laste:
Thedurwarde þey drewe faste.

They came to londe wyth grete hye
And ryden into Normandye.

To a cyte they come wyth lyght,
There they schulde be all nyght
At a burges hows of the towne,

That was a man of grete renown.

As they at the soper sete
(Some dranke and some ete),

Guy cowde speke of many a þynge
And axyd the gode man tythyngye,

Yf he harde anythyngye
Of turnament or of justynge.

Of þis, for sothe, seyde þe gode man,

‘Of a turnament telle þe þe can.

Of Almayn þe Emperowre
Hath a doghtur of gret valowi-e.
That hath a turnament let crye,
The moste, pat euer man sye.

Ther ys no knyght in þat cuntre,
That ys of grete degree,
That of armes anythyng ye can,

But he schall be there thanþ.

Ne schall be knyþt in all Spayne,
From hens to þe see of Bretayne,

That had louyd any maye 3ynge,

But he schall be at that justynge

For to do hys proves

And to schewe hys hardynes.

Thedur schall come knyþys of many londys
The winner of the tournament was to have a white falcon,

3 snowwhite steeds,

2 fair greyhounds,

and the Emperor's daughter's love.

Guy determined to be present at it,

and presented his host with a palfrey for his news.

Next morning Guy went to the place of the tournament.
Guy fights with Gayere.

Amonge þe knyghtys in þat mornyng.

¶ Now ys Gye come to game,
There fele knyghtys be gedurð same.
Owt of the lystys rode a knyght,
That was feyre, gent and wyght.
Gye askyd oon, þat by hym stode,
What was þat knyȝt, þat owt þere rode,
And he answeryd syr Gye thanþ:
‘I schall the telle, as y canþ.
Jondyr ys Gayere, an harde swaynþ,
The emperowre sone of Almaynþ,
That ys reðy for to play,
Yf any knyght come hym to say.’
¶ When Gye sye hyt was Gayere,
Armed he rode hym nere.
Owt of þe lyste he can sone ryde
In the place to abyde.
Be þat þe knyghtys came same.
Now begynneth a newe game:
Gayer smote Gye in the felde
Wyþ þis spere thorow þe schelde,
That þis spere brake in two:
Gyes hawberk dud not soo.
Gye smot Gayer wyþ myght,
To þe erth þe feele downþ ryght.
Gayers hors he lepe vpom
And let hys owþ avay goþ.
Tho began Gye to play:
He fellyd all, þat stode in hys way.
He dud well, wyþhowtenþ fayle:
He toke knyghtys in þat batayle;
He brake so many sperys asonder,
That eche man of hym had wonder.
Was noon so strong a knyȝt, þat he smote,
But þat he fell downþ to hys fote.
¶ The felle dewke Otow of Payuye

Warwick.

564
568
572
576
580
588
592
596

A knight rides out.

Guy

finds he is Gayere, the Emperor's son,

Guy falls all who stand in his way,
GUY FIGHTS WITH OTOUN AND RAYNERE.

To Gye had grete envye.
Wyth pryde he wolde juste wyth Gye:
The worse parte come hym bye.
Gye smote hym þorow þe schouldur bone:
The dewke felle of hys hors anon.

¶ There come prykyng dewke Raynere,
A bolde knyght wythowten feere,
Pressyng on a stede faste:
Of Gye was he not agaste.
'Traytur,' he seyde, 'þou schalt abyye:
Why smote þou Otow of Payuye?
In euyll tyme þou dedyst hym wronge.
He ys my neme, y schall the honge.
Here y am, the dewke Raynere:
I wyll my neeme awreke here.'
'I wyll,' seyde Gye, 'so mote y the,
Furste turne ageyn and juste wyth the.'
Gye turned hym and smote faste:
Bope þer sperys all tobraste.
Gye smot Rayner on the schelde,
That hyt flewe into the felde,
And smote hym downe of hys stede.
To hys hors sone he yede:
'Syr dewke, hane here ageynþ þy stede.
When þou seyst tyme, qwyte me my mede.'
And sythen he qwyt hym full well;
For he was a knyght gentyll.
The dewke vp start all in hye
And ranne to Gye smertlye.
Syr knyght, telle me beforne:
What ys þy name? where were þou borne?
'Gye of Warwyk, for sothe, y hyght:
In Ynglonde was y borne aryght.'
¶ Tho came the dewke Louayne,
Wyth Gye he wolde juste fayne.

1 e in sperys effaced. 2 MS. loyane.
GUY WINS THE PRIZE.

Wyth a scharpe growndyn\(^1\) spere
He rode to Gye faste there.

Gye turned ageyn and of hym had wondur,
But sone per sperys brake in sondur.
Faste pey drewe ther bryght brondys
And faghed togedur wyth bope per hondys.
¶ Tho the come prekyng Harrawt
And to dewke Myrandle he made asawte.

Of hys hors he hym caste:
Hys strenkyp myght no lenger laste;
And sythen he smot Waldynere:
To pe grownde he fellyd hym there.
He bare hym well, as knyght hardy:
So dud Toralde and Urry.
¶ Nowe ys pe tournament well stronge:
Wyth grete strokys euer amonge
Many sperys brake in twoo
And many to the erthe can goo.
No clere can on boke rede
To telle pe doghtynes of per dede,
But all the men wyth harty free
Haue geuyn Gye the maystree.
Gye had the pryce and no nodur
That day and ylke the todur.
¶ When hyt come to the prydde day,
That all knyghtys went away,
Then came the dewke Raynere,
An hardy knyght and a stere,\(^2\)
And seyde: 'herkyn eche man to me
And, yf y amys seye, amende me.
Geve me the stedys and the fawcon
And pe greyhowndys: wyth gret resoun
He schall pe hane, pat pe hane wanne,
Of Warwykk Gye, pat doghty man.
He, that scyth, hyt ys any odur,

\(^1\) First \(n\) in \(growingd\) effaced.  \(^2\) \(sere\)?
I will he, if he were my brother.  
And all say with we are together:  
'Give me for to you your judgment.'  
Thorow he place he did crye  
To yylde that present to sir Gye.  
If now is departyd that turnement,  
And Gye to his ynt went.  

[leaf 165 b, col. 1]  
He did of his armor:  
He was full very in that stowre.  
A squire  
Than came a squyer prekyng  
Hende and wyse and wele spekyng.  
To Gyes chaumbur he ys gone  
And gret hym wele fere anone.  
'God he save,' he sayde, 'syr Gye,  
Of all he worlde he moost worthy.  
Thou haste he pryce of his turnement:  
Thys present ys to the sente  
On he maydenys halfe Blanchfowre,  
Kyngys doghtur and emperowre,  
And he loue of pat maydyn yinge,  
So pou haue no nodur darlynge.'  

Gye  
Gye answerde at that tyme:  
'Haue pou goddys thanke and myne.  
I will he, resseyue wyth wyll gode  
And hur loue wyth well gladder\(^1\) mode:  
I will hur serve wyth all myght  
Eye, as hur owne trewe knyght.  
Felowe,' sayde Gye, 'herkyn to me:  
Knyght wyll y dubbe the,\(^2\)  
The, and thy seruawntys thre  
Schall haue rychy gyftys of me,  
For ye wolde do thys message:  
Y schall qwyte you wele youre wage.'  

\(^1\) gladder  
\(^2\) mee before the blotted out in MS.
But god the ȝylde, pat beste may.
We wyll not dwelle, haue gode day
We wyll telle Blancheflowre
Of thy gyftus and thyn honowre. 708
ȝ The messengere home ys went
And lefte there style pat present.
Two seruautys Gye can calle
And bad þem hye swythe all 712
And take pat present so hende
Into Ynglonde for to wende.
To þe erle Roholde they schall fare
And delyuyr to hym pat present þare
And sey, pat Gye hym pat hath sente.
When þey harde hys comawndement,
Wythowtyn more forthe they rode,
Tyll þey were passyd þe see brode. 720
When þey came to Ynglonde,
At Warwyk þe erle þey fonde
And gaue hym þere pat present
And seyde, þat Gye hyt had hym sent, 724
The gerfawcon and þe stedys thre
And the greyhowndys feyre and free:
As Gye þem wanne, þere þey tolde
And how he was boþe wyght and bolde 728
And how Blancheflowre, þat swete þyng,
Let crye and make a grete justynge,
That sche myght see in the felde,
Who cowde beste welde spere and schylde 732
And whych was the feyrest knyght
And in batell beste cowde fyght:
He schulde haue thys present
And þe loun of þat maydyn gente. 736
When þe erle harde þys tythyng,  The Earl
He was gladde, wythowt lesynge,1
That Gye was of so grete prys

1 The first e in lesynge is not quite clear.
And so ware a man and wys.

Hys fadur and hys modur for hys sake
Grete yoye dud they make.

If Nowe wendyth Gye to justynge

For to wynne hym preysynge.

In Almayn and in Lumbardye,

Yn Frawnce and in Normandye—

Ther was no justynge in pat londe,

But Gye had the bettur honde.

Nowe ys he come wyth gret honowre

To Rome to hys harbenyowre.

Harrawde advised him

Nowe spake Harawde, that knyght,

Gyes maystyr day and nyght:

‘Now wyll we wende to owre contre.

We may wele, so mote y the.

Guy resolved to set off the next morning.

That ye sey, euer deele.

We wyll to morowe, when hyt ys day,

Hye vs faste on owre way.’

A gode schypp there pey fonde

And sayled ouer bope wawe and sonde.

In England

Nowe be pey come to Ynglonde:

The kyng pey sone they fonde.

The kyng of hym was full gladde

And all pe men, that he hadde.

Sythen to Warwyk can pey goom:

The erle Roholde they fonde anow,

That of hym was full blythe

And thankyd god fele sythe.

Golde and syluyr he wolde hym take,

A ryche man he wolde hym make.

Hys fadur and modur for hys sake
FELICE REFUSES AS YET TO MARRY GUY. 23

Grete yoye can they make.

*f* Nowe ys Gye to Felyce went,
On whome all hys lone was lent.
He gret hur on hys manere
And seyde: 'god loke þe, my lemmen dere.
I haue for the turned my rede:
Yf þou were not, y were but dedde.
Ordyr of knyght þou dud me take,
And passyd the see for thy sake.
Then þou seyde to me wele ryght,
When y were a doghty knyght
And went far into straunge londe
Dedes of armes for to fonde,
Then schulde y haue þe loun of the:
Therof well gladde wyll y bee.
Now am y come to wytt thy wylle,
What þou wylt seye lowde or stylle.'

† Felyce seyde full wysely :
'Haue therof no haste, *syr* Gye.
3yt art þou not of soche poste,
But ther be bettur in thys contre.
Thou art well stronge and wyght,
Bolde also in every fyght:
Yf y the graunt ouyr all thynge
My loun and to be thy derlynge,
Thou woldest be so yelowse
And of me so amerowse,
That þou woldest not þy narmes take:
Then wolde þy lose moche slake.
That were a grete schame for the
To lose þy pryce for þe loun of me.
All my þoght y wyll the schowe,¹
For y wyll, that þou hyt knowe.
My love y wyll not the hyght,
Or thou be the boldyst knyght,

MS. *schewe*. [leaf 166 a, col. 2]

Guy went to see Felice, and reminded her of her promise. But Felice assured him that she would not become his wife till he was thought.
That may be founde in any londe
Of doghtynges and strencakyth of honde,
Of every justynge and stronge stowre
Of all the worlde to bere the flowre;
And, when thou hast borne so euyn,
That yer ys no better vnndur hevyn,
All my lour thou schalt haue
And yer aftar no lenger crave:
All the whyle y am on lyue,
Wyll y be thy wendyd wyue.

When Gye harde Felicye speke,
Hym pought, hys hert wolde breke.
Now wot ye wele, ye seydyst not ryght,
When ye furste of lour behyght.
The beste schall y neyur bee,
That ys in all crystyante.
I schall wende to far londe,
More of justyng wyll y fonde.
From the dethe y schall not flee:
If y dye, hys for thee.

All wepeyng he went awey
And toke hys leue at pat may.
He ys went to hys oostell,
There wyll he no lenger dwelle:
To the erle he toke hys way.

Syr, he seyde, haue gode day.
I wyl wende on the stronde
Ferr into a nodur londe.
I wyl put me forpe, as y can,
To be knowen a doghty man
And be preyed for my prow,  
And y wyste, what wey and howe.
And ye haue men of gret valowre,
Moche hyt ys for youre honowre:
Ye schulde be holde the more dere

1 MS. convcell.
2 MS. me.
GUY IS BENT ON LEAVING ENGLAND AGAIN.

In every londe bothe ferre and there.

* Than he spake, the erle Rohawt:

'Syr Gye, haste þou any defawte
Of golde, of syluyr or of ryche clothe?
Or any man haþ made þe wrothe?
Syr Gye, leue þat fowle wylle
And leue at home here wþyth me stylle.
Thou schalt haue, what þou wylt crave:
Hawkes, howndys, what þou wylt haue.
Wþyth howndys we wyl Chace dere
And wþyth hawkes to the ryuere.
To dwelle at home ys my cownceyle:
That may the grely avayle.
In tyme þen may þou passe þe see,
Afturwarde, when bettur may bee.'

'Syr,' he seyde, 'at thys tyde
For nothyng wyl y here abyde.
God yow ȝylde, haue gode day.'

He toke hys leue and went away.

* To hys fadur he went full þare.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'y wylle fare
To the londe, there y was ere,
A whyle for to dwelle there
For to wynne me loneynge
Bothe of emperowre and of kynge.
He, that may do gode dede,
He schulde hym force in yowtheyde,
So þat he may, when he ys oolde,
For a doghty man be tolde.
The whyle y am a yonge man,
I wylly travell, as y can,
That men may holde me doghty in elde,
When y may not myselfe welde.'

'Swete sone, let be thy fare:
Thou makest me to haue sorowe and care.

1 or added over the line.  2 MS. cowncell.
Where to schulde jou passe the see?
Hyt ys bettur at home to bee.'

and mother.

Then spake hys modur dere:
'Leef soone, dwelle thou here.
Do aftur thy fadurs redde:
Hyt wyll the helpe from the dedde.
All thys yere thou wyth vs bee
And afturward jou passe the see.
Thou wottyst, we haue no nodur heyre,
But thou, my sweete sone dere.
Yf jou were deed thore,
Heyre schulde we haue no more.
Who schulde pen aftur owre day
Haue owre londys, yf jou ne may?'
'Fadur,' he seyde, 'god the kepe,'
And therwyth he can wepe;
'And my modur dere alsoo:
Haue gode day, for y wyll goo.'

Guy, after crossing the sea, achieved many valiant exploits in Normandy, Brittany, Spain, Germany, and Lombardy.
For his strength Thorow hys strenkyth here he wanne Grete loueuyng of many a man.

GUY'S EXPLOITS IN FOREIGN COUNTRIES.

[leaf 167 a, col. 1] Thorowe the londe vtturly
He dud grete cheualry.
Forte he went to Bretayne.
There were justyngys in Spayne,
That he went to turnaye,
Whyll he was there, euery day.
Now wendyth he fro Spayne,
Comen he ys to Almayne.

[leaf 884 to 892] God hym sende ageyne wyth wynne.
To the see he ys goon),
A gode schyppe there he nome.
He passyd the see in hye,
Comen he ys to Normandy.

[leaf 896 to 900] 'Fadur, he seyde, 'god the kepe,'
And therwyth he can wepe;
'And my modur dere alsoo:
Haue gode day, for y wyll goo.'
[leaf 904 to 916] A gode schyppe there he nome.
He passyd the see in hye,
Comen he ys to Normandy.

ThoroAve the londe vtturly
He dud grete cheualry.
Forte he went to Bretayne.
There were justyngys in Spayne,
That he went to turnaye,
Whyll he was there, euery day.
Now wendyth he fro Spayne,
Comen he ys to Almayne.

Grete loueuyng of many a man.
He was large of spendyng:  
They honowred hym, as a kynge.  
A
  he come fro a turnement,  
That was besyde Bonement,  
He was greuyd swythe the sore  
Of a wounde, pat he had thore.  
Then bethoght hym the dewke Oton,  
A grete traytur and a felon,  
He louyd syr Gye nothyng:  
He sye hym woundyd at pat justyng.  
When Oton the sothe harde,  
That syr Gye not wele farde,  
He clepyd to hym erle Lambart,  
A herde knyght and of gode harte,  
And wyth hym knyghtys fyftene,  
All bolde men and keene.  
To the pase he bad them ryde,  
There syr Gye schulde wende besyde.  
'Lordyngys,' seyde the dewke Oton,  
'Herkyng all to my resou.'  
Je be my men to me plyght,  
Ye be holdyn to do my ryght,  
And to do my comawndement,  
In what stede ye be sente.  
Goyth belyue and venge mee  
Of Gye and hys felows three,  
That ys enturdl into my londe:  
He wyll me brynge warre on honde.  
He ys woundyd swythe the sore,  
Loke, that he dedde wore.  
Ye schall be sworne on bokeys gode,  
That ye schall wende to the wode  
And kepe that pase ferre and nere,  
That he passe not on no manere.  
Ye schall brynge hys owne corse  
And sloo hys men all wyth force.
and seize Guy himself, I shall hym caste in my pryson: For hym schall go no rawnsome. 

Wyth paynes stronge he schall be dedde: Ther schall be no nodur redde.'

¶ 'Syr,' they seyde, 'wyth gode wylle 

Yowre comawndement we schall fulfycle.' Then þey armed them wele 

Bothe in yrow and in steele. To the pase they conne ryde

And hyt besett on every syde. Gye ne wyste of that skathe,

That schulde come to hym so rathe. ¶ Now Gye came taste rydyng

On a mewle wele awmbelynge.

Guy came riding on a mule.

He suffered much from his wound.

He had gret angwysche of hys wounde: 

Alas, þat he was not hole and sownde. To passe þe watur he went full rathe,

But furste he had gret skathe. Then he harde horsys neye,

Helmes he sawe bryght on hye. 'Harrawde,' he seyde, 'here ys treson.'

We be all dedde, be my crowne.' Of the mewle he downe starte

And toke hys stede wyth gode herte. All hys harnes he toke well ryght

And arrayed hym, as a doghty1 knyght, And seyde to hys felows all:

'Fyght faste, or we downe falle. Every man, that ys of myght,

Dyght hys body for to fyght. And, yf y may, so mote y the,

He schall forþynk, þat comyth to me.' ¶ Then seyde Harrawde, þat gode knyght:

'Wende hens: ye may not fyght. He schall forþynk, þat comyth to vs,

1 MS. a doghty a.
SEVERAL LOMBARDS KILLED.

988

I swere be swete Ihesus;
For we schall kepe thys passage,
Thogh we be take wyth grete owtrage.
Bettur hyt ys, †at we dyed all,
Than ye amonge vs schulde mysfalle.'
Gye answeryd anon ryght,
As a bolde man and a wyght :
‘And all ye dyed, yf hyt so bee,
For all þys worlde wolde y not flee.’

992

A Lombard, who called
but in vain.

996

A Lombard, who called
upon Guy to surrender,

998

A Lombard, who called

1000

A Lombard, who called

1004

was instantly killed by him,

1008

and so was another.

1012

Three of the rest

lost their lives

through the valour of his companions.

1016


1020

1 MS. hedde.
There was a fierce fight.

Earl Lambard

For the came the erle Lambarade,
An hardy knyght and an harde.

killed Urry,

Vrry the gode he hath slone
And let hym lye and forthe ys gone.

When Harrawde sawe pat ylke dede,
He ranne to Lambarde a gode spede.

but was himself slain by
Harrawde.

He smote hym forow wyth hys spere :
Vrryes dethe he venged there.

Then came forthe Hewchon,)
That was cosyn to dewke Oton).
He was an hardy knyght
And in euery place stronge and wyght,
Toralde now hath he slayne,

slew Toralde,

who was likewise revenged by
Harrawde.

Therof was not Harrawde fayne.
He sawe Toralde falle to grownde :
He poght to venge hym in a stownde.
Hym to venge he poght wele hate :
Hewchon on pe crowne he smate.
To the gyrdull stede hyt wode,
That dud Harrawde moche gode.

Gayere

When syr Gayer sawe that dede,
That was an hardy knyght at nede,
Harrawde he mett and hym dud smyte
Wyth a swerde, pat wolde wele byte,
Thorow pe body in a stownde,

1 MS. late.
That syr Harrawde felle to grownde.
When Gye sawe them dedde all,
From hys stede he had nere falle.
For sorowe he waxe nere wode:
He was so wrothe in hys mode.
Gye smote oon of Lumbardye,
He rose no more, wytturlye:
He clafe hys body in twoo:
The tow syde from þe todur can goo.

¶ Gye ys now eyyll befalle:
Lorne he hath hys felows all.
He can syke and sore grone:
He wyste not, to whom to make hys moone.
All were slayne of þem, but two,
And they abowte syr Gye can goo.
Gye smote oon of tho
Hys rygge bone euyn in twoo.
Tho start forthe Segwarde,
A full felle Lumarde.

‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘þylde the;
For hyt so full wele may bee.
I see, þou mayst no lenger stonde
For to fyght wyth thyn honde.
I see now thy gode schelde:
The pecys lye in the felde,
Thy helme on that odur syde.
Blody be þy wowndys wyde.
I may see well be thy chere,
Fyght mayste thou no lengere.
I schall þe brynge to dewke Oton:
He schall þe caste in hys pryson.’

¶ ‘Nay,’ seyde Gye, ‘so mote þe thruye,
Neuer, whyll þe am on lyue.
Ne schall þy wyth the dewke carpe,
The whyle þe haue spere so scharpe
And whyll þe haue so moche force

apparently lifeless.
When Guy saw his companions dead,
he became nearly mad.
he would never yield as long as he could defend himself.
After a violent combat,

In my hondys and my corse.
The whyle y may defende me,
Schall y neuyr 3ylde me to the.'

\[ Segwarde smote then Gye,\]
As knyght bolde and hardye.
On the helme he smote \textit{sy}r Gye:
In fowre pecys hyt went, wytterly.
Wyth the grace of heuyn kynge
Hymselfe had no hurtynge.
When Gye hym felyd smeten) sore,
To 3ylde hyt hym he was yore.
He start to hym wyth greet force
And hyt hym egurly on the corce.

The schoulder fro the body well
He smote of euer dely.
Segwarde fledde faste awey
From \textit{sy}r Gye wyth greet derey.
Gye hym sone turned ageyne
To hys felows, pat were slayne.
Segwarde prekyth to Payuye
All woundyd and blody.

\[ As the dewke came from huntynge\]
And odur men oolde and 3ynge,
He sawe a knyght rydynge:
Hys ryght arme was mysfarynge.
The dewke stode stylle \textit{and} hym bepoght
To here, what tydyngys he had broght:
‘Hyt semeth well a woundyd man.’
Segwarde hym hyed faste than.
‘Sey,’ quod the dewke, ‘art \textit{pou} wrath?\]
Who hath done the that skathe?
Where ys Gye? ys he tane?\]
And hys men, be they slane?’

\[ Segwarde seyde: ‘y wyll the say\]
Also moche of Gye, as y may.

\[ MS. slayne.\]
At the ryver we hym mett
And we hym all abowte sett.
We slewe all of hys men,
But hymselfe skapyd then.
My felows be slayne to grownde
And y myselfe bere dedly wounde.
'Where ys he, syr Hewchon?'
'Dedde,' seyde Segwarde, 'be my crowne.'
'And the erle Lambarde the goode?'
'I lefte hym sprawlyng in hys blode.'
When pe dewke harde hym so sey,
'Allas,' he seyde, 'and wele awey
For my men, that be spylte:
All hyt ys my nowne gylte.'

Now ys Gye comen there,
As hys men slayne were.
'Allas,' seyde Gye, 'pat y was borre,
My gode men pat pus be lorne.'
In the stedd, pere Gye stode,
He sawe the bodyes1 lye in blode.
When he sawe pe bodyes colde
Of pe knyghtys, pat were so bolde,
'Allas,' he seyde, 'and wele away,
That euer y wakenyd on pys day.
Jesu Cryste, what ys my redde?
For my loue pese men be dedde.
Sory wordys were me lente,
To scurse Felyce when y was sente.
Felyce,' he seyde, 'for thy sake
To vs ys comen moche wrake,
And all for the loue of the
Dedde be here knyghtys thre.
They were pe beste in euery londe,
That myght bere2 spere on honde.

1 Something blotted out before bodyes in MS.
2 s blotted out before bere in MS.

WARWICK. 3
But he was neither the first man nor the last that came to harm through a woman.

He wished he were dead also.

He repented of not having followed the advice of Earl Roholde and of his parents.

Guy fainted away for woe.
Of hys felows, pat were dedde,
Then cowde he no nodur redd,
But toke hys hors sone anon
And to an hermytage he can goon.
'Ermyte,' he seyde, 'come wyth me
(Thys horse of pryce y geue the)
And take vp bodyes tweyne,
That in pe wode lye slayne,
And bery pem wyth moche honowre;
For pey were of grete valowre.'
'Syr,' he seyde, 'y come ryght nowe.
Go before, y wyll sewe yow.'
Gye hath hym pe bodyes tane
Of Toralde and of Urry thau.
Sythen he ys lopen on hys stede:
He wyth hym Harrawde dud lede.
"Gye wendy now from pat place,
There he had a febull grace.
The body of Harrawde wyth hym he bare
And lefte the odur corsys thare.
He went to an abbey,
That was a lytull besyde pe wey.
The abbot sone he fonde there
And spake to hym on hys manere:
'God, pat dyed on a tree,
Sur,' he seyde, 'saue the.'
I the bydde pur charyte
In the name of the trinyte,
That pou take thys body here
And bery hyt on all manere.
He was to day a doghty knyght
And ryght now was slayne in fyght.
God wyll 3ylde the thy mede
And y schall, when y may spedc.'
'Syr,' he seyde, 'wyth full gode chere
Schall y bery thys body here.
Guy went on to a hermit, by whom he had his wound healed in a short time.

Duke Ottoun was sorry for Guy's escape.

The Abbot pitied Harrawde.

A monk of that abbey saw that his wounds were not deadly,

[leaf 169 a, col. 2] and he succeeded in recalling him to life.

Guy, completely cured,
And aftar brought owt of hys care.
The ermyte he yaued gode day
And to Pole he toke the way.
There he went to the kynge,
That had grete yoye of hys comyng.
Syluer and golde he had hym sente:
Thereof had Gye no talente.
So had Gye taryed thore,
That all hym louyd, pat þere wore,
And of every justynge
Wyth hym ys lefte the preysynge.
† Leue of þe kynge Gye toke anow
And to Sesoyne1 ys he gone
To the nobull dewke Raynere,
And he welcomyd hym wyth gode chere.
So longe he hath hawntyd bordys,
That of armes he bare the prys.
He hym bethoght on a daye,
That he wolde wende away:
To hys contre wolde he fare.
He wolde not longe dwelle thare.
† Now ys he went fro2 Sesoyne,3
Comen he ys to Burgoyne
To dewke Myllon, that was þan:
Of Gye he was a yoysfull man.
All hys castels and all the lande
He dud take Gye in hys hande.
Thorow the londe he was þe prys
Of justynge and of bordyse,
Now ys Gye loueyd well
Thorow all þe londe euery dele.
Was þer nodur lorde nor knyght
Nor squyer, that had any myght:
He gane þem armes to be knyght
Thorow þer strenkyþ and þer myght.

1272 passed into Apulia, whose king wel-comed him heartily.
1276
1280 From thence he went into Saxony, and was well received by Duke Raynere.
1284
1288
1292 Afterwards he visited Myllon, duke of Burgundy.
1296
1300 There he was loved by all for his liberality.
1304

1 MS. Sesyone.  2 MS. to.  3 MS. Sesyone.
So well he had there hym spedde,
That ladys wolde be to hym wedde);
But none of all wolde he haue
For noght, *pat* *p* ey myght craue.
For all *p* sorwe, was hym befalle,
3yt louyd he Felyce moste of all.
What for gyftys, what for larges,
What for bewte, what for *proves*,
Ther was no knyght beyonde *p* see,
That was so moche preysed, as hee.

On huntyng Gye went on a day,
He mett a palmer be the way.
He clepyd to hym the palmer
And spake to hym on hys manere :
'Gode man,' seyde Gye, 'telle *pou* me,
Fro whens *pou* came *and* fro what cunte.'

'Fro Lombardy comyn y am.
There haue y tholed moche schame:
There loste y my lorde dere,
That was a knyght of gret powere.

The dewke Otow of Payuye
Desseyuyd vs thorow trecherye.
God, that dyed on a tre,
Let hym neuer forgenyn bee.
On *p*ys manere wyll y wende
Allwey to my lyueys ende.
I wyll bydde for hym well faste,
All *p* whyle my lyfe may laste.'

'Who was thy lorde,' seyde Gye,
'That *pou* louteyst so trewlye?'

'Gye he hyght of Warwyke :
In all *p*ys worlde ys none hym lyke.'
Gye began to syke sore.
When *p* palmer had seyde thore,
'Gode man,' he seyde, 'what ys *p* name?
So god *p* schylde fro synne *and* schame.'
'Harrawde,' he sayde, 'men clepe me
Of Ardurne in that cuntre.'

When Gye harde *pat*, also smerte
Downe of hys stede sone he sterte.
He tolke hym in hys armes twoo,
Owt of the stedde wolde he not goo.
He kyssyd hym an hundurde sythe :
Neuyr before was he so blythe,
Wyth hys eyen he wepyd sore
For yoye, that he stode thore,
And sayde, 'syr Harrrowde, pou seye me, why
That pou knowyst not syr Gye,'
Then he myght no lenger stonde,
But in swowne he felle to grownde.
Ther was yoye wythowte care :
Ayther askyd other of hys fare.

Nowe be they bothe two sett :
They haue grete yoye, *pat* pey be mett.
Than Gye all hath to hym seyde,'
How he hym on hys hors leyde ;
Vnto an abbey how he hym bare,
For *pat* he schulde be beryed thare.
For nothynge wolde he late,1
But ylke tolde odur of per state.
Now begynneth Harrowde to spelle
And of hys sorowe he can hym telle,
How he was helyd of hys wownde
And made bothe hole *and* sownde
Be a monke of that abbey,
As ye haue herde me before sey,
And how he went to many a londe
Gye to seke, yf he myght be2 fonde.

Now be they horsyd bothe thare
And to the cyte dud they fare.

1 MS. lett. 2 be omitted in MS.
Guy took Harrawde to Duke Mylone.

Guy and Harrawde resolved to return to England.

[leaf 170 a, col. 1]

But in Flanders, before putting to sea,

Guy learnt from a pilgrim

Gye dud hym bathe full well
And clothyd hym newe every dell
Wyth ryche robys of grete prys
Furryd wele wyth veire and grys.
When he was so well cladde,
To dewke Mylone he hym laddde
And he hym tolde every delle,
How ther wo was turned to wele.

Ate dewke pey toke leue:
Pe was nobyng, myst hym more greue.
Pey poght to wende ouer pe sonde,
Tyll pey came to Ynglonde.
The dewke wolde haue had pe stype,
But pe was not at ther wylle,
That pey schulde dwelle pe longe.
They wente pere forthe wyth songe:
Ryght to Flawndurs be pey goow.
Ther inne there was takyn anone:
To the see they wolde wyth ryght
On pe morne, when day was lyght.

¶ Gye to a wyndowe yode
To loke, how the wynde stode.
In the way he sye come there
A pylgryme sekeyng hys sopere.

Gye askyd on feyre manere:
"Pylgryme, wylt pou be herberde here?"
Nght hyt ys, pou mayste not wende.
Goode hyt ys, pat thou here lende."
Than spake the pylgryme:
"God the 3ylde and seynt Martyne."
¶ Than askyd Gye full yare,
In what cuntre he had fare
And yf he herde in any londe,
Where ony warre were on honde.
"Syr," he seyde, "y schall yow telle
Of a warre stronge and felle."
GUY LEARNS THAT SEGWIN IS BESIEGED BY THE EMPEROR.

Gye seyde: "seye me belyue."
'Syr,' he seyde, 'so muste y thryue,
The ryche emperoure Raynere, 1412
That all Almayne hap in hys powere,
Hath besegyd dewke Segwyn 1416
And dothe hym there moche pyne
(Hys men be slone and hys towres brent
And hys castels be brokyn and schente:
Therfore ys he nothyng fayne)
For hys cosyn, pat he hath slayne 1420
Hym defendawnt, sawns fayle,
For he dud hym furste assayle,
Before at a turnement,
That was made for entysement.

¶ There was pe nobull dewke Segwyne, 1424
To whom longyd all Lowyne,¹
And of Lorayne² dewke Loyere:
He was a bolde man and a fere.

Knyghtys came of the londe 1428
Dedes of armes for to fonde.
The dewke Segwyn dud owt wende,
When pe game was broght to ende:
There hath he slayne a gode knyght,
That was a bolde man and a wyght.

¶ Than came Saddok prykande
The dewke Segwyn saylande: 1436
Of hym Saddok had grete envye
For hys grett cheualrye.
He was pe emperowrs cosyn;
Hys systurs sone, a bolde hyne.
Of justynge he was werye,
Hys hawberke hap he caste bye:
In playne armes was he gone.
For sothe, he was a prowde manc.³

MS. lowayne. ² MS. Burgaync.
³ originally mone in M.S.
SEGWIN HAS SLAIN THE EMPEROR'S NEPHEW.

'Syr dewke,' he seyde, 'turne the
And oon tyme juste wyth me.
'Thou art a bolde knyght and a kene:
For sothe, nowe hyt schall be sene.' 1448
'Saddok,' he seyde, 'let be thy stryfe.
I wolde not do þat for my lyfe.
I loue the 1dere in my herte: 1
To juste wyth the hyt wolde me smerte. 1452
Thou art my lordys cosyn:
To do þe harme þe shame were myn,
When y the vnarmedde see.
Soche a coward wyll y not bee.' 1456
¶ Then seyde Saddok: 'þou art a cowart
And a man of feyne harte.
So god me helpe in trynyte,
But þou ones juste wyth me, 1460
I schall the hurte thys ylke day
And wrath þe, yf that y may,
And kepe þe, well wytterly,
As for my dedly enmye.' 1464
¶ He ranne to hym wyth grete yre
And the dewke turnyd hym þere.
Faste þey smote þen togedur,
That þer sperys can toschyder. 1468
Saddok smote hym furste there
Owt of þe schelde a quartere.
He smote hym þorow þe arme also,
That the spere braste in twoo.
Than beganne the dewke to smyte,
For he thoght grete dyspyte.
Thorow þe body þe spere glode:
Of that dynte þe deþe he hadde. 1472
He toke þe body, þere hyt laye,
And bare hyt to an abbay
And beryed hyt sone anon

1-1 MS. in my dere herte.
Feyre in a marbull stone.

If The dewke ys went and odur thre
To Argone, his cyte.
The walles þere he dud mende:
He þoght hym þere to defende.
All þe castels of that cuntre
Full sekyr sone then made he.
Sythen messengerys he sente,
That all þat londe þorowe wente.
Swythe sende he his sonde
To all men of his londe
And þadde, þey schulde be hym nere
Hym to helpe in his mystere;
For stronge men, harde he say,
Thorow his londe wolde haue þe way.
He thought, whyll hym lyfe wolde laste,
To defende the cyte wyth þe beste.

If When the emperowre harde telle
All þat case, how hyt felle,
That Saddok was so slayne,
Therof was he nothyng fayne.
He sende his sonde thorow Almayne
Knyghtys and dewkys into Spayne,
Erlys, barons, lorde and swayne,
That þey schulde come wyth þall þer mayne
To ther lorde, the emperowre,
To whom þey owe grete honowre.

If When þey were godurd togedur,
That they were comen thedur,
‘Gode men,’ sayde the emperowre,
‘Ye harde speke of the traytowre,
Howe the dewke of Lowyne
Slewe Saddok, my cosyn,
Therfore y bydd yow all in fere,
That ye me helpe wyth yowre power

\[1\] a blotted out before wyth in MS.
Guy purposes to help Segwin

44

Ageyne the dewke for to fyght:
He hath done ageyne the ryght.'
'Syr;' they seyde wyth oon assent,
'We schall do thy comawnement.'
We schall neuer thens goo,
Or we haue done hym moche woo.'

[w] Now wendyth the grete ooste
Wyth grete pryde and mekyll boste.
There pey wente, brode and wyde
They dysstroyed on euery syde.
There ys lefte but oon cyte
Far and nere in that contre;
That ys the cyte of Argone,
That ys formed aftur Rome.
Hyt ys closed wyth lyme and stone:
In all pyes worlde ys bettur none.'

[w] When pe pylgryme had all seyde,
Mete and drynke to hym was leyde.
Gye herkenyd euery dele
And vndurstode hyt full wele.
Then poght Gye, there he stode,
To helpe pe dewke that hyt were gode.
He seyde: 'Harrawde, what redyst jou?'

[leaf 171 a, col. 1]
Yf me cowncell, for thy prowe.
Wyll we helpe the dewke hende,
Or we wyll to Ynglonde wende?
What ys thy wylle? saye nowe;
For py cowncell wele y trowe.'

[w] Syr Harrawde spake than:
'Syr;' he seyde, 'y am thy man.
I schall pe yeue gode cownsayle,
That schall the full wele avayle.
I rede the, harnes the ryght wele
Bothe in yron and in stele
And wyth pe v hundurd men on ende:
To the dewke wyll we wende.
We schall hym helpe wyth gode chere:
Of socowre he hath grete mystere.
Ye may so do in that stowre,
That euyr ye may gete honowre.'
‘Gramercy, syr,’ seyde Gye;
‘I the thanke, wytturlye.
Now y knowe, pou louyste me,
When y soche cowncell haue of the.
To pe cyte wyll we hye
Wyth moche haste and cheualrye.'
¶ Fyve hundurde knyghtys yare,
That were redy wyth hym to fare,
Of all Frawnce pey were the beste,
 Armed well on hors¹ preste.
To Argone they be comen),
Into the cyte pe way pey nomen.
They toke ther ynnes in the cyte:
Gladde may the dewke be,
On the morne Gye rose
And to churche soone he gose:
Masse and matens pe he harde
And sythen to hys ynne farde.
He sawe men renne same:
He joght be pem, hyt was no game.
Scheldys and sperys he sawe pem bere,
Ryght as hyt were to the were.
Gye sone clepyd a maun:
‘What men,’ he seyde, ‘be 3one?
Telle me, pur charyte,
Why ys thys haste in thys cyte?’
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘be thys day,
Y schall the the sothe say.
Thys ys the steward to the emperowre,
That ys a man of grete valowre:
He ys holden of grete pryce

¹ o in hors not quite clear in MS.
GUY FIGHTS WITH THE EMPEROR'S STEWARD.

And of batell bothe war and wyse;
And other knyghtys wyth hym grete plente:
But ther ys none so gode in pys contre.
Yf any knyght so hardy bee,
That ys in all thys grete cyte,
That wyth hym ones dar fyght,
Forpe pen come odur anon ryght:
Be he neuyr so bolde nor so stowte
Cometh he neuer owt of pat rowte:
Other he schall be slayne wyth wronge
Or ellys taken to pryson wroaste.'

But ther ys none so gode ixysyjys contre.

Yf any knyght so hardy bee,
That ys in all thys grete cyte,
That v^yth hyni ones dar fyght,
Forjje jjen come odur anon ryght:
Be he neuyr so bolde nor so stowte
Cometh he neuer owt of pat rowte:
Other he schall be slayne wyth wronge
Or ellys taken to pryson stronge.'

Guy sallled out with his knights, attacked the Steward,

Guy sallled out with his knights, attacked the Steward,
Wyth hys fawchon at a draght:
To the erthe he felle downe
Eyll at ese, be my crowne.
Then dud Gye, as felle to were:
In batell he toke hym there.
He drewe hys swerde of stele:¹
On hys hedde he hyt hym wele.
He hym toke, as in batayle:
That was honoure, wythowten payle.
¶ When the Almayns sye þat dede,
That were hardy men at nede,
How ther lorde takyn was,
They came to hym in that case.
Or they were fro þe felde ladde,
Many of them þe dethe had.
Now came Gye ageyn wyth game
And all hys felows hym wyth same.
He smytth þe Almayns sare:
For nothynge wolde he spare.
¶ All the men of that cyte
That batell myght beholde and see.
They went and armed them styllo
Bothe in yron and in stele.
Owt of the cyte can they wende
Gye to helpe, as men hende.
There men myght see strokys vnryde²
And knyghtys juste on every syde:
Bothe wyth swyrde and wyth spere
Echoon odur sore dud dere.
There men myght see knyghtys crye
And falle downe fro þer horsys on hye,
That were woundyd swythe sore.
Ther dyed many men thore.
There was dedde in a throwe
Fyve hundurde on a rowe.

¹ MS. of hys stele.
² MS. strokys ryde.
By the valour of Guy and Harrawde, the Germans were vanquished.

The Duke was glad of the news, and welcomed Guy; to whom he gave power over all his dukedom.

Faste peyned hym syr Gye:
So dud Harrawde, wytterlye.
The Almayns were ouyrcome,
Some slayne and some nome.
Wele had Gye spedd that day:
So may all that eyte say.

The Almayns be scowmefett
Wythowte any more lett.

Now ys Gye turned ageyne:
Of hys dede he was fayne.
He and hys felows redde,
Ryche prysoners wyth þem ledde.

To hys yynne ys he gone,
He and hys felows euery oon.
Bolde þey were, sawns sayle;
For þey had wonne the batayle.

Gye restyd hym a thrawe:
All hys armvr he dud of drawe.

When þe dewke herde tythyng,
He was then a yolye thynge.

When he wyste, þat Gye was come,
The men slayne and þe steward nome,
He lepe on a palfraye,
To Gyes chaumbur he toke þe way.

He gret hym on feyre manere,
For hys comyng he made gode chere.

'Welcome,' he sayde, 'syr Gye,
And þy felows, sekyrlye.
Now y wene to vengyd be
On myn enmyes, þat hate me.
They warre on me day and nyght:
That ys all wythowte ryght.

Syr Gye, y gene þe all myn honowre
Of my castell and my towre
And also of all my londe,
My men to serve the to þy honde.
From now forward, ye bydde the,
That pou bothe lorde and syre bee.
All schall be at py comawndemente,
Into what steddle that they be seunte.  
I wyll do after youre avyse
And venge me on myn enmyes.'
‘Thou art a curtes man,’ quod Gye;
‘Syr dewke,’ he seyde, ‘gramercy.
Y schall yow helpe wyth all my myght
Wyth gode cowncel to venge the ryght.’
¶ He hath yeuyn hym hys powere
Of all, that he hath far and nere,
He hath genyyn Gye into hys honde
And made hym lorde ouyr hys londe.
He wenyth be hys cownceyle¹
To acorde wyth pe emperowre, sawns fayle.
There they spake togedur stylle,
How ye myght gete ther wylle.
¶ Gye sendyth now a messengere,
That was queynt on hys manere :
He sent into many a dyuers londe,
There he had bee before honde :
Knyghtys v hundurd, y vndurstonde,
There come to hym fro many a londe.
Wolde he nodur stynte nor blynne,
Or he pat londe wyth force myȝt² wynne.
Thorow Gye and hys cownceyle³
All he venged, wythowte fayle.
¶ When pe emperowre all had harde
How Gye wyth pe dewke farde,
Hys stewarde to hys prysonɔ tane,⁴
And how he had hys men slane,⁵
He had grete sorowe and care

¹ MS. cowncel. ² w blotted out before myȝt in MS.
³ MS. cowncel. ⁴ Lines 1723 and 1724 must exchange places, I suppose.
⁵ MS. slayne.

WARWICK.
THE SIEGE OF ARGONE IS TO BE RENEWED.

For hys men, that dedde ware.
‘Lordyngys, what ys yowre redde
Of owre knyghtys, that be dedde?
I schall be neuyr glad nor blythe,
Or y be vengyd on hym swythe.’

召唤了一次议会。

根据公爵欧托的建议

它被决定要由一支军队

由公爵雷纳尔德，

康斯坦布尔瓦尔登和公爵欧托

领导的军队

1 MS. Sesoyne. 1 MS. cowncell.
The besieged prepare for defence.

'Yr,' he seyde, 'wyth gode entente
We schall do thy comawndement.'

¶ Now haue pey ther leue tane,
To ther innes be they gone.

On the morne, when hyt was day,
Vp pey rose and went ther way,
All the captens wyth moche ooste.
All they wente: they made boste.
To the cyte they came bolde,
Twenty hundurde scheldys tolde.

¶ When they sye in that cyte
Men wythowte grete plente,
The bellus faste dud they rynge.
I wote, they made no dwellynge:
They armed them, as Gye badde,
Every man, that harnes hadde.
When pey were come to syr Gye,
To fyght they were redy.
The dewke clepyd Gye there
And bad, yf hys wylle were,
That Harrawde schulde haue wyth hym eche dell
Fyve hundurde knyghtys armed well
And wende forthe, wythowte fayle,
Boldely them for to assayle,

'And ye, syr Gye, a thousande
Boldc men and wele by-dande:
And, yf he haue mystere.
Helpe hym wyth gode chere.
And y wyll come wyth my mayne
Faste prekyng aftur the.
We\(^1\) schall so wyth them fyght
Wyth goddys grace and owre myght,
That we schall haue the maystrye.'

'Thou seyest wele,' seyde Gye.\(^2\)

'Wendyth forthe for to fonde:

\(^{1}\) MS. Yr.\(^{2}\) 1793 after 1794 in MS.
HARRAWDE FIGHTS WITH OTOUN AND HIS MEN.

For nothyng wyll we wonde
To helpe the in thys stowre
For to holde vp thyn honowre.'

When he to the churche came,
Oton was the furste man)
That he sawe in batayle,
For sothe wythowten fayle.

Harrowde, he poght furste to essay
The felle dewke Oton of Payuaye.¹
'Thynkyst thou not of thy velonye,
That þou duddyst my lorde and me
In Lombardye, thy nowne contray?
We schall be venged wele to day
Wyth god dys grace : yf þat y² may,
Wyth my handys y schall essay.'

Now they snyte faste in same :
I wot, ther was but lytull game.
Betwene þem was lytull play :
They drewe swerdys, as y say.
Grete batell þere men myght see :
Nother wolde fro odur fle.

He smote dewke Oton þere so faste,
That he felle downe at þe laste.
Soone he had hym slayne thare,
But hys men came full yare
And socowrde hym, wytterlye,
Or ellys he hadde dedde bee.
Then came hys men wyth myþ and mayn³
And set the dewke on hors agaynº.

Then began a grete batayle :
Echon odur faste can assayle.
He peyned hym faste, syr Harrawt :
To the dewke he made assawt.

An hundurd he slewe, sawns fayle,
That belefte dedde in þat batayle.

¹ 1394—1390, see the note.
² y omitted in MS.
The dewkes herte was full sore,
When he sawe hys men lyte thore:
He began faste to crye
And seyde: 'ye do velanye.

Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'what do ye nowe?
Styr ye nowe for yowre prowre.
Se ye not thys traytowre,
That doyth me thys dyshonowre?
He hath slayne my men goode:
They lye sprawlane in þer blode.
But y be venged on that thefe,
Schall ye neuer be to me lefe.'

† Then þey gedurde on a hepe
And abowte they dudde lepe.
Grete angwysche ys Harrawde beforne,
Now he hap of hys felows lorne.
But he gate helpe, y vndurstande,
For grete socowre came hym on hande.
All þey\(^1\) chacyd hym at the laste:

Then came Gye rydyngye faste.
He mett hym faste fleande:
Hys spere was brokyn in hys hande
And hys hors woundyd on the knee,
That vnethe goo myght hee.

Then seyde Gye: 'turne ageyne.
Where be þy men? be þey slayne?'
'Nay,' seyde he, 'y vndurstande:
I lefte them faste fyghtande,'
Gye beganne on hym to crye:
'Harrawde, come on smertye.'

† When Gye sye dewke Otoun,
Soone he schewyd hys reson:
'Dewke,' he seyde, 'þynkyst þou noght
Of þe reson, that þou me wroght ?
At the pase of thy foreste

\(^1\) MS. þe.
GUY FIGHTS WITH OTOUN AND HIS MEN.

In Lumbardy, þere þou myght beste,
Thou slewe my men wyth sorowe and care,
And y myselfe was woundyd thare.

1868
So god me helpe, þys same day
I schall the 3ylde, þf þat y may.
I the warne, wyth all my myght
Here y wyll wyth the fyght.

1872
I schall neuer be gladde nor blythe,
Or y be vengyd on the swythe.'

"Y Gye turned the hedde of hys stede.
They faght togedur gode spede.
They smeten so faste on þer sheeldes,
That þe pecys flewe in þe feldes.
The dewke smote so syr Gye
On the sheeld smertlye,
That hys spere flewe in thre.

1880
‘For god,’ seyde he,1 ‘þou hyttest me
All wyth myght and wyth mayne.’
Gye turned hym agayne.

1884
There he wolde haue had hys heuydde,2
But sone he was fro hym reevyd
Wyth an hundurde knyghtys toldel
That were hardy men and bolde.
All þey went abowte Gyone,
But he defendyd hym, as a lyon.

1888
In this emergency4 Gye cowmfortyd hys felawe
To do wele a lytull thrawe.

1892
Guy and Harrawde
Now þey smyten faste samen:
I wot, ther was lyttull gamen.
Many knyghtys þeþe dyed þat day
And in þat place full lowe lay.
Gye hym payned that day soo
To take Lumbardes and to sloo;
For he wolde vengyd bee

1 he and þou omitted in MS.
2 MS. hedde.
On the dewke and hys mayne. 1900
Gye dud wele that ylke day
And all hys men wythowte delay
And slewe pe Lumbardes on euery syde
Wyth swendys and wyth sperys vnryde. 1904
Thorow Gye they be overcome,
Many slayne and many nome.
They flewe away, Gye dud peem chace;
Of dedde men was full the place. 1908

¶ Then came the dewke Raynere
And the constabull Waldynere
And wyth them grete company.
In a vale they sawe syr Gye
And faste to hym can they hye
Wyth full grete envye.
Gye drewe to an hylle
And all hys men wyth gode wylle.

Lordyngys,' seyde Gye, 'herkenyþ me,
The ylke men, pat ye¹ yonder see,
Ys the dewke of Cesoyne²
And the erle of Coloyne.
We may not passe, wytterlye:
Wyth them ys grete cheualrye.
They haue vs closed on euery parte:
We may not passe wythowten hurte. 1924 [leaf 178 b, col. 1]
We muste nede oon of the two
Othur to defende vs or to dethe go
Better hyt ys in honowre to dye,
Than to be takyn and hangyd hye.
Therfore euery man be gode couenande
Defende vs, whyll we may staande.
Hyt schall turne to grete honowre
Afturwarde in yche a stowre.' 1928
All þey seyde wyth oon couenande:

¹ MS. y. ² MS. Cesyone.
Many Germans taken, wounded or slain.

‘Defende vs, whyll we may stande.
Helpe hym euyr god, that ys bolde,
Whyll he may stonde and wepon holde.’

1936

Now they wente in hye,
Gye and hys companye
There beganne a grete batayle:
Every man odur faste can assayle.

1940

Or the battell endyd were,
Many a stronge knyght dyed there.
Gye smote the dewke Raynere:

1944

Of hys stede he dud hym bere.
He hyt a nodur in a stownde,
That he felle to the grownde:
Thorow pe body he hym smote,
He rose no more, wele y wote.

1948

Than he smote Waldynere
Owt of hys schekle a quartere.
From hys sadull downe he starte:
I wot, Waldynere hyt dud smerte.
Another knyght he sloo tyte
Wyth hys swyrde, pat wolde byte.
Then forthe came Gylmyne,
The dewke Segwyns cosyn.
The erle smote abowte faste,
But Gye of hys hors hym caste.
Gye peyned hym wele to do
And all hys men dud also.

1952

Of pe Almayns pey haue tane,
Many woundyd and many slane.
When he sawe dewke Raynere
And the constabull Waldynere,
How pe men were broght to grownde
Wyth grete yre yn a stownde,
Gye beganne to crye in hye:
‘3eld yowreselfe or ye dye.’

1960

Than he hyed full faste:

1964

Many Germans were taken priv,
[leaf 173 b, col. 2] soners, wounded or slain.

1968
DUKE SEGWIN ARRIVES.

Them to sloo he was full preste.
For noþyng þey wolde flee,
And Gye faghit full boldele.
Of þer men he slewe many:
To grownde þey wente sodenly.

†Then came dewke Raynere
To mete wyth Gylmyn, þat was full fere.
He hath hym smeten þorow þe syde
And gaue hym a wounde longe and wyde.
Gylmyn fled we at the laste
On hys stede swythe feste.
To dewke Segwyne he ys gone:
The dewke hym knewe and þat anon.
Hys herte was full sare,
When he sye Gylmyn so fare.

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘ye do grete wronge,
That ye dwelle here so longe.
Go and helpe thy men tyte:
They be in poyn to be scowmfyte.’

† When the dewke harde þe tythyng,
That syr Gylmyne dud brynge,
He smote þe stede wyth þe sporys
And spared nother dyke nor forys ¹
And seyde: ‘lordyngys, halve in yowre þost,
That owre men þus dye nought.
Yf þey þus be² slayne and tane,
We bene dedde every man.’

Than þey wendyd³ in þat case
To helpe Gye a grete pase.

† Nowe came the dewke faste rydynge
And the Almayns faste smytyenge.
He smote a knyght in that tyde:
Into the body hyt can glyde.
Or he to Gye wanne,

¹ MS. forors.
² be omitted in MS.
³ MS. wendyd a grete in þat case.
He hedyd many a doghty man.
Now pey be mette thare,
To fyght pey were full säre
Wyth the Almayns anon ryght
Wyth scheldys, sperys and myght.
They schett bothe sperys and dartes:
Faste pey fagt on bothe partes.
Hawberkys pey brake and styfie scheldes
And made to fylie into pe feldus:
Hondes and armes pey leuyd there,
Fete, schankys, schelde and spere.
Wele gode knyghtys many oon,
In the felde pey were slyne.
They were ryche menys sonnes,
All they were feyre gromes,
That pedur came lose to wynne.
Hyt was bothe grete shame and synne:
There fadurs be not well lykynge,
When pey harde of þat tythyng.
Forþþ þen came dewke Raynere.
Slayne he hath Gawtere,
That was to Gye a trewe frende
Owtetakyn Harrawde þe hende.
Gye hyt sawe and was woo:
The dewke to smyte he can goo.
He smote hym hye vppon þe crowne,
That he felle fro hys hors downe.
Gye dud, as an hardy knyght,
And toke hym þere wyth strenkyþe of fyst.
Than hys swyrde he owte hynte
And gaue many an enyll dynte.
Gye toke in that stowre
An hundurd men of grete valowre.
The dewke Segwyn þe stert owte
On a gode stede and a stowte.
Syr Waldynere þere he dud smyte,
That he felle from hys hors tyte.
He hath hym take wyth myght:
Bothe were woundyd in pat fyght.
Now be þe Lumbardes take be tale
And þe Almayns slayne alle.
The dewke and Gye dud þem chace:
Of dedde men was full þe place.

† Tho came Tyrre of Gormoyse
Wyth grete pryde and moche noyse
Wyth an hundurde of gode knyghtys,
That were armed at all ryghtys.
They were comyn wyth lawne and spere
For to helpe the Almayns there.
As þe Almayns awey rode,
Tyrre þem mett, and þey abode.
‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘wyll ye flee?’
Turne ageyne and stonde be me.
Fyght ageyne yowre enmyse
And let be yowre cowardyse,
Or y schall telle the emperowre,
That ye do hym pat dyshonowre.
Yf ye haue be ferde afore hande,
Turne ageyne: y wyll be yowre warante.’
He made þem to turne ageyne þan:
Newe batell they beganne.

†† The dewke Segwyne came full faste:
For nopynge wolde he be laste.
To an Almayne tho he starte
And smote hym streyght to þe harte.
When Tyrre sawe hym dedde,
He cowde than no bettur redder,
But to dewke Segwyn he caste
A grete strook at the laste.
The dewke hym turned on hys manere
And faghþ ageyne wyth gode chere.
They two faghþ togedur wele
TYRRY FIGHTS WITH SEGWIN, HARRAWDE, AND GUY.

Wyth gode swerdys, were made of stele. 2076
Tho came Harrowde on hys stede,
That was a gode knyght at euer y rede.
Wyth a swyrde oon he smote
That he felle downe at hys fote. 2080

Then

That sawe the erle Tyrrye,
A gode knyght and an hardye.

with Harrawde.

Harrawde to smyte sone he yede:
He made hym to falle downe in pat stede. 2084
Aftur hys folke he dud crye:
The Almayns come hastyle.
The dewke Segwyne Peyton sorowe wroght
And hys men to dethe broght. 2088

Wyth strenkyth Peyton were dreuyn ageyne,
Many woundyd and many slayne.

When he sawe the dewke Segwyne,
He was wrothe, be seynt Martyne,
And all in hys wræfe seyde to Gye:
'Thys ys grete schame, wyterlye,
When pus allone pat oon knyght
Schulde vs do that onryght.' 2096

Gye hym answeryd, sawnce fayle:
'Turne ageyne, ye hym batayle.
Hyt ys bettur slayne to be,
Then cowardely away to fle.' 2100

but they soon rallied.

They leyde by Almayns so vpon,
That they gaf back euerychon.
Ageynste pen pydth Tyrrye
And makyth many a man blody. 2104

Now Tyrry and Guy

When Tyrrye sawe syr Gye,
He rode to hym, as knyght hardye.
He wende Gye to haue slayne,
But he was turned soone agayne. 2108

fought together.

Betwene pen two was grete fyght:
Gye hym turned, as an hardy knyght.
They smote togedur so faste,
That there sperys all tobraste.
Than þey toke þer brvght brondys
And faghedogur wyth þer hondys.
Gye claun hys helme and hys schelde,
That þe peecys lay in the felde.
2112

Tyrre smote to Gye a stroke:
As god wolde, hys swyrd broke.
Sone Tyrre turned hys stede
And fledde faste, as he had nede:
2116

Full dere had that stroke be boght,
Had he there dwellyd oght.
The Almayns flewe wyth þer brondys
Bryght drawen in ther hondys.
2120

The dewke Segwyne, for sothe y say,
To þe cyte he toke þe waye.
Syr Gye of Warwyk wyth hym ys gone
And hys men euerychone.
2124

Dewkys, erlys and barons
They broght wyth þem to þer prysouns.
All, that in the cyte were,
2128

Thankyd god wyth gode chere.
Now be þey to þer yunes wente
Euery man wyth gode entente
And thankyd god in þat place,
2132

The dewke ys went vnto hys towre:
The prysoners he lokyd wyth moche honowre,
The dewke Raynere of Sesoyne
And the erle Waldynere of Coloyne
And Gawter, the stewarde,
That was a nobull man and a harde:
He let serve them full tyte,
Or he wolde any mossel byte.
2136
2140

Segwin treated the prisoners very well,
That was gente and a feyre maye:

1 MS. Sesyone.
2 MS. Coleyne.
and committed them to the care of his sister.

'The ryche prysoners joun here take,
Well at ese joun hem make:
Of all jynge the dewke Raynere;
For he ys me bothe leue and dere.'
'Syr,' sche seyde tho full ryght,
'I schall hym serve wyth all my myght.'

The Emperor

Wottyth not of thys comberere.
He ne wyste of thys tythyng:
He pleyed at pe chesses wyth a kynge.
Tho came Tyrrye faste prekande
And hys swerde brokyn in hys hande:
Hys schelde was brokyn, y wene,
In the fyght, there he had bene.
The bryght helme was croked downe
Vnto pe mydward of hys crowne.
The blode ranne downe fro hys syde:
He had grete woundys and wyde.

Raynere and Waldynere taken prisoners and Oton

Takyn ys the dewke Raynere
And of Coloyne the erle Waldynere.
The dewke Oton haje a wounde wyde
Wyth a spere thorow the syde:
Of hys dehte he hath drede,
He wenyth nener to ryde on stede.'

severely wounded.

The Emperor

'Syr emperowre, vndurstande jys jynge:
I schall pe telle newe tythynge.
Thy barons, that were so wyght,
Thou schalt jem nener see wyth syght.
Some be in the felde slane
And some vnto pryson tane.

brought the bad news that his men were routed,

'The ryche emperowre Raynere
Of all jynge the dewke Raynere;
I schall hym serve wyth all my myght.'

Wottyth not of thys comberere.
He ne wyste of thys tythyng:
He pleyed at pe chesses wyth a kynge.
Tho came Tyrrye faste prekande
And hys swerde brokyn in hys hande:
Hys schelde was brokyn, y wene,
In the fyght, there he had bene.
The bryght helme was croked downe
Vnto pe mydward of hys crowne.
The blode ranne downe fro hys syde:
He had grete woundys and wyde.

Raynere and Waldynere taken prisoners and Oton

Takyn ys the dewke Raynere
And of Coloyne the erle Waldynere.
The dewke Oton haje a wounde wyde
Wyth a spere thorow the syde:
Of hys dehte he hath drede,
He wenyth nener to ryde on stede.'

The Emperor

'Syr emperowre harde full well,
That Tyrrye seyde, enery dell.
He ys so sory for that dede,
That for sorowe hys herte dud blede.
He haje holdyn vp hys hande

1 MS. slayne.
2 MS. Coloyne.
'And sworne be god all weldande,
That he schall neuer joyfull bee,
Or he haue that cyte
And also the traytowns tane
And wyth jugement þem slane.¹
¶ He let the comyn belle rynge:
Hys men came wythowte dwellynge.
Sythen he partyd hys grete ooste:
To fyght made þey grete boste.
They ouyrspradde all þe feldys
Wyth spere, hawberk and wyth scheldys.
To the cyte they be wente.
Yonge Gayer þey hauent sente
Wyth fyve hundurde knyghtys wyght:
They were redy for to fyght.
Than the men of that cyte
All the Almayns dud see.
The cuntre of þem was made lyght
Wyth scheldys and wyth helmes bryght.
¶ Then came the dewke Segwyne ryght²
Armed on a rabett wyght³
And seyde: 'Gye, gyf me þy cowncyle:
Wyll we the yonder men assayle?
Or we wyll the walles kepe:
The sekyrlyar may we slepe.'
'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'y schall the saye
Gode cowncell, yf y maye:
An hundurde knyghtys we schall take
And a sawte we schall þem make.
Yonder y see stonde nere
The emperowres sone Gayere
And wyth hym grete companye of knyghtys
Armed wele at all ryghtys.
They be wente before the ooste

¹ MS. slayne. ² b blotted out before ryght in MS. ³ bryght blotted out before wyght in MS.
GAYERE IS TAKEN PRISONER BY GUY.

All for pryde and for boste.
Yf we haue the wars syde,
Into the cyte wyll we ryde.'

which was done. ¶ Nowe be þey an hunurde bolde
Wyght men and wele of tolde.
They wente, wyþhowten fayle,
Syr Gayere to assayle.
Of all þe Almayns þey wyll be wreke:
Of no corde wyll they speke.
To fyght they begynne caste:
Some were of þer horsys caste.
Gayere
Of hys hors he dud hym bere.
There he was take wyþth myght and mayne.
Hys men flewe to the ooste agayne:
So were they chaced at the laste,
That ther hertys almoste braste.
Some were woundyd and some tane
And some scaped and some slane.1

The Germans
¶ When the ooste sye ther men
So faste toward them renne
And wyste also, that Gayere
Was takyn, wyþth euyll chere
They hastyd them swythe
The dewke to brynge owt of lyue.
Than beganne a grete fyght:
Knyghtys many dyed ryght.
Grete lore was thore,

killed many of
Segwin's men.
But the dewke had the more.
He hath lorne many of hys men:
They were away ladde them.

Segwin,
The dewke passed myles thre
From hys men and hys cyte,
But neuer the lees þey dud well,

Guy and
And so dud Gye, as haue y hele.

1 MS. slayne.
And \textit{wyth} hym was Harrawte,  
In batell dud neuyr defawte.  

\textit{\textasciitilde} Then came prekynge Tyrrye,  
A bolde knyght and an hardye.  
He hath smetyn \textit{pe} dewke Segwyne:  
Hys hors he made hym for to tyne.  
The dewke starte on fote:  
He sawe no nodur bote.  
He drewe hys swerde \textit{wyth} myght  
And defendyd hym, as a knyght.  
Ther was no man, he myght come to,  
But full sone he wolde hym sloo.  
Tyrrye assayed the dewke than:  
He hym defendyd, as a man.  
The Almayns come on every syde  
\textit{Wyth} scheldys and speres vnryde.  
He ys woundyd ylle and sore:  
Men wende, he schulde lyue\textsuperscript{1} no more.  

\textit{\textasciitilde} When Gye sye hym haue care,  
Ther was none, \textit{pat} he wold spare,  
Nor none, that he myght reche,  
That had nede of odur leche.  
Than he smote a doghty knyght:  
Of hys hors he made hym to lyght.  
He had hym smetyn swythe sore,  
That he rose vp no more.  
Hys gode swerde he drewe owte  
And smote all, that stode abowte,  
To helpe \textit{pe} dewke fro them away:  
Many a man he slewe that day.  

\textit{\textasciitilde} Than spake syr Gyowne:  
‘Dewke, herkyn to my resone.  
To the cyte wyll we fare:  
We may defende vs no mare.  
Fyve hundurd knyghtys be redy

\textsuperscript{1} MS. \textit{lye}.

\textit{\textasciitilde} MS. \textit{lye}.

\textit{\textasciitilde} MS. \textit{lye}.
To fyght wyth vs here in hye.'
To the cyte be they gone, 2288
Gye and hys men euerychone.
The knyghtys were bolde and hende:
To the wallys can they wende.
There hee wyll hemselfe defende,
Tyll Jesu Cryste them helpe sende 2292
Τ When he emperowre of pys harde,
How hys sone syr Gayer farde,

The whole army
of the Emperor

To hys men can he say:
'Assembull yow thys ylke day. 2296
Wende yow forthe to pat cyte:
All avaunysd schall ye bee.'
Τ Now he can forthe fare,

now assaulted the
town, but it was

To the cyte they come yare. 2300
They schette dartes and speres amonge
Wyth abblasters, that were stronge.
So he schett wyth harowes small
And sett laddurs to the walle. 2304
Wyth ingynes he caste stones
And breke the walles for he nones.
They defendyd he towne wythynne:
A stronge batayle they begynne. 2308

well defended.

[leaf 176 a, col. 1]

Of the Almayns there that day
Many bare the dethe away.
Τ The emperowre had sorowe and syght,1
That he ne may be vengyd ryght. 2312
Every day, wythowten fayle,
He made hys men he cyte to assayle,
But the dewke, Gye and Harrawte
Made mony a grete sawte, 2316
That ther enmyes had grete skathe.
Therwyth he emperowre was wrathe.

The assault,
though repeated
every day, was
unsuccessful.

One day

Τ Hyt was on a somers day,
As y the sothe telle may: 2320
1 MS. sygshed.
When the emperowre had ete
And hys grete care forgete,
He clepyd hys hunte to hym there
And seyde, he wolde chace þe dere
Erly in the morowtyde
In the forest, þat was so wyde,
Bothe at harys and at hyndys
And wylde bestys of odur kyndys,
‘Preuely that hyt be wroght,
That þe dewke wytt hyt noght.’

All harde thys a spy,
That was nye, wyttelye.
Owte of the courte ys he gone
And to þe dewke went sone anone.
He came rennyng all in hye
To the dewke preuelye.
‘Syr dewke,’ he seyde, ‘vndurstande;
For y schall telle the tythande.
The ryche emperowre Raynere
Schall to morowe chace þe dere
In the foreste preuelye
Wyth a lytull companye.
Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y lye þe noght.
Be hym, þat all þys worlde hape wroght,
Ye may to morne there, wyttelye,
Take þem everychone, sekurlye.’

When he had hys errande sayde,
The dewke on hym hys hande layde.
‘Yf hyt be sothe, that thou scyste here,
Thou schalt haue for thy labere
An hundurd besawntys of golde
To chere the wyth (for þou art oolde),
And to dubbe the a knyght
Ryght wythynne þys fowrtnyght.

Gye and Harrawde, wyll ye here?
Come to me everychone here
Guy undertakes to bring the emperor into the town.

Guy offered to wait for the emperor in the forest with a hundred knights, and, asking him to dine with the Duke, bring him, by any means, into the town.

And Rosaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

Guy offered to wait for the emperor in the forest with a hundred knights, and, asking him to dine with the Duke, bring him, by any means, into the town.

The best counsele, that y maye.
An hundurd knyghtys y schall take,
That wyll wende for thy sake,
And myselfe wyth them wende
To the emperowre full hende.
Y wyll hym prey on feyre manere
To come and dyne wyth yow here,
He and all hys companye:
We schall pyn serne rychelye.
Y rede, ye dwelle here at hame:
To take yowre lorde hyt were schame.
Dyght thy pales nobullye:
Loke, the mete be all redye.
Yf he wyth loue wyll not bowe,
He schall wyth awe, as y trowe.
What wyth strenckyth and wyth game,
Y schall pyn brynge all same.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.

And Eofaran' (that was an hardy man):
Ther was none wysear in Almayn,
Certenly, as ye yow telle,
For to geue gode counsele.
'Lordlyngys, what ys yowre redde,
All, that be gedurd in pys stedde,
Of owre lorde the emperowre,
To whom we owe grete honowre?
He schall in the mornynge
Wende owte an huntyng
But wyth a small companye:
Thus hyt was tolde me.
Nowe may we wyllhowte care
Venge vs on hym thare.'

The Duke readily assented.
Schall wende wyth yow, yf mystur bene. 1 2392
Ye schall wende to that foreste
And kepe hym, pere ye may beste.
I prey yow, let for nothynge,
But that ye hys body brynge.' 2396
Gye hym armed swythe the well
Bothe in yron and in stele.
He hyed on hys errande faste :
Hys felows folowed hym at pe laste.

The emperowre rose yeelye
And so dud Gye, wyttelyle.
The emperowre and hys barons
Wente to pe forest of Lyons.
When pat pey come thore,
The hunters fonde a wylde boore,
That was bothe wylde and kene :
He slewe pe howndys all bedene.
The hunters faste dud hym chace :
The emperowre folowed wyth hys mace.
They had redyn but a whyle,
Vnnethe the mouuntaunce of a myle :
They sye nerehande them a lyght,
As hyt were of helmes bryght.
All full were the feldus
Bothe of hawberkys and of scheldus.
'We be take,' they seyde, 'allas,
Confowndyd and slone in thys place.
Tyrrye, my frende so lefe and dere,
Come and see, that y sey here.'
He behelde on the hylle:
'Thou mayste þem see, and þou wylle :
They haue vs beset on euery syde,
That we may nodur go nor ryde.

The next morning

the Emperor went into the forest of Lyons.

A boar was unsloughed.

after following the beast for about a mile, saw armed men.

1 bene is evidently wrong, and therefore kene in the preceeding line is probably wrong. Qy. fre: he?
2 This line appears to be corrupt. See note.
Guy, approaching with an olive-branch in his hand,

They will vs take thys ylke day
Qwyeck or dedde, yf they maye.

They be the dewkys men Segwyne:
God gyf them schame and pyne.
Gye ys formeste in that dede
And armed on a gode stede.'

Tyrry advised him to retreat,
while he with-stood the enemy,

but the Emperor refused.

They are taken by Duke Seswin's men,' cried the Emperor.

‘We are taken by Duke Seswin's men,' cried the Emperor.

Then seyde Tyrrye to the emperowre:
‘Wende yow hens wyth honowre ;
For y wyll fyght, whyll y maye stande
Wyth thys swyrde in my hande.
Yf y may mete wyth Gye,
He schall haue scathe, wyutterlye.
All, pat come to my hone, Schall haue skathe wyth my bronde.
Whyll that y be take or slone,
3yt ye schall be hens gone,'

‘Nay certys,' seyde the emperowre,
‘Ther schall me neuer falle pat dyshonowre.'
He armed hym wele, as a man,
And on hys stede lepe he than.

Wyth that come Gye prekyng there:
A branche of olyfe in hys hande he bere.
That was a feyre tokenyng
Of pees and of loueyng.
Syr Gye dud of hys hode
And gret pe emperowre wyth goode :
‘He the saue, syr emperowre,
That made pys worlde, and pys honowre
And thy barons, that be wyth the
Gode cowncell for to gene the.
The dewke yow sendyth tythynge
Be me in thys morownyng.

And preyeth the, yf y wylle bee,
To come and dwelle in hys cyte,
Ye and all yowre companye:
Ye schall be seruyd rychelye.

invited the Emperor

and his companions in the
THE EMPEROR GOES WITH GUY INTO THE TOWN.

He wyll the ȝelde castell *and* towre
And the cyte *wyth* grete honowre.
Yf þat he haue ȝught mysdoone,
Hyt schall be amendyd soone.'

\[71\]

\[2464\] The Emperor

\[2468\] name of Duke Segwin, who he said was willing to surrender.

\[2464\] [leaf 177 a, col. 1] asked his men's advice.

\[2472\] Tyrry was

\[2476\] Tyrvy was accepting the invitation.

\[2480\] So the Emperor and his men

\[2484\] accompanied Guy into the town.

\[2488\] Here

\[2492\] they were served very well.
Wyth swannes and wyth herons,¹
Wyth hertys and wyth brawnes.
Gye hym payned on hys manere
Hym to serue and make goode chere.

Ther was none so lytull a knaue
In þat cowrte, þat mete wolde haue,
But to hym was sente plente
Of þe beste in þat cuntre.

The dewke Segwyne helde hym behynde:
He dradj þe emperowre wolde hym schende.
He was seruyd wyth the prysons²,
And wyth hym were grete barons.

The emperor erly arose
And to holy churche sone he gose,
Wyth hym hys grete baronage,
That were of dyuers langage.

The dewke rose erly on the morow
And to þe prysoners made he sorowe:

'Lordyngys, y bydde yow alle,
That ye for me downe falle
Before my lorde the emperowre,
That ys a man of grete valowre,
And prey hym, pur charyte,
That he wyll forgeue me
Hys yre and hys malecolye,
That y neuer seruyd, wytterlye.'³

All theyseyde wyth gode wylle:
'Ve schall the helpe lowde and stylle.
We schall anon wyth hym wende
And pray hym to be thy frende.'

He made hym nakyd, for he was meke,
Sawe hys schurte and hys breke.
All, that euyr dud hym see,

¹ The rhyme was, no doubt, originally herouns: braouns. See the note.
² MS. prysoners.
³ First y in wytterlye altered from e in MS.
SEGWIN PUTS HIMSELF AT THE EMPEROR'S MERCY.

For hym had grete pyte.
To the emperowre he ys gone:
A branche of olyfe hath he tane.
Barefote he went porow pe strete:
Many a man for hym dud grete.¹
Dewkys, erles and barons
Went wyth hym, pat were prysons.²
They went to the churchewarde:
God pem spede and seynt Rycharde!³

When they were to churche come,
The emperowre they fonde anon.⁴
'Syr emperowre,' sayde Segwyne,
'Ye haue had for me grete pyne.
Syr,' he sayde, 'y wyll be dedde
Ryght in pys same stedde
Or be drawe wyth horsys stronge
Or ellys on galows hye to honge.
Haue here thys swyrde bryght
And smyte of my hed ryght.
Take my londys and my fees,
My castels and my cytees.
I them the graunte vutterlye;
For y dud that folye,
When y slewe thy cosynw dere,
Me defendawnt on all manere.
The dewke of Coloyne⁵ was per ryght
And many an nodur doghty knyght:
Yf any be, that sey therageyne,
That he wyth felonye was slayne,
Yf y may not defende me,
Hangyd be y on a tree.'⁶

'Leue fadar,' sayde Gayer,
'Haue mercy on the dewke here.
He may yow helpe in yowre mystere
In euery londe farre and nere.

¹ MS. wepe. ² MS. prysoners. ³ MS. Coleyne.
Forgeue hym, pur charyte,  
Or ye schall newer haue yoye of me.'

Than spake the dewke Raynere:

'Ye oght to loue hym dere  
(When he ys put in yowre mercy,  
To leue or dye he ys redye),  
When he yowre systur some sloo  
Hym defendawnt, so mote y goo:  
Ye ther be any knyght,  
That wyll preue, y sey not ryght,  
For hym wyll y here fyght  
And defende hym wyth my myght.  
But ye the dewke foryene,  
Y schall warre on yow, whyll y leue.'

Forp fen came erle Waldynere:

'Syr emperowre, y say here,  
I loue the dewke ouyr all thynge.  
He hath hyt seruyd, wythowte lesynge.  
We felows ben togedur plyght.  
Ye do hym any vnryght,  
I schall wende to my cuntre  
An oost to gedur and wende wyth the.'

The stewarde spake anon ryght:

'The dewke ys a doghty knyght.  
He hath done grete honowre:  
Whyll ye be in hys owne towre,  
He puttyth hym in pyn owne wylle  
To leue or dye; and pat ys skylle.  
Ye oght to grawnt at hys askynge,  
Yf hyt were a gretter thynge.  
Forgeue hym, lorde, py euyl wylle:  
To do hym harme hyt were no skylle.'

Gye spake to the emperowre:

'Lorde, for yowre grete honowre  
Here my prayer at thys tyme.  
Haue mercy on dewke Segwyne
THE EMPEROR FORGIVES SEGWIN, TO OTOUN'S VEXATION.

And wyth couenande y schall bee
Yowre man in euerie cuntry
Yow to helpe in yowre mystere.

In euerie cuntry ferre and nere
I schall the seyne lowde and stylle.
Forgyue the dewke þyn euyll wyll.'

'Lordye,' seyde erle Tyrrye,
'Of the dewke thou haue mercy.'

If ye thorow Segwyne
Haue lorne Saddok, yowre cosyn;
In stede of yowre cosyn schall he be
And yow to serue wyth lewte.'

When he had seyde on hys manere,
'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'that be here,
Ye haue me bydden lowde and stylle
To forgyue þe dewke myn euyll wyll,
For he slewe Saddok the gode,
My systurs sone, myn owne blode.

He was a doghty knyght:
I louyd hym moste of any wyght.

I forgyue hym at thys tyde
(Y see hym meke wythowten pryde)
All my wrath and my euyll chere:
He schall be to me bope lefe and dere.'

Dewkys, erlys and all dud crye:
'Syr emperowre, gramere!' 
All þey felle downe ywyssse
Wepyngye for yoye and blys.

Now haue þey kyste and be gode frendys,
And many to ther ynne wendys.

Than come forthe dewke Otoun:
In all þat londe þer was not a more felon.
'Syr emperowre, what haue ye wroght?
Ye be all to grownde broght.
Ye haue forgyuyn here
The dethe of yowre cosyn dere.
What man schulde hane of the drede,  
Yf þey be quytt of ther mysdede?  
And ye them drawe and hongyd hye, 
All wolde yow drede, þat hyt had sye,  
Bothe Gye and Segwyne,  
That yow neuer dud but sorowe and pyne.
Now schall ye þem lóe dere,  
More, then any odur fere.’  

Guy  
¶ Whan Gye harde the dewke speke  
(He thoght longe to be awreke):  
‘Then lyest þou, dewke Oton),  
When þou spekyst of soche felo)  
Ageyne the dewke or ellys me:  
Ryght y wyll, hyt prouyddle bee.  
Thou art a thefe and theffes fere:  
That ys sothe (y proue hyt here),  
When þou laste betrayed me  
And slewe my men in thy cuntre.  
Yf þou wylt saye ageyne ryght,  
Defende the nowe wyth me to fyght.  

challenged him,  
The grace of god fro me be reenyd,  
But y smyte of thy henydde.’¹  
¶ There he can hys glone wage  
Ryght before the baronage.  
They were departyd all to rathe,  
That neþer odur dud no skathe.  
The emperowre swere hys othe:  
Whedur of them dud odur lothe,  
He schulde be drawe and hangyd tyte

but the Emperor forbade them to fight.  
Wythowt any more respyte.  
Pese ys cryed amonge every man:  
Ther was none, that spake than).  

[leaf 173 a, col. 2] Raynere was wedded  
¶ There come forthe dewke Raynere  
To Segwyne wyth gode chere  

to Segwin’s sister,  
And askyd hym hys syster² dere

¹ MS. hedde.  
² MS.daughter.
SEGWIN MARRIES THE EMPEROR'S DAUGHTER.

Hur to haue vnto hys fere. 2672
He grauntyd anon wyth honowre
That mayde, that was bryght in bowre,
And he hur weredyd wyth moche game,
And to hys cuntre they went same. 2676

The emperowre on the morne
The dewke Segwyn calde hym beforne:
'Syr,' he seyde, 'stondlyth here.
Thou schalt haue my doghtur dere.'
'Syr,' he seyde, 'god of heuyu'
3ylde yow for hys nameys seuyu.'
The brydale was makyd than:
Feyrer sawe ther neuer man.

Guy to Segwyne toke hys way
To take hys leue wele awaye.
'Syr dewke,' seyde Gye full yare,
'I may here dwelle no mare.
Y haue seruyd the in thy were:
Yf any man wyll more the dere,
Sende aftur me, hardylye,
And y wyll come, sekerlye.'

'Syr,' seyde the dewke, 'gramercy:
Hyts vndersenyd, verylye.
But ye schall dwelle here wyth me:
Of my castels and my cyte,
Of my goodeys the more dele
Y schall the gene, so haue y hele.'
He toke hys leue and went hys way:
The dewke wepte, y dare well say. 2670

The emperowre can thens wende
And wyth hym Gye and Harrawde hende.
He bad hym castels and ryche cyteys,
Grete honowrs and large feys.
On ryches thought he noght,

1 v blotted out before ys in MS.
2 Gye blotted out before hym in MS.
GUY STAYS WITH THE GERMAN EMPEROR

On odur thyngys was hys thoght.

Staying in Germany,

To Almoyne gone, wytterlye.

All the men of that cuntre

Preysed Gye for hys bewte,

He went to pe wode to chace pe dere

And after wyth haukys to the ryuere.

Guy one day

On a day, as Gye dud ryde

On hantynge be the see syde,

He sawe a dromande to londe dryue:

Faste he hyed hym thedur belyue

And askyd, what that they dud pere

And of what cuntre pat pey were,

Fro whens pey came and what pey soght

And what maner marchandyse pay broght.

‘Hyt semeth to me be yowre chere,

That ye haue grete ryches here.’

Vp than starthe a marynere

(Of langauge pere was none hys pere)

And seyde: ‘we came thedur on pe stronde

Fro Constantyne, the nobull londe.

We be marchandyse of that cyte,

That fro that cuntre chaced bee.

The ryche sowdan of Sysane

(To honowre god wyll he not payne),

xy kyngys of hethynesse

And syxty amerals more and lesse,

That haue besieged the emperowre

Wyth mony knyghtys and grete socowre.

Ther ys not lefte in that cuntre

Castell, towre nor cyte,

But hyt ys brente and stroyed all;

And the emperowre and hys men all,

To Constantyne he ys wende

1 Sysane is probably corrupt. See note.
2 MS. Sarazyns.
3 d in wende altered from t in MS.
GUY GOES TO HELP THE GREEK EMPEROR.

Hym and hys men to defende,
That fought wyth sarazyns kene,
That every day doyth them tene.
An hundurd myle may men wende,
Or they any crysten man fynde.
We be passyd wyth grete Payne,
That we ne were take or slayne.
We be comen to thys cuntre:
Veire and Gryce we haue plente,
Golde and syluyr and rych stones
Of grete vertue for the nones,
Clothyys of golde of grete pryce
And many odur marchandyse.'

When pe marchandyis had all sayde,
Gye hys hande on hym layde
And betaght hym gode day:
To hys men he toke the way
And seyde: 'Harrowde, what redyst pou?
Yf me thy counsell nowe.
I wyll take leue at pe emperowre.
Hyt wyll be moche for owre honowre:
To Constantyne wyll we fare
The emperowre to helpe thare.
Marchandyss me tolde of that lande,
That he ys besegyed stronglly on euery honde.
The hethyn) dystroye castell and cyte,
And mekyll anoyen crystyante.'
'Syr,' seyde Harrawde, 'y rede wele
To wende thedur, so haue y hele.'

They yede to the emperowre
And toke per leue wyth grete honowre.
He was sory of ther partynge
And offerd pem golde and rych rynge.
Therof had they no thought;
For, where pey come, pey wantyd noght.
He toke an hundurde knyghtys wyght:
GUY ARRIVES AT CONSTANTINOPLE.

with a hundred
knights

at Constantinople

To the emperowre they went ryght. 2776
They had gode wynde and passyd pe see: 2777
The derer they come wyth harte free.
The emperowre harde seye than, 2778
Gye was comyn to be hys man.
Of hys comynge was he blythe
And sende aftur hym swythe
Wyth an erle of grete renowne.
The emperowre seyde hys resone:

was heartily
welcomed by

[leaf 179 a, col. 1]

Emperor Ernis,

'Welcome, Gye of Warwyck,
In all the worlde ys none pe lyke.
I have harde the preyed be
Yn many a dyuers cuntre.
Y trowe, pat ye schall me avayle
Wyth yowre helpe and counsayle.
The sarasyns haue beset me
And lefte me nothur towne nor cyte,
But oonly this, iat we are yyne.
Some pey stroye and some pey brenne.
They slewe my men on a day
Thretty thousande, for sope to say.
Now y prey the for Mary sone
And for the rode he was on done,
That thou helpe to venge me
And make my londe recouerd to bee.
I schall pe geue my doghter dere
And all my londys bope far and nere.'

Guy very soon

H e hap hym restyd but a whyle,
But the mowntance of a myle.
He sawe many armed men

who offered Guy
the hand of his
daughter.

\[2776, 2777, 2778, 2780, 2784, 2788, 2792, 2796, 2800, 2804, 2808\]
Faste in the strete renne. 2812
‘What,’ he seyde, ‘ys all thys fare,
That y see in the strete thare?
I see knyghtys armed wele
Bothe in yron and in stele.’
Than bespake a man wyse
Of Ynglonde and Englysche:
‘Hyt ys the admyrall Coldran),
A cosyn of the ryche sowdan).
He ys grete, hye and longe:
In all pys worlde ys none so stronge.
Hys wepon ys smered wythall
Wyth venome bytterer þen he galle.
Ther ys no man in þorthe, y wote,
But he schulde dye, and he hym smote.
He slewe my lordys sone þe emperowre
Thys endurs day in a stowre.
Moche shame he hath vs wirght
And ofte on vs warre broght.
Ther ys no knyght in londe so wyght,
That durste ones wyth hym fyght.
Wyth hym ys the kyng of Turrye,
That ledyth all that chenahyre.’

¶ Gye seyde to hys companye:
‘Arme we vs all in hye.
The sarasyns wyll we assayle:
To smyte faste we wyll not payle.’
They be armed euery man:
On ther horsys they lepe than.
They went forthe to fyghtynge:
I wot, ther was no lettynge.
Gye can the admerall assayle:
Hawberke nor schelde myght not avayle.
The hedde fro the body he schare:
To the emperowre a man hyt bare.
When þe emperowre hys hedde had,
Guy's Men are very valiant.

He was bothe joyfull and gladde.

Harrowde smote the kyng of Turrye,
The moste schrew of all pe crye:
Thorow pe body he gaf hym a wounde,
That dedde he felle to the grownde.
Than come prekyng Gandyners,
Of Almayne a knyght ferse:
Smeytn he hath Rayndowne,
A more traytur was nener none.
Euyn in two he claе hys harte:
That was a strock smarte.
Then came forthe Mordagowre,
The steward to the emperowre:
Bolde he was and hardye,
But a\(^1\) traytowre, wytetlye.
He smote there a sarazyyn:
Hys hedef he made hym\(^2\) to tyne.

He sturde hym full boldelye,
And so dud all, that were wyth Gye.
Whyl Gye had hys wepon in holde,
He slewe many sarasyns bolde.
So dud Harrowde, the gode knyght:
He payned hym faste for to fyght.

But some of them were nevertheless killed by Astadart

And helde fyght begle and longe.
Then came forthe Astadart,
A sarasyn of a wyckyd parte.
The burges sone of Burrye,
A bolde knyght and an hardye,
Syr Tebawde, he hath slayne
Wyth a scharpe swyrde and wyth mayne.

Then come forthe Aulart,
A bolde sarasyn, wyth a darte:
Syr Gylmyn he broght to grownde
And gaue hym the detheys wownde.

\(^1\) MS. And no. See note. \(^2\) MS. hyt.
That sawe Harrawde the gode:
He was sory, be my hode. 2884
Aulart he hyt wyth gode harte:
The hedde fro the body starte.
¶ When Astadart sawe pat dede, 2888
For sorowe he wolde nere wede.
He smote Harrowde anon ryght
And he defendyd hym, as a doghty kny3t.
They two smeten togedur faste,
That of þer horsys downe were þey caste. 2892
There þey wyth ther brondys bryght
Faste togedur they dud fyght.
They brake scheldes and speres longe:
They were knyghtys styffe and stronge. 2896
On þer helmes þey smote wyth soche dynte,
That þe fyre flewe owt, as hyt dōpe of flynte.
Then Harrowde hym folowde faste,
But to hym come helpe at the laste. 2900
Ther came an hundurde sarasyns therd,
That dud hym moche stronge pyne.
Ther þey had hym almoste slone,
But syr Gye come anone. 2904 [leaf 179 b, col. 2]
Hys swyrde harde dud he grype:
The hed of of oon he can wype,
Another he slowe wythowte lettyngne,
The thrydde also, wythowte lesynge. 2908
He hym helpyd at that nede
And sett hym vpon hys stede.
There he slowe and broght to grownde
Many sarasyns in that stownde. 2912
On bothe partes were slayne vnyrde,
But moo on the sarasyns syde.
Gye and hys meyne
Haue slayne of them plente. 2916
¶ The sarasyns flewe home ageyne.
Gye them chacyd wyth myȝt and mayne.

Aulart at last was slain by Har-
rawde,
who on that account
was vehemently attacked by
Astadart

Many were slain, but the Saracens lost most men.

The Saracens fled.
Guy, pursuing them,
Or they were of of the felde wente,
Many were slayne and all toschente.
3yt was Astadart behynde,
That the crysten men schende;
But he flewe at the laste
On a rabett swyfte and faste.
Hys gode schelde was fro hym reeuyd,
His helme was broke to1 hys henyyde.2
Gye hym sawe and was drreye,
That he schulde passe so lyghtlye.
Gye faste aftur hym dud ryde:
For nothyng he wolde abyde.

called on Astadart
to turn and joust
with him.

'I the swere, wytterlye,
And oon tyme juste wyth me.
Be the trowthe, pat y leue on,
Here ys no man, but y allone.'

He answered

† Then seyde Astadart to syr Gye:
That ys the doghter of the sowdan).

But after a
fierce combat

That he must have
Gay's head
for his lemmman.

'Wyth yre Gye smote hym in felde:
Ther sauyd hym nodur hawberk nor shelde.
Astadart smote Gyone
Thorowe hawberke and hakatone
Ynto the body wyth a spere:
Soche a dynte had he neuer ere.
Wyth yre Gye smote hym in felde:
Ther sauyd hym nodur hawberk nor shelde.
He smote hym wyth grete envye
Wyth a spere thorow the bodye.

1 Before to the abbreviation of and is blotted out.
2 MS. hedde.
Astadart flewe awey:
Gye hym folowed, per ma fay.
The lyght rabet bare hym awey:
Gye was sory, the sothe to say.
¶ Now ys Gye to hys felowes went:
To the cyte they be lente.
In the cyte ys game and glee,
That the sarasyns scowmset bee.
The emperowre sende aftur Gye
And hym honowred: he was worthy.
The emperowre seyde: ‘be seynt Rogere,
I wyll the geue my doghter dere.
Thou art a man of grete valoure.
Ryght wolde, pou schuldest be emperowre.
All, that euyr be my mayne,
I wyll, that they bowe to the.’
¶ The steward sate at the borde
And was sory of that worde.
To Gye he had grete envye
And thoght to do hym trecherye.
Astadart rode toward the ooste:
Moche was fallyn of hys boste.
In hys body he had a troncho;
He helde hys honde on hys arson.
Bothe behynde and before
The blode ranne downe of hys gore.
Hys helme was leyde on the syde:
Hys schelde was smeten in pecys wyde.
Of the dethe he had grete care
And vnto the sowdan can he fare.
The sowdan Astadart can see
And hys woundys, pat blody bee.
Quod the sowdan: ‘what eyleth the?
Telle me, who hath woundyd the?’
Quod Astadart: ‘y schall yow saye
Wyckyd tythyngys, be my fay.

Guy and his fellows returned into the city, where everybody was glad of the victory.
The Emperor once more offered Guy his daughter’s hand, and desired him for his successor.
His Steward was very sorry for that, and plotted mischief.
Astadart came to the Soudan
[leaf 180 a, col. 2] came to the Soudan
with the bad news of the defeat.
The admyrall Cordran ys dedde,
And the kynge of Turrye etyp neuer bredde.
An hundred men and 3yt moo
Before Gye to dethe can goo.'

\[\text{\texttt{\textcopyright}}\] Than bespake the sowdan:
'Ys thys trewe, wythowten layne?
How schulde me falle ßys auentowre ?
Is ther any socowre comen to þe emperowre ?'

'Ye, for sothe,' quod Astadart,
'A schrewde knyght and of wyckyd harte.
Ther ys none so stronge in all ßys lande,
That schulde stonde a stroke of hys hande.
In all thys worlde ys none hym lyke :
Men calle hym Gye of Warwyke.
Ther may no man stonde hys stroke,
Thogh he were as stronge as an noke.
He hath an hundred knyghtys wyth hym,
Of Almayne the beste therynne.
He hath me þorow the body smytte :
Hyt ys my dethe, ye may wele wytt.'

The sowdan sware be hys crowne,
Be Apolyn and be Mahowne,
That he schall neuyr wele be,
Or he haue tane that cyte.

And all herde a queynt spye
And came anon vnto syr Gye
And tolde hym, how þe sowdan
Wolde besenge the cyte anon.
The emperowre wysste nothynge
Of the spyes smyt tythynge.
When he wysste hyt, he was full yare ;
For to hys herte hyt dud grete care.

\[\text{\texttt{\textcopyright}}\] The emperowre was full fayne,
When the sarsyns were so slayne.
He calde forthe hys fawkenere

\[\text{? sure.}\]
And seyde, he wolde to the ryuere
Wyth hys hawkys hym to playe:
Hys men went wyth hym pat daye.
Afturwarde a lytull whyle,
When he was passyd but a myle,
Then came forthe Morgadoure:
Iwysse, he was a traytowre.
'Syr Gye,' he seyde, 'so haue y hele,
In my herte y loue the wele.
I haue castels and ryche cytees,
Brode londys and ryche feys:
All, y wyll, that they be yowre;
For ye be of grete valowre.
Y desyre ouyr all thynge
Yowre worschyp and yowre looueyng.
Go we now to chaumbur same
On some maner to make vs game,
To the chesses or to the tabels
Or ellys to speke of fabels
Before the bedde of pat feyre maye;
For sche the lonyth bope nyght and day.'
Into hur chaumbur po pey yode:
Before hur bedde the mayde stode.
'Syr Gye,' sche seyde, 'welcome ye be:
Ys hyt yowre wylle to kysse me?'
Gye hur kyssyd curteslye
And sythen they spake preuelye.
Then downe was the chekur leyde
And before pe maydenys bedde dysplayde.
Gye was queynte of hys playe
And wanné pe furste game, wythowten nay,
And the tother wyth the beste
And the thrydde, or he wolde reste.
Vp starte the steward than
(He was an envyows man)
And seyde: 'Gye, dwelle here stylle
And solace I mayde at hur wylle. I schall wende to the cyte
And come ageyne sone to the.'
¶ Forthe wente Morgadowre
And lefte Gye in he maydens bowre. The emperowre sone he fonde.
'T Steward,' he seyde, 'what tythande?
Telle me sone and lye noght:
Of the sarsyns harde thou oght?'

Ye haue a knyght at yowre wage:
For yow he ys an euell page.
To day yowre chaumbur he ha\p brokyn
And wyth thy doghtur he hath spokyn:
All wyth myght and wyth mayne
There he hath by hur layne.
And yf ye leue not me,
Hye yow home and ye may see,
In the chaumbur where he ys
The maydyn for to clyppe and kysse.
Therfore y come to telle hyt yow:
For sothe, hyt ys agayne by prowe.
Yf ye hym\ take and bynde faste
And in yowre pryson hym\2 lowe caste
And aftur be yowre mayne
Jugge hym\3 for to hange hye,
Then schall men yow sore drede
And do to yow no wyckyd dede:
Hyt schall be moche for your honowre
To slee soche a traytowre;
And to Almayne wyll y fare
For to loke, what they do thare,
And y schall brynge yow companye
Thorowe the londe sone in hye

1 MS. _them._ 2 MS. _hem._ 3 MS. _them._
To venge vs on owre enmyse,
That haue vs stroyed in all wyse.'

"Do way," sayde the emperowre.
For all my cyte wyth the honowre
Wolde not Gye do me that skathe,\(^1\)
That pou haste sayde here full rathe;
For he ys a full trewe knyght
Bothe be day and be nyght.
Y haue hym behet my doghtur dere:
I wyll not breke my couenande here.'

When Morgadoure sawe hyt wele,
That he hym louyd enery dele,
Of hys worllys he can forthenke;
But yyt he thoght anodur wrenke.\(^2\)
To the chaumbur he ys gone,
Ther Gye was wyth pe maydyn allone.
When he was comen nere Gye,
He sayde: 'herkyn) preuelye.
Gye,' he sayde, 'be seynt Mychell,
Y loue the in my herte well.
Therfore y warne pe of py skathe:
I rede, that pou fle hens rathe.
Hyt ys tolde the emperowre,
That pou wyth strencky\(p\) haste brokyn hys bowre
And hys doghtur pou haste by layne:
Therof ys he nothyng fayne.
He sware be hys ryght hande,
Yf pou be fowndyn in hys lande,
Thou schalt be drawe and hongyd hye:
No nodur dethe schalt thou dye.
Hye the hens for anythyng:
Loke, thou make no dwellynge.
Yf ye be fownde in thys cyte,
Thou muste be sayne and py meyne.'

\(^1\) After this line the catchword, That thou haste, by another hand.
\(^2\) MS. wrenche.
GUY RESOLVED TO GO OVER TO THE SOUDAN.

Guy, filled with indignation,

'Allas,' he seyde, 'that ys wronge.
Nowe haue y dwellyd here to longe,
When y schall for my mede
Suffur dethe for my gode dede.
For anythyng, \textit{pat} er y wroght,
Wythowte gylte hyt ys on me broght.
To day at morne, so hane y hele,
Be hys worde he lounyd me wele.
Who may leue anythyng
In feyre wordys or feyre behetynges?

To day, when he to rever yede,
He hyght me londe \textit{and} moche mede.
Wyth wronge he wyll slo me here
For the wordys of a losengere.'

Owt of pe chaumbur Gye ys went
All drery \textit{wyth} hevy entent.
To hys ynne he ys gone
And calde hys felows everychone.

'Lordyngys,' he seyde, 'arme yow all sone.
Here ys no dwellyng for vs to wonne.
We ben bewryed to the emperowre,
That we schulde do hym dyshonowre.
Be hym, that made sonne \textit{and} moone
And for vs was on rode done,
Or we be tane \textit{and} slayne \textit{wyth} wronge,
Many of them schall dye amonge.
Than schall they wytt, wytterlye,
That we be flemed falselye.'

They armed themselves,

They armed \textit{hem} hastily \textit{pat} tyde
And on \textit{per} horsys \textit{pey} can styrdye.
Gye went \textit{wyth} hys mayne
Wyth wrath\textsuperscript{1} fro that cyte.
Toward the soudan can \textit{pey} fare
To serue hym and dwelle thare.

1 \textit{f} blotted out before \textit{wrath} in MS.
Fro huntynge wyth moche honowre.

The wedur was clere and day lyght:

He sawe helmes many and bryght.

The emperowre asked then,

What were all tho armed men.

Oon seyde, hyt was syr Gyowne,

‘All in wrath goyth fro þe towne

In odur stedde to do hys beste

Wyth schelde and spere to fyght preste.

He went in wrath, so hau e y hele,

Armed on a stede wele.’

 When the emperowre harde so saye,

He toke hys hors and rode hys way.

He stroke the stede wyth the sporys: ¹

He spared nother rugge nor forys.²

‘Syr Gye,’ he seyde, ‘stonde style

And telle me now, what ys þy wylle?

And who hath trespasted so to the,

That þou wylt now wende fro me?

My dere frende, seye me sone:

What thynge ys the mysdone?

Haue y trespaste anythynge?

Telle me now wythowte lesynge;

For, what thynge some euyr hyt be,

That hath þe greuyd in crystyanute,

Hyt schall be dressyd thys ylke day,

How some euyr ye wyll say.

I vndurstande, that ye wyll fare

To the sowdan and dwelle thare.

I schall neuer haue þen yoye nor blysse,

Wyll y in thys worlde ys.

Golde and syluyr he may þe take

And a ryche man he may þe make;

Therfore þou wylt goo dwelle þere

And fyght sore agenste vs here.’

¹ Ms. spurrys. ² Ms. forows.
Guy answered: "Sy, quod Gye to the emperowre, Schall y neyur be traytowre. Hyt was me tolde in the cyte, That nede had ye none of me. Nor no wylle of my seruyse, For y serued yow wyth fantyse. Therfore thedur wyl y fare And my seruyse schall be thare, Or ellys y wolde not agenst yow be For all the golde in crystyante."  

The Emperor prayed him to return: everything should be as he pleased. 

Now Guy knew that the Steward had deceived him. Guy informed the Emperor of the new assault intended by the Saracens. 

\[1\] MS. fantasyes. \[2\] MS. betrayed. \[3\] together? The whole line written in the margin by the same hand.
He hath sworne be Apolyne,  
That all schall dye, \textit{pat} be \textit{þeryne}.\textsuperscript{1}  
The emperowre seyde to Gye sone:  
\textquote{As ye wyll, hyt schall be done.}  
Y haue geue yow my powere  
And therto gode auentere.\textsuperscript{1}  

Yf they wyll vs assayle,  
We schall vs defende, sawns fayle.'  
\textsuperscript{1} Gye calde forthe \textit{pe} constabull,  
A nobull man \textit{and} of cowncell stabull:  
Crystofor was hys ryght name,  
So god schylde hys body fro schame.  
\textquote{Syr,' he seyde, `herkyn hedur:}  
Take we owre cowncell now togedur.  
To morne schall we assayled bee:  
Wyll we holde the cyte  
Or ellys \textit{an} kepe in the felde  
To fyght \textit{wyth} \textit{an} \textit{wyth} spere \textit{and} schelde?  
Or they be passyd the hyllys hye,  
We schall \textit{an} wrath, be my nye.'  

\textsuperscript{1} Gye seyde to the constabull:  
\textquote{Thys cowncell schall be holde, \textit{wyth}owt fabull.}  
Do crye\textsuperscript{2} anon thorow the cyte,  
That all the men, that there bee \ldots\ldots\textsuperscript{3}  
Helpe hym neuyr god at nede,  
That leuyth behynde for any drede.'  

\textsuperscript{1} On \textit{pe} morne were gedurd in \textit{pe} feldys  
Twenty thosande whyte scheldys.  
\textquote{Loryngys,' sey e Gye, `herkenyth me,}  
All, that beleue on the trynyte.  
The sarsyns schall we assayle:  
For nothynge wyll we not fayle.  
Thynke on god in trynete  
And to holde vp crystystante

\textsuperscript{1} MS. \textit{aurenture}.  
\textsuperscript{2} a blotted out before \textit{crye} in MS.  
\textsuperscript{3} After this some (probably two) lines are wanting.  
See the note.
And wyth strenckyf of owre hondys
Defende owre goodys and owre londys. 3268
They haue slayne owre frendys dere:
Loke, that we be vengyd here.
Yf we anythynge flee,
Slayne schall we sone bee. 3272
Then schall þys londe, wythowte feyne,
Be in angur and yu peyne.
Therfore wende we boldelye
And fyght wyth them manelye.
Y wyll wyth yow thedur fare:
Yf y yow fayle, god gyf me care.’
All they seyde: ‘gramercye!
Wele haue ye spokyn now, syr Gye.’ 3280
To the hylle be they gone:
The sarsyns there þey fownde anon. 3284
All the cuntre thereabowte
Was full of sarsyns grymme and stowte.

The Sowdan first
sent the King of
Tyre

with 20,000 men
against the city.

The kynge went forthe wyth hys ooste
(And made moche noyse and boste) 3296
Wyth pryde for take the hylle,
But y wene, that they spedde ylle.
Ryght at the entre of the hylle
Gye cryed lowde and schrylle:

‘Lordynys, do yowre helpe now:
Hyt wyll be mekull for yowre prowne.
Yf pey may gete the mowntayne,
We schall be takyn all or slayne.
Yf we haue the hylle and pey pe dale,
We schall hem worche moche bale.'

They caste stones and schett dartes
And scharpe speres on all partes.
They schett arows heded wyth stele;
They faghth wyth scharpe swyrlys wele.
Gye, y wott, was well bolde:
He gedurde them, as schyp in folde.
When Gye was vppon the hylle,
He made them sone to fare full ylle,
That in ther downe fallynge
Echoow slewe odur, wythowt lesynge;
So that in a lytull stownde
tenne thousande were broght to grownde.

When he hym sawe, pe kyng of Tyre,
Forthe he start wyth mekyll yre.
He bare a swyrde longe and scharpe:
He thought to crysten men to carpe.
He smote a knyght on the heuydde: 1
Hys lyfe pere was hym berecuysde.
When Gye sawe that owtrage,
He thought to quyte hym wys wage.
He smote the kyng wyndur sore:
He cleuyd hys crowne, he speke no more.
He slewe paynyms thyckfolde,
That on the hyllie lay full colde.

When the sowdan see hym men,
How they in the felde ranne, 2
He clepyd the kyng of Nymbie:
He was of grete felonye.

'Kung,' he seyde, 'seyst pou noght,
How owre men be downe 3 broght?

1 MS. hedde. 2 Perhaps originally renne? 3 dere blotted out before downe in MS.
The bodyes of them on the hylle lyse.
The kyng ys slayne, \textit{pat} was full wyse.
So euyr me helpe goddys\textsuperscript{1} myne,
Termagawnt and Apolyne,
But \textit{y} be vengyd on hym sone,
I schall neuyr abyde tyll none:
Y schall take the hylle \textit{wyth} force
And sloo eche oon, be my corse.
We haue an hundurd agenste oon,
And therfore sone schall \textit{pey} be tane.'
\textit{¶} They toke \textit{pe} hylle swytheaste
And many a stone downe caste.
The Greges defendyd \textit{jem} well
A\textit{genste} the sarsyns, \textit{pat} were trebell.
They smote of wyth \textit{per} gysarmes\textsuperscript{2}
Fete and honde, schouldur \textit{and} armes.
That ylke batell was full stronge:
There dyed many a man amonge.
\textit{¶} So wele dud Gye that day,
That he was preysed for nobull ay.
In a stedde styyle he stode
And faght wyth an harte gode.
The paynyms faste hym assayle:
He them hyt, \textit{wyth}owten fayle,
Bothe before and behynde.
He smote downe, \textit{pat} he myght fynde,
That \textit{wyth}ynne a lytull stownde
There lay abowte hym on \textit{pe} grownde
An hundurd slayne and wele moo,
That hym had \textit{zeruyd} for to sloo.
To hys breste laye the hepe,
That he myght not awey lepe.
Also dud Harrowde sore:
He faght, as a wylde bore.
He had a swyrde, that was gode:
\textsuperscript{1} MS. \textit{god}.
\textsuperscript{2} MS. \textit{gesernes}.
Many a hedde wyth that of yode.
Of the sarsyns he smote þat day
Two hundurd, or he went away.
Hys hawberke was brokyn wyde
Wyth many hoolys on euery syde.
Paynyms assaylyd hym at þat case,
That hys hawberke brokyn was.
He defendyd hym, as a lyowne,
And all, þat was wyth¹ Gyowne;
And also dud the Gregeyse
Defende them wele in all wyse.

¶ The kyng of Charturs was tane
And other sarsyns many ane.
Gye þere made a grete wondur;
For some of þem he smote in sondur.
Gye and hys ferys were armed wele
Bothe in yron and in stele.
In þat brunte many they hente
And many slewe and all torente.
They were so smert and so kene:
They made the sarsyns all to flene
On euery syde therwythall.
They of þe hylle downe let falle
Many and þyck of grete stones,
That were ordeygned for þe nones,
As grett, as any man may bere,
The sarsyns wyth for to dere.
They let the stones downe glyde
And slewe many on euery syde.
Tenne thousande in a stownde
There were slayne and brøjt to grownde.
Hyt felle so that ylke day,
That fewe of þem went away.

¶ The nyght ys comen, þe day ys gone:
The sarsyns bene all slone.

¹ MS. wyth hym Gyowne.
THE Soudan's revenge on his idols.

the dead bodies covered nine furlongs.

So many sarsyns were slone,

That ix furlonge men myght gone,

3yt schulde pey set no fote on grounde

For dedde bodyes in pat stownde.

[leaf 183 a, col. 1] Abelle, himself wounded, came riding to the Soudan, and advised him to return to his pavilion.

For the went in yre Abelle the wyght:

He was newe dubbed knyght.

To the sowdan he come thore:

He was woundyd passynge sore.

‘Sowdan,’ he seyde, ‘flee or be dedde:

Seyst thou not thy men redde?

Thy goddys pe had not in per thoght,

Therfore haue we spedde nought.

We wyll jem brenne in fyre bryght:

They dud vs never gode in fyght.

Wende now on yowre stede browne

Whome unto yowre pavelowne.

Brynge home pe men, pat woundyd are:

3yt some of jem may wele fare.’

This done, the Soudan ordered his idols to be brought.

Wyth grett shame and many slayne.

The sowdan dud before hym brynge

All hys goddys in a thrynge.

‘A, goddys,’ he seyde, ‘ye are false:

The denyll yow honge be the hals.

I haue done yow many a gode dede:

Eayll ye haue qwytt me my mede.

Ye wolde me serue, yf ye myght stondc,

As ye haue done before honde.’

He reproached them with ingratitude,

and beat them with a stick so effectually as to break their legs and arms.

He toke a staffe of appulle tre

And bete hys goddys all thre.

He brake of jem bope legge and arme:

‘Ye dud me neuer gode, but harme.

Gode may ye do me none

More, than the harde stone.’

At last he cast them out.

And dud jem sone owte caste.
Sythen he lepe on hys rabyte
And sende a messengere full tyte
To all men in hys poste
Fro thens vnto the redde see
And bad þem come for þer honowre
Hym to helpe and to socowre.

Gye clepyd to hym hys mayne:
‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘god thanked be.
We haue done a feyre chace:
Lorde be thankyd of hys grace.
Owre emmyes be all tane,
Ouyrecomen and many slane.
To the cyte wyll we gone
Wyth owre felows euerychone.’
All wyth yoye þey went home,
But þey were woundyd euerychone.

Now ys Gye of grete poste:
All hym loueyd in that cyte.
The emperowre, so haue y hele,
Loueyd Gye swythe wele.
Thorowe hys helpe he wende full well
To wynne hys londe every dele.
Gye doyth all, that euyr he wyll,
In the courte bothe lowde and styll.

Then spake syr Morgadoure,
That ylke false traytowre.
He began to thynk a wyle,
How he myght Gye begyle.
He hath thoght a felonye
(Soche oon harde y nener, wytterlye)
For to make Gye to do message
To the sowdan, that ys so rage.
He thoght, yf Gye thedur wente,
He schulde nener aftar more be sente.
Gone he ys the emperowre nere

1 MS. rabett.

After this revenge he sent a messenger for reinforcements.

Guy with his host returned into the city.

He was very powerful now and loved by all.

Only Morgadoure plotted his ruin.

He advised the Emperor
And seyde to hym on thys manere:

"Yf ye wyll leue my cowncyle,\(^1\)
Hyt schall pe well grely avayle 3480
In all thynge, that y may do;
For y am moost holdyn thertoo.
But y telle yow gode redde,
I wyll, ye do me vnto dedde. 3484
The sowdan hath sende hys messengere
Thorow all hys londe ferre and nere,
To hym schulde come more and lesse
All men, that in hys lande ys, 3488

That may bere schylde or spere
Or hys owne hedde bere,
Yow to sege in yowre cyte
And yow to take and yowre meyne. 3492

\(\text{=} \) Now haue ye here a knyght:
In all þe worlde ys none so wyght.
That ys Gye of moche pryse
And wyth hym Harrowde þe\(^2\) marchyse. 3496
In hym ye may yow wele affye;
He wyll yow helpe, sekurlye.

Sende a knyght þe sowdan to say
And byd\(^3\) hym sygne a certeyn day. 3500
Whyll he wyll algate haue þy lande
And all wyth strenckyth of mannys hande,
Byd hym sende a gode knyght
Wyth oon of yowres for to fyght. 3504
Yf hyt may so betyde,
That yowrys haue þe bettur syde,
He let yow haue all yowre lande
Wyth pees in yowre owne hande. 3508
And, yf hys knyght haue þe maystry
And ouyrcome yowres wyth felonye,
For yowre lande ye schall do homage
And euery yere þelde hym trewage.\(^7\)

\(^1\) MS. covnecell.  \(^2\) MS. of.  \(^3\) MS. bad.
Than spake pe emperowre Emys: The Emperor assented,
'Syr steward, at thyn avyce
I schall wytt at my baronage,
Who wyll do thys message;
And, yf any wyll thedur fare,
He schall be preysyd for euermare.
He, pat wendyth abowte that thynge,
Drede hyt ys of hys home comynge.'
He let calle hys baronage
And all men, pat he gaue wage.
'Lordyngys,' seyde the emperowre, 3524
'I say for yowre honowre,
All, that euyr be gedurd here,
Erle, baron, knyght and squyere:
I wyll sende a messengere
To the sowdan on all manere.
I wolde not warre, yf y myght,
But holde my londe wyth lawe and ryght.
Let hym fynde a sarsyn)
And y to fynde a knyght of myn.
The batell vpon them schall goo:
Let hyt be done betwyx pem twoo.
Yf my man ouercome bee,
I schall hym selde my londe free.
Yf he falle on pe warse syde,
As god graunte, hyt so betyde,
He schall fro my londe ryde
And make here no lenger abyde
Nor no nodur of hys lynage
Do me no wronge nor no owtrage.
And, who dar do my 3ernyng
And fro me bere thys tythynge,
I schall hym lone ouer all odur
And holde hym, as myn own brodur.'
When pe emperowre had all sayde

1 MS. in Ernys.
And all hys speche downe layde,
Ther was none of all, *pat pere*¹ ware,
That wolde speke, lesse nor mare.
Then vp starte a nobull knyght:
The constabull Crystofor he hyght.
To hys gyrdull hys berde was longe:
Whyll he was yonge, he was stronge.
'Syr emperowre, be thyss day,
As me thynkyth, y schall say.
I oght to geue yow gode cowncelye²
And to do yow honowre, wythowte fayle.
To sende yowre men for to be dedde,
Me thynkyth, hyt ys a sympull redd.
Thou myghtst as wele wyth fyn hande
Slee fyn men wele wyttande.
I wene, ye schall fynde none in fys lande,
That wyll on that errande fonde.

For cowardyse sey y hyt noght;
For wyth my wylle and my thoght,
Yf y now also nobull were here,
As y was wythynne thys ix yere,
I wolde do that ylke sonde:
For pe dethe schulde y not wonde.
Y am oolde *and* hone whyte hare
And of my strenckyth am made bare.
Hyt ys an hundurd wyntur ryght,
Sythe y was made a knyght.
Whyll y was a yonge man,
Grete messages dud y than).
Now am y olde *and* may not vayle,
But yf hyt be to geue cowncelye.'

¹ *were* blotted out before *pere* in MS.
² MS. *cowncell*.
When Gye harde the worde to ende,  
That no man profurde hym to wende  
(He stode style, as a stone,  
To wytt the wyle of every mone,  
Yf any were so bolde and wyght,  
That durste do pat errande ryght):  
Gye vp starte swythe wyght.

'Syr,' he seyde, 'y am yowre knyght:  
Y schall to the sowdan fare  
And telle hym yowre errande thore.  
To do yowre errande y schall fonde:  
For the dethe y wyll not wonde.  
There schall be none so lytull a page,  
But he schall here my message' . . . . .

IT Gye 3yt answeryd wyth grete yre:  
'I schall not leeue, be my swyre,  
But y wyll wende in thys case  
To dye therfore in the place.'

IT Now wendyth Gye owt of þe prees  
Vnto the oost of the Gregeyes.  
Gye ys a bolde barou:  
God, that suffurde hys pascioun,  
Yeue hym grace wele to fare  
And to come ageyne wythowten care!  
He came to hys herbergye  
And fonde hys felowes heucelye.  
They wolde wende wyth hym echone,  
But he wolde suffer of þem neuer oon.  
Quod Harrowde: 'let me wyth the fare:  
To dye wyth the y am full yare.'  
'Harrowde,' seyde Gye, 'be here style:  
Thou schalt not wende wyth my wylle.'

Gye hym armed on all wyse  
Wele and on a queynte gyse.

1 After this some lines are wanting. See note.  
2 w in swyre in part illegible because of a spot.
Guy in the Soudan's pavilion.

On he caste an hawberke bryght:
Whyll he had pat, he dradde no wyght.
On hys hedde hys helme he caste
And lasyd hym swythe faste:
A serkyll of golde, pat wolde noght
Wyth an c pownde of golde be bught.
Hyt was full of precyous stones
And ryche perles for the nones.
Sythen he gurde hym wyth hys bronde:
Hyt was worthe moche londe,
Hys schylde he caste abowte hys halse
And a sper he toke also.

By a golden eagle
Guy knew the Soudan's pavilion.

He fonde the Soudan at table
with many great men.

An egull of golde þeron was bryght
And a stone, that gaue grete lyght,
That men myght see all the nyght,
As hyt had be the sonne\(^2\) bryght.

\[\text{When he came to the pavelowne,} \]
In he wente, be my crowne.

He fonde the sowdan at hys mete
And wyth hym xv kyngys grete
And odur men of grete valowre,
And all þey seruyd the sowdan þore.
Forthe than starte syr Gyowne

1 Perhaps corrupt. See note. 2 MS. somer
And schewyd some hys resowne:

'That ylke kynge, pat syttyп in heuyn),
That made þe erthe and þe planetys seuyν)
And in the see the sturgone,
Yeue the, syr sowdan, hys malysone
And all, that y hereynue see,
That beleue in Mahowndys poste.

Thys worde sendyth þe the emperowre,
That ys a man of grete valowre,
Thorow whom the sarsyns were tane,
Many woundyd and many slane.
He bad, þou schuldest not dwelle longe
In hys londe to do hym wronge.
Yf ye chalenge oght wyth ryght,
He byddylth the sende forthe a knyght,
That wyll sone for the fyght;
And, yf owres be slayne wyth force and myʒ,
He wyll the gene trewage be yere
And serue the, as hys lorde dere;
And, yf hys knyght thorow grace
Ouercome yowrys in the place,
Thou schalt deluyyr hys londe rathe
And restore hym ageyne hys skathe.
Wyth the emperowre, y the say,
Of thys thynge thou take a day.
And, yf that þou wylte not thys,
Telle me, whyt thy talente ys.
Here y am for my lordys sake:
Yf ony wyll the batell take,
I wyll defende my lordys londe,1
Whyll y leue, wyth myν honde.'

Ther was neuer2 knyght nor squyere,

1 he blotted out before londe in MS.
2 k blotted out before neuer in MS.
GUY RIDES OFF WITH THE Soudan’S HEAD.

That durste speke so to me ere.’

Gye seyde: ‘y schall the saye
My name, or y wende awaye.
I wyll þe nor no nodur beswyke.
Y am Gye of Warwyke.’

¶ ‘Art thou,’ he seyde, ‘þat ylke page,
That hast done me all þe owtrage?’
Thou slewe my cosyn) Coldrane:
Hys hedde thou smote of allone.
I schall neyr ete bredde
To day, or þat þou be dedde.
Thy lord the louyd nothynge,
When he comawndyd þe þys message to brynge.
Now y schall vengyd¹ bee :
Thou schalt be hongyd on a tree.’

¶ He comawndyd, he schulde be tane
And in a pytte caste allone.
When he had etyn and made hym at ese,
He thought Gye for to sese.
Abowte Gye was grete thronge.
‘God wott,’ quod he, ‘y stonde to longe.’
There he faryd, as he wolde wede :
Wyth hys spurrys he stroke hys stede.
‘Sowdan,’ he seyde, ‘þou schalt abye
Furste of all þys companye.’
He smote the sowdan wyth hys sworde,
That the hedde trendyld on þe borde.
The hedde he toke in hys hone:
Owte of þe pales dud he wonde.
He smote of many a hevydде²
Of þem, þat wolde hane hyt fro hym revydde.
The hedde wyth strenckþ away he bare
And knytt hyt in hys lappe thare.
¶ Faste he pryckyd þorowe þe ooste
On hys stede, þat moche coste.

¹ g in vengyd has not quite its regular form. ² MS. hedde.
The sarsyns hyed þem full faste
Aftur Gye, when he was paste.
Gye to take they were prestę:
Many a man dud hys beste.
Gye rode to a roche of stone:
The paynys folowde hym euerychone.
Ofte he turned them ageyne:
Many of them hath he slayne.
Ther was neuer 3yt man on grounde,
That durste agenste so many stonde.

Now of Harrawde wyll we speke:
For sorowe, he þost, hys herte dud breke.
He haþe so moche sorowe and woo,
That he may not oon fote goo.
For Gye all þat sorowe hath he:
He wende, he schulde hym neuer see.
‘Alas, Gye,’ syr Harrowde seyde,
‘That þou were so fowle betrayed.
Now wott y wele, wythowten drede,
I schall hym neuer see on stede.
Then were y schente: what shall y doo?
I haue no man to moone me too.’

As he was in sorowe and dud wepe,
Vpon hys bedd he felle on slepe.
He can mete a straunge swevon:
He thoght, he sawe syr Gyowne
On a stede faste syttande
And a scharpe spere in hys hande.
Lyons and lebardes assayled hym faste,
That had made hym sore agaste.
Hys schylde was brokyn euyn in two,
And hys hawberke was reuyn also.
Wyth moche pyne he helde hys lyfe:
He was in so moche stryfe.

When Harrowde of hys slepe dud wake,
For drede faste can he quake.
On hys felows dud he calle:

‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘arme yow all.
To helpe Gye, loke, no man fayle;
For he ys in moche batayle.’
Hastyly were they dyght

On ther horsys redy to fyght.
Faste they redyn forthe in hye
For drede of ther maystyr Gye,
That he schulde be woundyd or slane
Or ellys wyth þem to presonþ tane.

At last they saw
¶ At the laste they sawe the ooste
Of the sarsyns, that made boste.
Of armed men were full þe feldes,
Some wyth hawberkys and some wyth scheldes.

All they chasyd there syr Gye;
Hym to sloo they were redye.
They hym assayled on euery syde,
And he gaue þem strokys vnyrde.

So nerehonde þe paynyms yede,
They had þe brydull of hys stede.
Then was Gye in sorowe and woo,
That he myght not passe þem froo.
All tho, that wolde hym take,
He made þe rugges for to crake.
¶ Then came syr Harrawde:
To a paynym he made asawte.
He hyt hym hye vppon þe crowne:
There halpe hym not syr Mahowne.
To þe breste þe swyrde went yyne:
Therof thoght he no synne.

Echeonþ of the companye
Slew two paynyms or thre.
Than þere was a batell stronge,
And many sarsyns dyed amonge.

¶ Now hath Harrowde yoye and game,

¹ MS. slayne.
That he and Gye were mett same.
For yoye, that they were mette,
Wyth ther eyen bothe pey grette.¹
Then kyssyd Gye every man,
When he was fro thronge tane.
The sarsons be ageyne wente
All wyth sorowe and beschente.
Gye wyth yoye and hys meyne
Turned ageyne to the cyte
All wyth pryde and yoltyee,
Wyth moche game and more glee.
Then benganne pe bellus to rynge,
Prestys and clerkys meryly to syngie.
When pey sawe pe hed than,
Moche yoye made many a man.
All they seye: ‘wythowte lese,
Of the sowdan schall we² hane pese.
Thankyd be god all weldynge,
That he vs hath sende that tythynge.’
If Gye ys gone vnto the towre
And presentyd the hedde to the emperowre.
‘Syr,’ he seye, ‘vndurstande:
The hedde, that y bere in³ hande,
Ys the hedde of the grete sowdan:
I hym slewe myselfe allone.
Y yow make thys present:
Take hyt wyth gode entent.’
When pe emperowre sawe pat thynge,
He myst hym not holde frō wepeynge.
An hundurd sythe he hym kyste:
What yoye he made, no man wyste.
All they thankyd henyn kyngye,
That pe warre was broght to endynge.
If Gye made or the thrydde day

¹ MS. wepte. ² h blotted out before we in MS. ³ in altered from on in MS.
A lion pursued by a dragon.

Guy caused a marble pillar to be erected with a crowned head of brass on it, containing the Soudan's head, as a warning to any other enemy.

The Emperor again offered Guy his daughter's hand.

He also sent messengers through his realm to restore what had been lost.

One day the Emperor went hunting, accompanied by Guy and others.

Guy saw a lion coming wearily towards him, pursued by a hideous dragon.

A pillar of marbull grett and graye:
Aboue he set a hedde of brasse,
In that the sowdans hed was.
Aboue all he sett a crowne;
Ryght in mydwarde of the towne,
That all odur warned myght bee,
That wolde do harme to the cyte.

¶ Than spake the emperowre Ernys: 1 'Gye, herkyne to myn avyse.
I thynke to do the gret honowre:
Take pou my doghtur in hur bowre.'
'Syr,' he seyde, 'granerey:
That ys vndeserued, sekerlye.'

¶ The emperowre comawndyd hys men
To make jem redy be ix and tenne,
'And thorowowt my londe fare
And store ageyne, pat lorne was arc.'

The emperowre rose erlye:
Matens and messe he harde in hye
And sythen he lepe on a mewle browne
And toke wyth hym syr Gyowne,
Dewkys and erlys, that there were,
That had hym servyd far and nere:
To hunte they went that day.
The wedur was hote in pe waye.

Gye sawe, as he dud ryde,
As he blenchyd hym besyde,
A lyon come towarde hym werelye,
But vnethe he myght drye.
He brayed faste and gaped wyde:
He wyzte not, where he myȝt hym hyde.
Aftur hym come a dragon,
That folowde faste the lyon.
Hys lied was gret and grennyng
And hys eyen, as fyre, brennyng.

1 MS. in ernys.
Hys tethe scharpe, hys mowpe wyde:
Hys body was grett and vnryde.
He was grymme and he was felle:
He went, hyt had be þe deyull of helle.
¶ Then seyde Gye to hys meyne:
‘I wyll go forthe sekerye.
Y wyll preue wyth all my myght,
Whedur y dare wyth þe zondur dragon fyȝt.
Loke, ye store not of þat stedde,
Whedur y be quyck or dedde.’
¶ Gye a spere toke in hys honde:
Fro hys felows he hym wonde.
He went forthe a gode spede
To helpe the lyon at that nede.
When þe dragon sawe Gyowne,
He came to hym and lefte þe lyone.
Gye sawe hym come fleande:
He toke hys spere in hys hande.
He lokyd, where he myȝt do hym skathe,
And he aspyed hyt sone full rathe.
Vndur the wynge he schett þe spere:
Thorow þe body he dud hym bere.
Then the dragon felle to grownde
And dyed in a lyttull stownde.
He drewe hys swerde made of stele
And smote of hys hedde every dele.
He behelde the body on grownde:
Hyt stanke, as a pyllyd hownde.
¶ Gye rode to hys men warde:
The lyon folowed hym full harde.
He went before Gye pleying
And wyth hys tayle hym faynynge.
He lykkyd Gyes fete alse
And lepe abowte hys stede halse.
Gye had wondur of that dede
And lepe downe of hys stede.
He strokyd hym on je rygge ofte
And leyde hys hande hys hedde on loft.
The lyon walowed on the grownde
Before Gye, as dothe an hownde.
Sythen he playde wyth hym faste:
Of hym Gye was not agaste.
Gye lepe on hys stede than:
The lyon before hym faste ranne.
He folowed Gye est and weste:
Gye hym louydd at the beste.
Gye to the emperowre dud ryde:
The lyon yede be hys syde.
Gye hym tolde euery dele,
How that he had spedd wele.
All pey wondurde on the lyon,
That he louyd so syr Gyone.

¶ The emperowre and hys meyne
Went vnto the cyte.
Bothe Gye and the emperowre
Togedur pey went to the towre.
Gye into hys chaumbur ys gone
And wyth hym went hys gode lyone.

Into what stede pat Gye wente,
The lyon folowed hym, verament.
Before Gyes bedde he laye:
Ther myzt no man brynge hym awaye.
Of hym was Gye full fayne,
For he was hys chaumberleyne.

¶ When pey had the londe rede thorowe,
Castels, cytes, towne and borowe,
To Constantyne pey came in hye.
The emperowre callyd to hym syr Gye.

‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘grathe the therforne:
My doghtur pou schalt wedde to morne.
Tyme ys comen, and y am payde:
Hyt schall no lenger be delayde.’
Gye answeryd, as a knyght:
‘Yow therfore ȝe kyng of myght.’

On þe morne Gye dyȝt hym nobullye
And went to the churche merelye, 3936
And hys felows euerychone
Wyth hym full feyre they gone.
Ther was none so lytull of all,
But they were cladde in palle. 3940
All men, that syr Gye,
Of hys degré they had ferle
Gye came to churche than
And there he sawe many a man,
Kynge, dewke and barowne,
The beste of all that regowne.

There were ryche byschoppes for hys sake,
That the maryage schulde make. 3948
‘Gye,’ seyd Ernyse,1 ‘come to me:
My doghtur here geue y the
And, whyll y leue, halfe my londe
And, when y am dedde, all in þy honde.
Thou schalt be emperowre aftur me:
Before my baronage y grawnte þe.’
All men, þat þere dud stande,
Were fayne of that tythande. 3956
Gye hym thankyd2 nobullye
Of hys honowre and hys curtesye.

Then came the byschoppes revyscht
And broght ryngys of the beste. 3960
When he sawe þe ryngys3 broght,
On feyre Felyce was hys þoght.
‘A, Felyce,’ he seyde, ‘þat feyre wyght,
I haue þe louyd wyth all my myght.’
Schall y for ryches forsake now þe?

1 MS. Armynce.
2 answeyde originally in MS., but the scribe has blotted it out, adding thankyd in the margin.
3 MS. rynges.

On the morrow
Guy went to church with his fellows.

Warwick.
He fell on the ground, and requested the Emperor to put off the marriage.

All were very sorry for him.

The Emperor's daughter was quite disconsolate.

Guy lay in bed: none knew the nature of his illness.

The lion was so grieved as to touch no food for three days.

At last Guy unbosomed himself to Harrowde, for sorrow y am nere dedde.

1 sov added over the line in the same hand.

2 MS. hadde.
Redyst thou, that y weddyd bee,
Or to wende to my cuntre?
In Ynglonde ther ys a maye
(Now to the y dare well saye),
The erlys doghtur Rohawte:
Sche hath my loue, wythowe defawte.
Men calle hur feyre Felyce:
In all thys londe ys none so wyse.
Sche ys feyre and bryght of hewe:
In all þys worlde ys none so trewe.'
† 'Syr,' seyde Harrawde, 'y schall þe say
The beste cowncell, þat y maye.
The emperowrs doghtur, loke, þou take
(A rych man sche may þe make)
Aftur hym to be emperowre.
God hap geuyn yow grete honowre:
In all þys worlde schall none bee
Of yowre ryches and yowre poste.
Soche twenty schulde be at þy hande
Of ryche erledams wyth wode and lande,
Than ys erle Roholde the gode.
He, þat forsakyth worschyp, ys wode.'
† 'Let be, Harrawde: þou louyst me noght,
When þou me soche cowncell broght.
When þou me seyst forsake þat maye.
I schall be dedde that ylke day.'
† 'Syr,' he seyde, 'holde yow stylle;
For now y wott, what ys your wylle.
That ye hur so louyd, wyste y noþt.
When ye of cowncell me besoþt,
Wyth all my myght, be thyds day,
Godc cowncell y wyll geue yow, yf y maye:
Whyll ye so lune Felyce,
Forsake hur not, yf ye be wyse.'
Guy rose vp at the laste:
To courte went he full faste.
Guy's Lion Killed by the Steward.

All had yoye, **that** pere ware,¹
**that** he was couyrde of hys care.

Wyth hym came hys lyone,
Thorow whome felle tresou. 4040

Tho bad the emperowre grete,
That Gye schulde dwelle at mete,
To do hym some solace;
For porow hym he delyuerd was. 4044

The lyon went thorow pe pales
And of hym spake all the Gregyes
And of the boldenes of Gyowne,
How he slewe the dragon. 4048

The steward had grete envye:
He thoght, pe lyon schulde aby.

Aftur mete a longe owre
Gye went wyth the emperowre: 4052

The lyon went in that palees
Meryly and in feyre pese.

In the garden ageyne pe sonne
He laye to slepe, as he was wonne. 4056

The lyon went and laye to slepe:
Of the lyon toke he no kepe.

In a soler² stode the stewart
At a wyndowe to loke owtwarde. 4060

He thoght to sloo hym wyth hys hande,
As that he laye slepande.

He wolde venge hym³ on syr Gye:
He was a traytowre, verelye. 4064

In hys honde he toke a spere:
Thorow the lyon he can hyt bere.

The lyon vp starte wythowten more,
But he was woundyd passyng sore. 4068

That sawe a maydyn in hur bowre.
And eryd on Morgadowre

---

¹ MS. *were.*  
² MS. *seler.*  
³ *on* blotted out before *hym* in MS.
And seyde: 'hast you haste done grete wronge.
Thou schalt hyt fynde, or hyt be longe.
When Gye wottyth, hat he ys slayne,
He wyll hym venge wyth grete mayn.'

The lion ranne forge into pe strete:
Hys bowels trayled at hys’ fete.
Also faste, as he myght renne,
He came home to Gyes ynone.
In hys chaumbur he hym fonde
On hys bedde slepande.
He came before Gyowne:
At hys fete he felle downe.
Hys fete he lykkayd wyth mornynge:
Hyt was a tokyn of loneynge.

When Gye hym sawe woundyd pore,
For hys lyon he wepyd sore.
'God,' he seyde, 'of mekyll myght,
Who hath do me þys vnryght?
Now he hath my lyon slane,
All my yoye ys fro me tane.
Be god, that dyed on a tre,
I wolde not for thys feyre cyte,
What some euyr that he bee,
That hath thus betrayed me.'

Wyth that he sawe before hys eyre
Hys lyon gode there dye.
He seyde: 'now hane y care:
Ther was noþyng, y louyd mare.
Thou art dedde in thys place:
To venge me gode geue me grace.
Yf y wyste, who had the slane,
Sone schulde y be hys bane.
In all þys lande ys none so wyght,
Dewke, erle, barow nor knyght,
But my lorde the emperowre,
But y schall slee that traytowre.'
GUY IN SEARCH OF THE CULPRIT.

He toke his swyrde abowte his swyre:
To the cyte he came wyth yre.  
A knyght sawe, pat he was wrothe,
And seyde: 'who dud yow lothe?'  
He askyd thorow the halle:
'Lordyngys, y prey yow all,
Yf any wote, he wyll me saye,
Who slewe my gode lyon pys day.
Y schall hym geue ryche mede
And be mans man in euery stede.
Thys pynge schall be hys medys:
xv hawkys and xv stedys

And an hundurd besawntyss of golde:
Therfore he schall to me be beholde.'  
They seyde all, sekerlye:
'We can not telle yow, syr Gye.'  
Sythen he went fro the halle:
Knyghtys and squyers he askyd all.
Fro chaumber to chaumber Gye went:
At the laste he mett pe maydyn gente.
Sche askyd tho Gyone,
Who had slayne his lyon.  
Sche was not fayne, wytterlye:
'I sye hym smetyn porow pe body.'  
'Now,' quod Gye, 'my dere lemmman,
Telle me sone: spare for no man.
I schall geue the golde schynande
And seyne from fote to hande.'  
The maydyn seyde: 'Morgadowre
Hath the done thys dyshonowre.
I sye hym smyte hym sore:
I wote, he myght leue no more.'  
When Gye herde speke of pat felow,
That had slayne his lyon,
Owt of pe chaumbur hyed Gye.

1 MS. þer.  
2 Apparently corrupt.  See the note.
To seke þe steward he was besye.
Into a chaumbur can he gone:
He fonde the steward þere anon.
He pleyde at chesses wyþ hys cosyn,
When he sye Gye loke so grymme.
Then seyde Gye: ‘traytowre, þou be drawe.
Why haste þou my lyone1 slawe?
Thou haste wyþ the no reson
For to do me thys reson.
Defende þe now, as a knyht:
I wyll þe smyte wyþ all my myght.’
He drewe hys swyrde: or he stynte,
Hys hedde he smote of at a dynte.
¶ When hys cosyn sye that dede,
For wo, he ðoght, hys herte wolde blede
He starte on a nodur parte
And in hys honde he hent a darte.
Gye hym kept and dud hym harme:
He smote of hys ryght arme.
Tho he cryed: ‘Gye, gramercye,’
And he went fro hym in hye.
¶ Comen he ys to the emperowre:
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘for yowre honowre
I haue the seruyd wyþ my powere:
Hytt ys me quytt on euyll manere,
Whyll y haue lorne be treson)
In yowre court my gode lyon.
Yowre steward slewe hym in grete yre:
I haue quytt hym wele hys hyre.
For euer he hath hys waryson:
Schall he neuer more do treson.
Who wyll be yowre seruande,
When ye may hym not warande,
Nor a straunge man yn yowre cyte,
But he haue harme and vylene?

1 MS. lemman.
I will wende to my cuntre:
Y desyre there for to bee.
To see my frendys y wolde be blype:
I wyll haste me thedur swythe.
Yf any man wyll yow dere
Odur in pees or in were,
Do me to wyt anon ryght:
I schall yow helpe wyth all my my3t.'

¶ When the emperowre sye Gye,
That he was wrothe and dreye:
‘Syr Gye,’ he seyde, ‘for goddyys mercy,
Yf any man haue done yow velany,
Take thyselfe vengeawnce:
I hyt grawnte, so haue y chawnce.
Let be youre frendys in your cuntre:
To morowe schall yow weddyd bee.’

¶ Gye seyde: ‘syr, y thynke, noght.
Wyfe to take ys not my thoght.
Yf y had weddyd py doghtur dere
And ye had made me lorde here,
Yowre men wolde among þem saye
And oftesythe make deraye,
That ye had made the emperowre
But of a pore bachelorwe,
And that hyt were a grete dysperage
To the and all thy baronage.
Bettur hyt ys to wende wyth honowre,
Then to dwelle here wyth grete dolowre.
Therfore y sey yow, syr emperere:¹
I wyll wende on all manere.
Haue gode day, now wyll y fare:
God yow schelde fro sorowe and care.’

¶ When the emperowre harde hys wylle,
That he wolde not dwelle stylle,
Wyth hys eyen he wepyd sore

¹ MS. Empere.
And all þe men, that þere wore.  
Fyfte somers and fyfte stedys
He badde Gye to hys medeys,
But he had wonne before ynowe
Of þe sarsyns, that he had slowe.

The emperor wrore dud, as a lorde hende,
To Gyes men, when þey schulde wende:
He gaue them goide for Gyes sake
As moche, as they wolde take.

All they seyde, the emperor wrore
Was a man of grete valowre.

Knyghtys and squyers, þat þere ware,
All dud wepe, when Gye dud fare.
Wyueys, maydenys and chylde also
All þey weped, when he schulde goo:
Whyll he was in that lande,
Ther wolde no man brynge warre on honde.

The emperor wrore syr Harrawde calde
And askyd hym, yf he dwelle wolde
Wyth hym in that cyte,
And a ryche man schulde he bee:
He schulde hym geue, sekuriye,
Of all þat lande þe feyrest lady.
'Syr,' seyde Harrowde, 'gramercy.
Wytt ye wele, y am wyth Gye:
Hym schall y neyur fayle
For no ryches, þat may avayle.'

Now ys Gye in the see:
God saue hym for hys pyte
And all hys feyre companye.
Faste they sayled, wyterlye.
So longe þe wynde hapy þem dreuyn:
At Almayne they be vp reuyn.
To the emperor þey come swyte:
For Gyes comyng he was blythe.

The emperor honowred Gye

The Emperor offered him much wealth,
but Guy had won enough of the Saracens.

So Ernis gave Guy's men as much as they wished.

All were sorry for Guy's departure.

The Emperor asked Harrawde to stay with him.

But Harrawde would not part from Guy.

Guy,

having stayed with the German Emperor for some time,
And all hys feyre companye.

When Gye a stownde had dwellyd þare,
To hys cuntre wolde he fare.
They hyed on ther way faste:
They come to Loren at the laste.
They were resseyuyd nobullye
For ther grete cheualrye.

passed into Lorraine.

One day in spring, ¶ Hyt was in may on a daye,

When every fowle makyth hys laye:
Thorow a foreste as þey dud ryde
(A feyre cyte was besyde),

travelling through a wood,

Wende vnto the cyte then
To take þer innes, þere þey dud knowe;
For þere he wolde be a throwe
To here fowles merely synge
And see feyre flowres¹ spryng.

Having remained alone,

¶ Hys men haue the wey tane:
In the forest Gye ys allane.
As he lay myrthe to here,
Hys þoght chaungyd and hys chere.

he sent his men to the next town to bespeak and prepare lodgings.

Forthe he went in that foreste:
There was many a wylde beste.
As he wente in that solace,
He harde besyde at a place
A grete mornyng of a man:
The durwarde he drew hym than.

Having remained alone,

Vndur an² hawporne tree he fande
A man lyeng sore bledande.

he found under a hawthorn bush

He thoght, he was a gentyll knyght,
That had be woundyd at some fyght.
He behelde hym, wytterlye:
He had of hym grete farlye.

¹ MS. fowles.
² hande, as it seems, blotted out after an in MS.
Gye had wondur of that case
And seyde, be Mary of heuyn quene,
A fayrer man had he not sene.
Hys berde was longe, as a spanne:
Hys vysage was bope pale and wanne
For the blode, that he had bledde,
And for pe woundys, that he hedde.¹
Hys eyen were black, hys vysage brade,
Longe forhede and wele made.
Feyre and longe was he thore:
A godelyar man was none bore.
In a robe of scarlet was he cladded.
Thowere pe body a wounde he hadde.
Hosyd and schode he was ryght:
He semyd wele to be a knyght.
Hys neck was feyre, whyte and longe.
Hys fyngers were bope grete and stronge.
Hys schouldurs thyck, hys breste brade.
On euery syde he was wele made
And gyrd wyth a swyrde of stele.
Hys schylde laye at hys hedde wele.

He behelde and had pyte
And askyd hym : 'pur charyte,
Knyght,' he seyde, 'what ys `py name?'
Where were pfoure borne? who dud pe shame?
Say to me anon ryght.
Wyth pat couenande y schall pe plyght,
Of me schalt thou haue no skathe,
But y schall helpe the as rathe.'

'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'aske me no mare;
For y haue so moche care.
I may not telle, be my crowne,
To no wyght my chesowne.
Yf y reheursyd now my care,
Then schulde y haue moche mare.

¹ MS. hadde,
TYRRY OF GORMOYSE TELLING HIS STORY.

Wende ye hens, syr, y the pray;  
For wyt ye not of me to day,

But yf ye wyll graunt me a pyng,
That y schall say, wythowte lesynge,  
And yowre trowthe to me plyngh
To day me to helpe wyth all your my3t,
And y schall telle pe all my case,
Fro whens y came and what y was  
And who me hape woundyd sore
Thorowe chawnee and wyckyd lore:
Ellys y schall yow neuer saye,
Thowe ye wolde helpe me pys day.'  
¶ Gye thought in hys herte ryght,
Whedur he wolde be trawpeplyght.
But he was in soche atyre,
That for to wyt he had desyre,
'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'in py ryght
The to helpe my trowpe y plyngh,
So pat pou wylte the sothe saye,
Who hath done pe all pys deraye.'  
¶ Then seyde to hym pe woundyd man:  
'I schall pe telle, syr, as y can.
I was the erlys sone Awbrye
Of Gormoyse, syr, sekurye.
Wyth pe dewke Lorayne1 y was:
I seruyd hym in many a case.
He loved, and was loved again by,
Ozel, daughter to the Duke of Lorraine.
In her honour, after having been dubbed a Knight, he sought adventures in foreign countries.

1 MS. lowan'.
Ozelle's Message to Tyrry

Dedes of armes for to fonde
In Frawnce and in Burgoyne,
In Almayne and in Sesoyne.¹
Ther was no justes nor turnament
In all the lande, where y wente,
But y had the beste of all.
On me soche pryse þere dud falle.

† Sythen harde y speke beyonde þe see
Of warre in a farre cuntre.
The sarsyns, þat were so many and stronge,
In Rome had bene and warryd longe.
They had dystroyed that ² cuntre
And moche of all crystyanete.

Thedur y went lose to wynne
And slewe many a sarsyne.
I was preyed for doghty of hande,
As for the beste in all þat lande.
There y ³ slewe a paynym kyng
And broght the warre to endynge.

† Then came swythe to me a sondc,
That broght me wyckyd tythande,
How the dewke Otow of Payuye
Wolde do me grete vyleny.

He schulde on the syxte daye
Wedde Ozelde, that feyre maye,
And bad, þat schulde come swythe
To helpe þat maye, or sche were wyfe,
And at þat tyme redy be thare
To feche hur or neuyr mare.

† Thedur y toke the wey thanw
And wyth me went many a man.
Nyght nor day restyd we noght,
Tyll we were to þe cyte broght.
There was wyth the dewke Otow

¹ MS. syrawne.
² in blotted out before that in MS.
³ MS. he.
As Ozelle was being led to church,

Many a knyght and many a gode baron.
They were redy at that weddyng
Wythowte any more dwellynge
Toward the churche for to be wedde:
Betwene two lordys sche was ledde.
Faste y prekyd in that thronge,
Tyll y myght that lady fonge.

Wyth hur sone there y mette:
I toke hur wythowten lett.

Ye sett hur on hors myn) me behynde:
I rode awey, as dothe þe wynde.

Thow the cyte rose grete crye,
That Ozelde wente wyth Tyrrye.
Than armed was many a knyght
And on hors full sone dyght.

All they chacyd me at the laste
And my dethe they sworen faste.
I kepte them full hardye:
So dud many of my companye.

Then was there a grete fyght:
Many of myn) ðey dud vuryght.

At the laste y was lefte allone,
And all my men fro me were slone.
When y sye my men so dedde,
Full of sorowe was my redde.
Y was nye ó owte of my wytte.
Many of them sore y hytt
And slewe þere in a lytull stownde
Twenty men vppon the grounde.

In þe worlde, y went, þer was no knyght,
But syr Gye, that ys so wyght,
That schulde haue done so were allone,
But yf that he had be slone.

Then sye y come many and thycke

1 y blotted out before nye in MS.
Of 

Lorens and of Lumbardes wycke.

All pey sayled me, euery man:
I myght not defende me than,
Y toke my lemman me behynde
And rode forthe, as the wynde.
They chasyd me that ylke day:
Fro the stedde y wanne away.
Tyll hyt came to darke nyght,
Euyn they folowed me ryght.

All pat londe thorowe y rode,
Tyll y came to a watur brode,
Schyppe myght y there fynde none.
They chasyd me pedur euerychone.
Brode and depe the watur was,
And odur wey myght y not passe.
I hastyd me vpon my stede,
That was gode at euery nede:
The watur y toke and passyd wele
Wyth goddyss grace euery dele.
Forthe y wente a gode passe:

Ther durste no man come, þere y was.
Hedur y came to thys foreste
Wyth my lemman, y louyd beste.
I wente, none had be in þys wode,
That wolde haue done me, but gode.
What for wakyng and for fastynge,
What for travell and for fyghtynge,
I restyd me on thys grownde
And felle aslepe in a stownde
And tyed my hors tyll a tre:
My lemman sate before me.
Then came theuys fyftene,
Bolde men and eke kene.

All slepyng pey woundyd me:

1 Of before Lorens omitted in MS.  MS. A.
by some robbers, who also carried off Ozelle and Tyrry's steed. I am dedde, as thou mayste see.

Sythen þey toke Ozelle, þat maye,
And my stede and wente awaye.

If I haue þe tolde now all my lyfe,
How y haue bene in mekyll stryfe.

Of the dethe geue y noght:
On þat maye ys all my thoght.

Of þe þeuys she getyþ grete shame.
God venge me for hys holy name.

Thou haste harde now my care:
I wot, y may leue no mare.

He conjured Guy

Yn goddyß name y conyure the,
That þy trowpe þou plyght to me:

As soone, as þat y am dedde,
Thou bere me to some gode stedde,
To churche or to abbaye,
Or y be any wylde bestus praye.

To þe þondur hylle, loke, þat þou fare,
And þe þeuys þou schalt fynde þare.
Yf þou myght þem confounde

And þe þeuys brynge to grownde,
Thou mayste wynne to þyn honde
The fayrest maydyn in þys londe
And also the beste stede,
That ennér knyght rode on at nede:
Y wand hym in paynym londe
Owt of a scarsyns honde.

For hym men bydde me at a tyme
Fyftene castels of stone and lyme
And xv cytees, þe beste on molde,
And also many horsys chargyd with golde:

All þat me badde a sarsyn kynge.
He was tryste in all fowndynge.
My schyld and spere here thou take
And helpe þe maydyn for my sake.

Thynke on þy trowthe and do þy myght:
God the helpe in my ryght.'

When Gye sye, hyt was Tyrrie,
That was bolde and hardy,
Faste he moonyd hym, wele y wate,
pat he was in so euyll estate,
And post, he shulde neuer be glade nor blype,
Or he had vengyd Tyrrie swythe.
He toke hys schylde and hys spere
And hys swyrde wyth hym dud he bere.
To pe mowntayne can he fare:
A grete logge fonde he thare.
Before pat dore he fonde pe stele.
He farde than, as he wolde wede:
Downe he lepe and drewe hys bronde,
In he bare hyt in hys honde.

When he sye the theuys prowde,
He began to crye lowde:
"Trayturs, peuys, pe deuyll yow honege.
Why haue ye do soche a wronge?"
Ye haue slayne a doghty knyght:
Ye schall hyt bye, my trwep y plyght.'
He, pat furste cownturd pere wyth Gye,
Hys hedde loste he smertlye:
The seconde and pe thrydde also,
The fourthe, pe v. and also moo.
Nyehande he slewe pem wythynne,
Or pey myt peper wepons wynne.

Ther was lefte there but oon,
But pey were woundyd or ellys slone.
He ys paste, as y yow say,
But depeys wounde he bare away.

Gye starte to pat maydyn 3ynge
And seyde: 'make no dole, my swete 3ynge.'
Ryse vp and come wyth me:
To Tyrrye y wyll lede thee.'

On a mewle he sett pat maye

WARWICK.
And to be wode he toke be way.
When he came to be hawethorn tree,
Awey was syr Tyrre.
Therfore he made grete deraye,
For he was so gone away.
Sory was tho syr Gye;
For he wende full sekurlye,
That wylde bestys of pat foreste
Wyth hym had made ther feste.

He lokyd hym a lytull besyde
And he sye fete of horsys vnyrde.
He set be mayde on be grownde
And rode hymselfe forpe in pat stownde.

He folowed the trace swythe feste
And he sye knyghtys at the laste.
Syr Tyrre wyth jem pey dud lede
And he hyed hym aftur a gode spede.
Full sone jen came he jem nere:
He bad jen on feyre manere
To delyuer to hym pat woundyd knyght.
'I haue to hym my trowthe plyght
(Y wylle hyt holde, yf pat y myght.
Ye do hym, me jynkyþ, no ryght),
That y schuldle, when he wore dedde,
Bery hym in some gode stedde;
And y bydde yow now pur charyte,
That body ye delyuyr to meee.'

There turned ageyne a Lumbarde,
That was Otons stewarte.
In a bote he passed owre
Aftur Tyrre and odur fowre.
To Gye he seyde: 'what art thou?
Thou loueyst ful lytull þyn ownd prowwe,
When thou came on thys manere

MS. owyr. After this line In a bote and odur fowre struck out.
Thy body for to chalenge here.
Thou art his felowe: be my crowne,
Thou schalt be ladde to dewke Oton.
There schall yow bothe hangyd bee
Hye vpon a galowe treo.'

4560

4564

4568

4572

4576

4580

4584

4588

[leaf 190 b, col. 1]

Thou schalt be ladde to dewke Oton.
They dy3t hys mete and made hyt yare

1 MS. hedde.
Of hym they all had meruell grete,  
Why he came not to hys mete.  
Harrawde then, the gode knyght,  
To the foreste wente full ryght.  

Thorow all pe wode pey haue hym so\;t,  
But, for sothe, they fonde hym noght.  

Then they harde a playnte mylde,  
Os a woman were wyth chylde.  
Ofte sche moonyd hur of care.  
Harrawde, nerre hur can he fare:  

Vndur a thorne they hur fande,  
Hurselfe alone sore wepande.  
Harrawde askyd hur of hur name  
And what she soght and fro whens she came  
And why she made so\; grete mornynge.  
Sche wolde þem seye no nodur thynge,  
But þat sche was a wrechyd woman  
And for hur lorde sche made that mone.  
Sche bad, no man schulde hur see,  
But kepe hur feyre in pruyete.  

To the cyte they went in hye,  
For they myght not mete wyth Gye.  

Now go we to a nodur materere  
And speke we, þere as we were ere,  

How þat Gye wyth syr Tyrrye  
To the hawthorne faste dud hye.  
When Gye come þedur, he fonde noght.  

Vp and downe there he soght.  
When he ne myght fynde that maye,  
To hys ymyne he toke the waye.  

‘Syrs,’ they seyde, ‘make gode chere,’  
When they sye Gye hole and\; fere.  

Then seyde Gye: ‘syrs, take þys knyght  
And loke, that he be wele ydyght.’  
Gye sende aftur the lechyis in hye

1 so over the line by the same hand.  
2 MS. Gye all in.
OZELLE TURNS UP AGAIN.   HER LAMENTS.

For to helpe syr Tyrre.

He thoght, he harde a rewfull crye.
He callyd to hym hys chaumberleyn
And soone he can to hym sayne :

What was pat noyce and pat dynne?
And he seyde, þer was a maye wythynne,
That Harrawde fonde in þe sondur foreste :
Of all, þat euer y sye, she ys þe feyreste.'

A,' seyde Gye, ‘for god allmyght,
Sende2 aftur hur yn anow ryght.'
The chaumberleyn went in hye
And broght þat maye vnto syr Gye.
‘Welcome,' he seyde, ‘my swete wyȝt :
Y am bothe gladde and lyght.'

When sche sye Tyrre lye thare,
Sche felle in swowne for sorow and care.
Gye hur in hys armes plyght
And seyde : ‘be stylene, my swete wyȝt.
Make no more none euyll chere :
Thy leynman shall be hole and ferre.’
Sche sye þe body lye on þe grownde
And þeron many a byttre wounde.
Sche seyde : ‘Tyrre, my dere leynman,
Thou art now bope pale and wane.
Some tyme þou were of grete honoure,
And rodye, as rose, was þy colowre.
In wyckyd tyme þou trowest my redde,
When þou for my loue shalt be dedde.
I schall be dedde also wyth the :
God gyf me grace, þat hyt so bee.
Yf ye dye, y schall me sloo :
Schall y neuer fro hens goo.’
On hys bodye, þere hyt laye,

[leaf 190 b, col. 2]

1 Line 4631 seems corrupt. See note.
2 The first e in Sende looks a little irregular.
Sche felle downe þere þat daye.  
Sche kyssyd hys mowpe and hys face  
And ofte sche cryed: ‘allas, allas!’  
Sche waxed bloo, as any ledde,  
And felle downe, as she were dedde.  

The physician, however, assured her that Tyrry would be cured.

Guy was very careful about Tyrry.

For his sake he did not return to England, but remained there till Tyrry’s health was restored.

One day Guy offered to be Tyrry’s ‘fellow’,
Nodur fayle odur in no lande?'

If Then bespake the erle Tyrre:

'Syr,' he seyde, 'gramercye.

Thys ys a grete specyalte,

That ye wyll my felowe bee.

God of heuyn gene me grace

Yow to quyte in some place.

3yt pou art the trewest knyght,

That euor slepyd in wynturs nyght.

Ye had a wyckydde redde

For to saue me fro the dedde,

But y yow louyd on all manere

And seruyd yow, as my lorde dere:

Y were ellys gretly to blame,

As god schylde me fro schame.'

If Than the toon kyssed the todur

And eyther dud, as other brodur

To the eyte can they fare,

As yoynull men wythowten care.

They be comen to ther ynne

Wyth grete yoye and mekyll wynne.

If Gye dud make hys thynge yare:

Into Ynglonde wolde he fare.

Tyrre he wolde wyth hym take

And many odur for hys sake.

To the kyne woled he fare

And enteyndyd to leue þere full yare

He þoght of hym to haue honowre

And ryche castels wyth many a towre.

If Gye in a wyndowe stode

And spake to syr Tyrre the gode

Of hys passage ouyr the see

And how he wolde wende to hys cuntre.

Than came oon prekande ryght:

He semyd full wele to be a knyght,

1 MS. serue.

and Tyrre gladly accepted him.
That had had grete trauayle.
Gye hym askyd, wythowte fayle,
Of whens he was and what tythande,
What he hyght and of what lande
And what he soght in that cuntre:
‘ Lye thou not, but telle mee.’

That had had grete trauayle.
Gye hym askyd, wythowte fayle,
Of whens he was and what tythande,
What he hyght and of what lande
And what he soght in that cuntre:
‘ Lye thou not, but telle mee.’

This knight was in search of Tyrry,
who had eloped with Duke Otoun’s bride-elect, Duke Loyere’s daughter,

for which offence
Tyrry’s father
Aubry had been attacked by Loyere and Otoun.

This knight was in search of Tyrry,
who had eloped with Duke Otoun’s bride-elect, Duke Loyere’s daughter,

for which offence
Tyrry’s father
Aubry had been attacked by Loyere and Otoun.
At Gormoyse y them lefte.
The lande ys stroyed and all torefte:
But y haue grace to fynde Tyrrye,
That londe ys lorne, sekurlye.
Hys fadur ys olde and whytehore:
Hys strenkyth lassyth more and more.'

£ 'Syr,' quod Gye, 'be god almyght,
Thou schalt lenge wyth me alnyght.
All, that y may, y schall pe wysse,
Where that Tyrrye of Gormoyse ys.'

Gye comawndyd hys meyne
To resseyue the knyght so free.
'Leue syr,' quod Tyrrye to Gye,
'Of my fadur haue mercye.
As we be felows plyght,
Helpe my fadur wyth by myght;
For he hath grete mystere
Of vs now, that be here.
Yf he be tane or euyll fare,
I am dystroyed for euyr mare.
Hyt were grete,' he seyde, 'for me
And schame also, me thynkyg, to the.'

£ Quod Gye: 'Tyrrye, pow spekyst yn vayne.
Thou woldyst neuer halfe so fayne
Helpe thy fadur in hys mystere,
As y wolde wyth my powere.
I schall the neuyr fayle at nede,
Whyll y may ryde on any stede.'
'Syr,' quod Tyrrye, 'gramercye.
Now pow wylt go, y am merye.'
£ Then sende Gye a messegere
To Almayn) to the emperere.²
He sende hym knyghtys bolde and wyght
Fyve hundurd wele ydyght.

1 he seyde seems to be miswritten for some substantive.
2 MS. Emperoure.
'Tyrrye,' he sayde, 'make the redye
For to helpe thy fadur in hye.'
Than belye þey were dyght:
They reden bothe day and nyght.

When they arrived at Gormoyse,

When they come to Gormoyse,\
There they harde moche noyse.
They enturde in sone in haste,
For they were nothynge agaste.

Aubry was very glad.

Grete yoye had erle Awbrye
Of hys sone, syr Tyrrye,
And also of syr Gyowne,
That was a nobull barowne.

There he kyssyd erle Awbrye:
For yoye he wepte, wyttterlye.
'Dere fadur,' quod Tyrrye,
'On all thynge honowre Gye.
Y wyll, that ye wete hýt ryght,
That we be troutheplight.

He sauyd me fro þe deþe,' quod Tyrrye.
'God hym ȝylde,' quod erle Awbrye.
'All, that ys in my lande,
Schall be redy to hys hande,
Cyte, castels, towne and towre:
I make hym maystyr wyth honowre.
Y am now waxyn olde
And vnmyghty and vnbolde:
I wyll, he haue the maystry
Of all thys lande, verylye.'

Nowe be they in myddes þe cyte
All wyth pryde and yolte.

The next morning

They rose vp in the mornyng
And made grete gederynge
Before the erle Awbrye:
There þey made a grete crye.
Gye askyd oon in preuyte,

1 MS. Gorgomoyse.
What was the noyce in that cyte
And wherefore they made that crye,
That he harde, wytterlye.
He seyde, hyt was dewke Loyere,
That oftetyme had be here.
‘Of cheualre he hathe the flowre
And therto grete socowre.’

Then seyde anon syr Gye
To hys feyre companye:
‘Lordyngys, y prey yow, arme yow sone
Azenste þe yondur men we wyll gone.’
‘Syr,’ þey seyde, ‘we be redye
Azenste þem for to fyght in hye.’
To hys ynnes dul he fare
And armyd hym soone thare.

When they were all redy dyght
In a stedde tògedur wyth helmes bryght,
Quod Gye to Tyrrye: ‘herkyn me,
Two hundurd knyghtys take the
The Lorenz boldely to assayle.
Loke, yowre hertys not afayle.’
Tyrrye toke the knyghtys wyght
Armed on ther stedys ryght.
Forthe of the cyte dul he fare:
To the ooste he came full yare.
There came prekyne before þe ooste
A knyght wyth 1 mckull boste.
Tyrrye hyt hym wyth hys spere,
That hys hors fete myght hym not bere.
A nother þere he woundyd depe:
Schylde nor hawberk myght hym not kepe.
Wyth strenkyth he smote hym thore,
That on hys fete he yede no more.

When Tyrrye sye hys men fyght,
He slewe many a doghty knyght.

1 MS. that.
Guy hastens to Tyrry's relief.

There lay in the felde alone
In a whyle many oon.

Boldelye faght syr Tyrrye
And all hys feyre companye.

Tyrrye smote the constabull
Of hys stede, wythowte fabulle.

He had hym wonne in that fyght,
But *pat* pere came soone many a knyght:

Icheoon soone vpon an hepe
Abowte Tyrrye dud they lepe.

He defendyd hym, as a nobull knyght:
Many a hedde he smote of ryght.

All he slewe, that were hym abowte,
Were they neuer so bolde nor stowte.

Gret angwysche to hym came *pen*;
For soone he had lorne all hys men

Thorowe the Lorens, *pat* abowte *jem* wende:
There were slayne many an hende.

What tane and what lone,
Hys felows were awey euerychone.

Tyrrye defendyd hym, as a lyow:
Many an hedde he smote of, be my crowne;

For lothe he was for to flee:
He had wele leuyr slayne bee.

[leaf 192 b, col. 1]

*¶* Then seyde Harrowde to Gye:

"Se ye not syr Tyrrye?"

He ys a nobull knyght:

But yowreselfe, *per* ys none so wyght.

Helpe hym,' he seyde, 'pur charyte:

Hyt ys tymne, so mote y thee.'

Then hyed he forthe a gode spede
To helpe Tyrrye in hys nede.

*¶* Now comyth Gye to that batayle:

The Lorens sone dud hym assayle.

Guy, at Harrawde's summons,

He took Gayere
Sone Gye smote Gayere,
The dewkys cosyn Loyere.
LOYERES MEN ROUTED.

He smote hym downe wyth hys spere
And he hym toke, as falleth to were.
Gye to a nodur rode:
Hys spere porow the body glode.
He smote a nodur, so dud he moo:
Many he made to dethe goo.
Then pey smote togedur thare:
Ther wolde none of them odur spare.
There dyed many a knyght,
That were bolde, hardy and wyght.
Who so had sene Gye
And wyth hym Harrowde and Tyrrye,
There they dud that ylke day,
That hyt ys wondur for to say.
Of Lorens grete plente
Dyed that day ryght in hye.

Gye the constabull hyt thare,
That of hys hors he hym bare.
He toke hym than in pat batayle.
The Lorens flewe, wythowten fayle:
Gye and Tyrrye chasyd faste.
All the Lorens at the laste
Were woundyd and slone that day:
\[\text{Vnnethe xxxd passyd away.}\]
Gye wente home and Tyrrye
Wyth ther gode companye.
\[\text{The Constable also was taken.}\]

Faste to dewke Loyere.
'Syr,' he seyde, 'herkyn to mee.
Loke, \(\text{pou thynke vengy whole bee.}\)
In the mornynge to day
To the cyte we toke \(\text{pe way}\)
Wyth fyve hundurd knyghtys wyght,
And euyll chawnce came to vs ryght.
All we be takyn and slayne:
Ther be not xxxd comen agayne.
Hearing that Tyrry, Guy, and Harrowde were in the town, the Duke was afraid of more defeats. The next morning the Duke himself, with a thousand knights, marched against the town.

Guy saw Otoun’s lost, and was determined to fight with this old enemy of his.

There ys comen syr Tyrbye
And wyth hym þe doghty Gye
And a knyght of grete pryece;
Harrowde of Arlyrne hys name ys.
All they be wyght and bolde:
Thorow þem owre knyghtys are colde.

¶ Then seyde the dewke: ‘ys þat no lye,
That to þem ys comen Tyrrye and Gye
And Harrowde, that ys so wyght,
Then we go to schame anow þryght.’

The dewke rose zerlye
And vnto Gormoyse dud he hye.
He toke in hys companye
A thowsande knygghtys hardye.
He manaste Gye and Tyrrye:
Yf he þem fonde, þey shoulde abye.
¶ As Gye come þorow a churche 3arde,
He lokyd to the felde warde.

He sawe, the ooste of dewke Otow
Be an hylle came passande downe
He callyd to hym Tyrrye
And schewyd hym, that he sye.
Gye syde: ‘what wyll we doo?
The ooste of Lorens cometh vs too.
The dewke Otow of Payuye,
He ys myn olde enemye.
Y knowe hym wele redlyye.
Wyth hym to fyght y am redye.
Let we arme vs sone wele
Bothe in yron and in stele
And an hundurd knygghtys wyth vs take
And moche shame we shall hym make.
We schall be vengyd thorow þe grace

Of hym to day in the place.’

¶ When þey were armed all preste,

¹ w in thowsande is gone in consequence of a worm-hole.
They range þe bellus: þey wolde not reste.
Now they be gedurde same:
They þoght for to worche no game.
Owte of the cyte dud they fare:
They fonde þe Lorens redy thare.
They smetenw togedur faste:
The spere sone in sonder braste.
Then þey drewe swyrdys bryght
And fagh togedur wyth þer myght.
There were many slayne on boþe partes:
The warse had the Lumbardes.
Of ther men be many slane
And many vtto presonw tane.
Gye smote the erle Jurdan,
That was lorde of Melayn,
A grete stroke in the schylde,
That he felle downe in þe felde.
† Then came prekyng{1} syr Tyrrye:
Wyth force he smote Amerye:
He was þe dewkes steward Otoun.
Of hys hors he felle downe.
He drewe there hys fawchone
And slewe Amery there anonw
Wyth hys swyrde, that was of stele.
That sawe the dewke Otoun wele.
There they slewe the Lumbardes:
They felle downe, as cowardes.
Grete was that dysecoumfyte:
To a Lumbarde came dole tyte.
† On a syde faste prekande
Came dewke Otoun faste fleande.
No man hym sye, but Harrawte:
To hym he thoght to make assawte.
He flewe faste and can nye wende,
And Harrowde aftur, that was hende.

{n in prekyng} gone (cf. 4960).
‘Turne þe, he seyde, ‘so muste þou thryue:
Here ys no man, but þy, on lyue.
Defende here that felonye,
That þou duddyst in Lombardy.’ 5020
¶ The dewke turned hym to ageyne,
And therof was Harrowde fayne.
Faste they smote on helme and shylde,
Tho two knyghtys, in the felde. 5024
The fyre flewe owte at euery dynte:
Nodyr wolde for odur stynte.
They brake helmes and hawberkys gode:
The blode be þer bodyes downe yode. 5028
Betwene þem two was stronge batayle:
Eyther can odur faste assayle.
Thoght Harrowde: ‘y schall vengyd bee
Or ellys be dedde, so mote y thee.’ 5032
He hyt the dewke Otoun sare:
A pece owt of the helme he schare.
The swyrde1 in the schouldur wode
Halfe a fote, or hyt stode. 5036
Downe felle that nobull syre:
Harrowde hym hyt wyth grete yre.
He wolde haue smetyn of hys heuydde,2
But wyth strenkyth he was hym reuydde: 5040
An hundurd knyghtys came wele dyght
Abowte Harrowde anow ryght.
To sloo Harrowde þey dyd þer myght
And he defendyd hym, as a nobull knyght. 5044
¶ Then he hyt a Lumbarde wele:
The hedde yede of euery dele.
He faght wyth hys swyrde of stele:
At the laste he felyd hym euyll. 5048
He wolde haue to the cyte fare,
But hys hors was woundyd sare.
Tho þey all on Harrowde thronge

1 MS. schylde.  2 MS. hedde.
And wroght hym moche wronge:

Wyth ther speres, that were scharpe,
They brake helme and hauberk.
He was there were dedede:
Hys body ranne on blode redde.

¶ Then owte starte a Lambarte:
Felle he was, as a lybarte.
Barant was hys ryght name.
He fough to do Harrowde shame:
He gaue Harrowde a wyde wounde
Thorow the body in a stownde.
He vengyd hym sone full hote:
Hys hedde of there he smote.
Anodur he fough to smyte ryght:
Hys hedde fere on the jorthe lyght.
But hys swerde glasedde lowe
And stroke upon the sadull bowe:
So faste hys swerde he dud owt take,
That in hys hande hyt all tobrake.

'Alas,' seyde Harrowde, 'now haue y care:
I may defende me now no mare.
Allas, swerde, who made the,
Hongyd be he on a tree.
Why haste pou fayled me so sone?
My lyue dayes be now done.
Me had leuer here haue be slane,
Then pus amonge pese men tane.'

¶ Then starte vp a Lumbarde:
For sothe, he was a cowarde.
'Thefe,' he seyde, 'thou schalt abye:
Thou haste done vs moche vylenye.'
Harrowde wyth hys fyste hym smate,
That hys neck in two brake.
Tho seyde Harrowde: 'so mote ye the,
Harme schall ye none haue of pe.'

1 MS. helmes.
2 MS. slayne.

WARWICK.
HARRAWDE FORCED TO SURRENDER.

If there came forthe a doghty knyght:
Of Frawnce he was, Josep he hyght. 5088
He was þe dewkys sowdyere:
He seruyd hym for mystere.
Harrawde,' he seyde, '3ylde þe to me.
Thor schall no skaþe be done to the
Of the dewke and hys meyne,
Also muste y thryue or the.'
Syr,' seyde Harrawde, 'be seynt Mychell,
To þat couenawnde y graunt well,
So þat ye me slo in the feld, 5092
Or ye me to the dewke þeld.
They sett Harrawde on a stede,
Towarde þe ooste þey dud hym lede:
They were gladd euerychane,
When they had Harrowde tane.

Now tūrne we aȝeyne to syr Gye
And to the bolde erle Tyrrye. 5104
þe Lumbardes þey had overconen echow,
Some fledde, some taken and sloane.
'Where ys Harrowde?' seyde syr Gye,
'I haue wondur and ferlye.' 5108
Then seyde oon: 'be my crowne,
I sye hym chace dewke Oton.
He hym folowed 1 owte of þe fyght
Prekyng on a stede wyght.'
'Allas,' seyde Gye, 'þat y was borne,
Now y haue Harrowde forlorne.
Forthe a whyle y wyll fonde,
If y may of hym here tythande. 5116
Lordsyncys,' he seyde, 'pur charyte,
Wen lyth home to the cyte;
For y wyll wende nyght and day,
Harrowde yf y fynde may.
schall neuer eþe bredde,
1 e in folowed gone (cf. 4960).
Or y fynde hym quyck or dedde.
Tyrbye,' he seyde, 'come wyth me
To seke Harrawde, pur charyte.'  

They toke per stedys wyth per sporys: 1
They prekyd ouer rugges and forys. 2
To the ooste can they fare
To loke, yf Harrawde were thare.
Gye lokydde, wyttërlye:
He sawe dewke Otoun of Payuye
And wyth hym Harrawde, pat nobull knyght,
Euyll woundydyd and euyll dyght.

‘Allas,’ seyde Gye, ‘Harrawde ys tane:
Amonge hys enemyes he ys allane.
Tyrbye,’ he seyde, ‘my dere felowe,
Helpe me now a lyttull throwe.’
‘3ys,’ seyde Tyrbye, ‘so mote y th, 
Whyll that y lyuceande bee.’

Gye a Lumbarde smote faste:
Hys hors and hym downe he caste.

Thyrre hyt a nodur wele
The hed wente of euery dele.
There pey drewe pe swyrdys bryght
And slewe many a doghty knyght.
To Harrowde Gye sone wanne,
A gode swyrde he toke hym than) 
And bad hym to defende hym, as an hardy knyzt.

Guy reached Harrawde, and supplied him with a good sword.

By these three knights the Lombards were vanquished, Otoun fled, but he was pursued by Guy almost as far as the camp, and all but killed.

1 MS. spurres. 2 MS. forons.
Guy, though assailed by many, got back to his fellows, betwene the body and the arse
Felle hys dynte there adowne.
The sadull of golde and pat stede
He smote a too in that nede.
There they prekyd abowte syr Gye,
But he defendyd hym manlye.
Gye prekyd thorow the ooste:
They hym folowed wyth grete boste.
He mette Harrawde and Tyrrye:
Of hym they had ferlye,
On what maner he passyd away.
They thankyd god pat same day,
That pey had so mette the Lumbardes,
They schulde not sey, pey were cowardes.
They gaue them strokys vnryde
And woundyde them on enery syde.
¶ Then seyde Gye to hys felows tho:
' Hyt ys tyme, that we goo.'
To the cyte can they fare
And carefull lefte pe Lumbardes pare.
Gye and Tyrrye be hole and sownde,
Harrowde hath an euyl wounde.
Forthe they wente all thre
Wyth yoye vnto the cyte.
All the men of that cuntre
Looueyd god in trynyte,
That syr Harrowde had hys lyfe;
For he had be in so moche stryfe.
Gye made to come to hys honde
The beste lechys of that londe.
Harrowdes wounde pey helyd wele
In a whyle, so haue y hele.
They were then full blythe
And thankyd god fele sythe,
That pey had ouercomen pe enemyes
Thorow god dys helo and syr Gyes.
Now they drad them no mare,  
For they were brought out of care.

Duke Otoun was also cured.  

If the dewke Otoun ys comen hame:
Of hys dede he had grete schame.
Lechys he had there gode:
They helyd hym sone, be my hode.
When hys woundys were whayle,
He wente to the dewke, sawns fayle,
And tolde hym of hys wykkyd care,
How he had be in sorowe sare.

Now he advised Duke Loyere,

To dewke Loyer seyde Otoun:
‘Herkyn’ to my resoun.
But ye haue þe better cownsayle,¹
Ye lose youre londe, wythowte fayle,
Thorowe þe men Harrowde and Gye
And wyth them þe erle Tyrrye.
All youre knyghtys þey haue tane
And youre frendys many slane.
The stronge cyte may no man wynne
Nodur wyth force nor wyth gynne.
They haue of many a londe socowre:
Yf we fyght, we gete the worre.
Yf ye wyll my cowncell trowe,
Wyth some wyle we wyll venge yow.
Men schulde preue in all wyse
To venge them on þer ennysse.

He should send word that he was

Sende ye wyth loue vnto Tyrrye
And to hys fadur, erle Awbrye,
And sey, þou wylt þene þy doghter dere
To syr Tyrrye wyth full gode chere,
And bydde hym come to thys cyte
(And sey, ye wyll acordyd bee
All scker and not dredande
Wyth all the knyghtys of þe lande:
All wyth loue and charyte

¹ MS. cownzell.
Here shall they weddyd bee.  
When they be fro þe cyte gone  
But þe mountenans of a rone;¹  
Ye shall take the trayturs all  
And eyyll shall them befalle.  
Echoom of them shall damned bee  
In yowre courte to hynge on a tre.  
Y prey yow, syr, hertely,  
Geue me Harrowde, Tyrrye and Gye.  
They be my dedly enmyse:  
Y shall them payne in all wyse.  
They shall be broght into Payuye  
And in pryson depe they shall dye.  
And damne hym to dethe, Tyrrye:²  
So shall hyt be, sekurlyye.  
Then shall y haue þy doghtur dere  
In Payuye for to wedde hur there.­¹  
If Tho hym spake the dewke Loyere:  
‘Let be, Oton, thy wyckyd manere.  
For all the gode in thys towne  
Y wolde not do Tyrrye þys tresowyn.  
I wolde not Tyrrye so begyle  
Nor qwyte hym not so hys wylle  
For hys gode dede and hys serues  
Nodur Gye nor Harrowde þe marches.  
Yf syr Tyrrye haue done any skathe,  
Sone he may amende hyt rathe.  
Gye and Harrowde, be thys day,  
Hyt were pyte so þem to betraye.’  
If Then spake the dewke Oton:  
‘Me thynkyth, ye speke no reson,  
When ye loue the theuys so well,  
That ye wyll do be no cowncell  
Nor put them in yowre pryson.}  

¹ Lines 5229-30 very probably corrupt.  
² MS. syr Gye.
To seide to yow rawnsome
Odur do p[em](1) gode costage
To amende þer(2) owtrage.
Y schall hane(3) Harrowde and Gye
tyll þey be swagyd a gode partye
And chastysed thorow þer owtrage.
Then schall ye þorow your baronage
Wyth them sone acordyd bee
To wynne þer loue to þe and me.

He thought a nodur trecherye:
Yf he myȝt gete þem to hys baylye,
He wolde not for all Lumbardye,
But þey were dedde full ha telye.
He besoght dewke Loyere
Wyth soche wordys and preyere,
That he grauntyd for hys sake
A messengere for to make.
They toke þe byschopp of þat lande
And tolde hym all that tythande,
How þey wolde make acordynge,
Wythowte any lesynge.
Forthe he wente that ylke day
Wyth grete fare and nobelaye.
Or hyt were dayes thre,
Comyn he was to that cyte.
There he fonde the erle Aubrye
And he hym kyssed curtlesye.
'He grett yow wele, þe dewke Loyere,
And byddyth yow on feyre manere
Come to hys cyte, verament:
And, yf ye wyll to hym assent,
He wyll geue thy sone Tyrrye
'Hys doghtur to wyle, sekurye,
And in that same feyre cyte

1 MS. hym.
2 MS. hys.
3 u in hane partly gone (worm-hole).
THE SHAM OFFER OF PEACE ACCEPTED.

152

Schall the brydale holdyn bee. 5296
Yowre baronage schall come pedur
To make yoye all togedur,
And also all yowre cheualrye
Muste be there wyth yow redy.
Of bothe halues many schall bee
In pavelons before that cyte.
There schall ye acordyd be,
Y tryste, in grete speytye.'

and this was readily accepted.

All yey seyde in feyre manere:
'Blesyd be god and seynt Rogere.
Wyth owre lorde, dewke Loyere,
We wyll be attone on yys manere.
We wyll come at hys comawndement,
When he aftur vs thus haf sente.
We haue done agenste hys wylle:
We schall amende hyt, and pat ys skylle.'

Guy, it is true, had misgivings,

but the Bishop assured them
that there was no wicked thought
[leaf 185 a, col. 2]
in Otoun.

The byschopp seyde: 'drede ye noght:
In hym ys no wyckyd thoght.
He wolde not for all thys towne
Do yow any tresowne.'

Now wendyth pe byschopp to Loreyne.
The erle Tyrrye ys full fayne.
When the tyme was nye tolde,
All the knyghtys yonge and olde
Dyghtyd them, as men hende,
And to the parlament dud pey wende:

1 co in acordyd in part gone (worm-hole). 2 MS. lorew.'
The erle Awbrye and Tyrrye,
Harrowde and gode syr Gye;
Wyth hem v hundunde knyghtys wyght,
Echom on\(^1\) stedey syre and lyght.
They were all cloathed well
In scarlet and in ryche sendell.
They had wyth hem pe maydyn 3yne.
Of treson wyste they nothyng.
\(^3\) They came to the parlement:
They thought to make acordement.
There were straungrers of many a cuntre,
That came the weddyng for to see:
Of Lorayne\(^2\) the dewke Loyere
And wyth hym mony a bachelere
And of hys baronage grete plente,
That came the maryage for to see;
The dewke Otoun of Paynye
And fele erlys of Lumbardye.
\(^4\) ‘Lordyngys,’ sayde dewke Otoun,
‘Herkenyth to my reson).
Well ye wott, that Tyrrye,
Of Gormoyse the erlys sone Awbrye,
Trespassyd agenste dewke Loyere,
Whyll he was to hym lefe and dere.
In hys courte was he longe,
Tyll he was waxyyn stronge:
He made hym knyght rychelye,
And he qwyt hym euyl, wyterlye,
When he soche pynge toke on hande,
To lede hys doghtur owt of hys lande.
To Costantyne he hur broght,
There as the dewke ys\(^3\) lonyd noght.
And hys knyghtys he hath slayne
And hys londe dystroyed wyth mayne.

\(^1\) MS. of. \(^2\) MS. lowere. \(^3\) ys omitted in MS. See note.
THE MOCK PEACE CONCLUDED.

3yt he hath done more, be ëys day,
But y wyll not all say.

he advised Loyere
I besche\(^1\) hym pur charyte
And all thys baronage, sekerlye,
That the dewke in hys parlement
Hym forgeue hys maleentente
And gene Tyryre wyth\(^1\) honowre
Hys doghtur bryght in bowre
Wyth hym to the cyte for to fare
A ryche brydale to make thare.
For syr Tyryre there schall bee
Grett myrthe and yolyte.
Then schull we euyr frendys bee,
And þew wyll y wende to my cuntre.'
Thus the dewke Oton can say:
"For god dys loue, graunte vs þat to daye.'
\(^1\) Than seyde dewke Loyere:
'As ye haue seyde, y graunt hyt here.
I forgeue hym myn euyll wylle :
I schall hym loue lowde and stylle.'
\(^1\) Then spake dewke Oton':
'I prey yow all, besche Gyowne,
Yf y haue oght ageyne hym done,
That y muste amende hyt sone.
Wyth þat couenande kysse me here
Euyr to be my frende dere.'
'Syr dewke,' seyde Gye, 'holde þe stylle :
To kysse the y haue no wylle.
Thou me betrayed in þy cuntre
And slewe my nobull knyghtyhs thre.
That ys not to reherce here :
Speke we of a nodur matere.
Go and do, what thy wylle ys,
The erle Awbrye for to kysse.
Acorde wyth hys sone Tyryre :
\(^1\) MS. besecheyd.
To the hyt ys no vylenye.  

Then they kyste all same  

Bothe wyth yoye and wyth game.  

Gye hym drewe bakwarde:  

He wolde kysse no Lumbarde.  

They kysssed then every man:  

At the dewke Gye began.  

‘Dewke Loyere,’ seyde Aubrye,  

‘Here y take the my sone Tyrrye:  

Here y the take a gode knyght:  

My blessyne hauhe he day and nyght.’  

The erle hym turned sone anon:  

The wey to Gormoyse1 ys he gon.  

The dewke Loyere went hys way  

And all hys baronage wyth hym pat day.  

Harrowde ledde pat maye bryght:  

Sche was bothe feyre and whyght.  

Sche had hur fadurs wyle  

For to be wyth Harrowde style.  

Gye, Harrowde2 and Tyrrye  

Rode syngyng merelye.  

Grete game was in per thoght:  

For of treson wyste they noght.  

Or hyt were none of the day,  

They schulde synge: ‘wele away.’  

That ylke day they rode faste.  

Sone they sye at the laste  

Besyde them a3 feyre playne:  

Therof was the dewke fayne.  

He bad them all downe lyght  

To reste ther horsys a lytull wyght.  

Hyt was hote that ylke day,  

As they had redyn aftur the way.  

Sone, when they lyght downe,

---

1 MS. Gorgomoyse, 2 d in Harrowde gone (worm-hole), 3 a added over the line.
Vp rose dewke Otown.

"Herkyn," he seyde, "owre companye
Of Loren and of Payuye:
All, "tat euer nowe be here
On pe dewkys halfe Loyere,
I comawnde yow, wythowte more
Take the trayturs, that be pore,
And loke, that ye them bynde
All ther handys pem behynde.
We schall them to Loreyn brynge
And dampne pem on galowse to hynge.
He, that spareth any of alle,
In the same jugement he schall falle.'

"The Lumbardes starte vp full bolde
As thycye, as schepe do in folde,
And wyll them knyghtys of Loreyne,
That of the dede were fayne.
Tyrre was besett abowte:
They helde hym in, he myȝt not owte.
They toke Tyrre at that fyght
And also syr Harrowde the wyght.

"Dewke Loyer," seyde Gyowne,
"Why haue ye do thys treson?"
I helde yow for a gode knyght,
Tyll hyt was nowe ryght.
Were we not kyste\(^1\) and made at oon?
Before the barons\(^1\) everychone?
Ye haue trowed dewke Onton,
That euer was lefe to doo treson.
Had ye neuer thys thynge wroght,
But be Ontons avyse and thoght.'

Grete dole had dewke Loyere:
He myȝt not speake a worde there.
He rode owte at the oon syde:
For dole he myȝt no lenger abyde.

\(^1\) e in kyste and n in barons gone (worm-hole).
Than starte forthe a gode knyght,
A bolde man and a wyght.
Be the mantell toke he Gye
Wyth grete yre, wyutterlye,
That the lace brake in thre:
Many a man hyt can see.
Gye hym turned sone hote
And wyth hys fyste he hym smote.
He rose no more for to fyght,
For sothe, as y the behyght.
They assayled faste syr Gye,
The Lumbardes, wyth grete trecherye,
That hys robe of sendell
Was reyun in pecys euey delle.
Every man a pece hente:
All the robe was torente.
Gye wyth strenkyth dud vp lepe
And fellyd mony on a hepe.
Hys stede sone he bestrode
And lepe on hym, as he were wode.
He smote the stede in the syde:
Forthe of the place dud he ryde.
When he hym sye, the dewke Otoï,
That syr Gye was so gone,
Lowde he cryed to hys meyne:
'Lepe on yowre stedys: what do ye?
And faste ye hast aftur Gye.
For god dys louv, be redye:
Yf he passe, y am schente.
Hym to take do yowre entente.
Be god, pat made bope nyght and day,
Yf he fro yow passe away,
I schall yow sloo wyth m yn hande
All, that be of my lande;
And he, pat bryngyth hym quyck or doode,
He shall haue golde redde  
And odur ryches, y yow say,  
All my lande aftur my day.'

Aftur Gye rode many a knyght,  
Two hundurde wele ydyght.  
They chasyd Gye, he flewe allone:  
Wepon had he neuer oone.

Hym to slee or to take  
All abowte hym dud they schake.  
Forth the starte oon of that lande
Wyth helme on hedde and spere in hande.
To Gye he rode wyth dyspyte:
Thorow pe body he wolde hym smyte,
But god wolde not, pe he had skathe.
Gye bare hys spere downe rathe:

Betwene hys arme and hys syde  
The spere awey feyre dud glyde.  
Hyt carue hys skynne in manere:  
He thoght, hyt came a lytull to nere.
Gye hym turned, as he had nede:  
He smote hym downe of hys stede.  
Fro hym passyd tho syr Gye;
A nodur came full hastelye.
He bare a swerde wele growne :
Be Gyes syde pe stroke felle downe
Into the sadull a large fote.
Gye flewe faste: god hyt wote.

At last, Guy saw a man carrying a pole,
which he borrowed of hym.

Gye lokyd besyde hym at pe laste:
A polle he sawe a man bere.

He rode to hym in feyre manere:
'Geue me that powle, dere frende,
And, as y am a knyght hende,
I schall the quyte thys ylke day
Also son as euyr y maye

1 MS. spere.
And he answeryd: 'hende knyght,
Ye schall hyt haue anon ryght. 5540
'Well y see thy traueyle: 1
God the helpe, pat wyll not fayle.'
In hys hande he toke the polle
And hym defendyd, be my nolle. 5544
The furste man, 2 he mett pore,
Wyth 3 the polle he stroke sore:
He smote hys necke euyn in two
And toke pe stede and can goo,
Tyll he came to that man: 5548
'Haue thy stede,' quod Gye than;.
'Take thy for thy gode dede:
God quyte the thy mede.' 5552
'Knyght,' he seyde, 'gramercye!'
Vp he lepe and went in hye,
And forthe wente syr Gyowne:
He spared nodur folde nor towne. 5556
Ther was neuer 3yt no knyght,
That defendyd hym so in fyght.
When he had nede in the fyght,
He hym defendyd, as a knyght,
Tyl he came to a watur brode:
In he wente and ouyr he rode.
Ther durste 4 none aftur hym þere passe,
For the watur so stronge was. 5564
Ageyne they turned euerychone
Vnto the dewke Oton. 5568
That Gye was passyd so allone,
He blamed hys men euerychone.
' Syr dewke Loyere;' seyde Oton,
'He ys paste, that false felon).
To Payue now let vs dyght

1 MS. trauell. 2 part of h blotted out before man in MS.
3 Wythe originally in MS., but e is erased.
4 r of durste added over the line.
To wedde Ozelde, pat maye bryght.

Tyrrye and Harrowde schall wende wyth me:
In my pryson schall 1 they bee
(They schall haue 1 no harme for me,
But as ye thynke, so mote y the),
Tyll that ye wyll do yowre wylle
Of pey bothe, as hyt ys skylle.
The todur knyghtys take wyth yow
And kepe pey for yowre owne prowye.'

But Loyere refused to give
him Harrowde,
ordering him at the same time to
treat Tyrry well.

They parted.
Ozelle accompanying Otoun.
Tyrry was put on a nag, with his
hands bound behind his back.
Ozelle was very sorry for him,

1 se of schall and n of haue gone (worm-hole).
Sche swownyd then ofte for woo:
Sche poxt, hur herte wolde breke in two. 5608
¶ When the dewke lokyd on that maye,
He can to hur some saye:
‘Woman,’ quod he, ‘art thou madde,
When thou for an harlat ladde 5612
Makyste dole in soche manere?
I the swere be seynt Rogere:
Make pou dole, that y may se,
And y schall hym slee before y by ny.
Dere lemman, be gladde and blythe.
We schall come to Payuye swythe:
There schalt pou weddyd bee
And wele at esc pou schalt hym see. 5620
I schall hym servue on all manere,
Yf thou wylt make gode chere.’
¶ ‘God yow ʒelde,’ quod that maye;
‘But of oon thynge y wolde yow pray:
That xl dayes ye wolde hyt respyte.
Ye may me not moche wyte:
Be that y schall be redy in bowre,
That ye may me wedde wyth honowre.’
¶ ‘I graunte the ʒat, my sweete maye.’
Wyth pat to Payue he toke þe waye,
But sche thoght a nodur þynge:
Or he schulde abowte þe spowsage brynge, 5632
Sche wolde in hur bowre allone
Wyth a kynfe hurselxe slone.
Sche had cowmforte of a thynge,
That Gye was paste wythowte hurtynge. 5636
Sche hopyd thorow Gyes cowncell
To haue helpe be some wyle
And, that Tyrre hur lemman
Thorow hym fro prison schulde be tane. 5640
¶ Wyth that to Payuye were þey broght.
The dewke Otoun forgate noght,
WARWICK. 11
Guy's Grief for the Loss of his Fellows.

He dud Tyrrye in hys pryson
In a pyt depe there downe.

Whyll þat he in pryson laye,
He myȝt not wytt, when hyt was daye.
Mete nor drynke had he nane.

Gye sone bethoght hym than: 5648
He made 1 sorowe nyght and day
For Tyrrye, that in pryson laye.

Of Gye to speke ys my redde,
That god had sauyd fro the dedde.

When he was paste þe watyr vnyrde,
He lokyd abowte on evry syde.
He sawe, he was there allone:

Felowe had he there none.

He þought on hys felows gode
And for sorowe he waxe nere wode.

'Lorde,' he seyde, 'how schall y fare?
Y am full of sorowe and care.
I haue lorne gode Harrawte
And syr Tyrrye, wythowte defawte.
Wele þat, þey schall be slane,
Wythowte othe, now þey be tane. 5664

Allas,' he seyde, ' dewke Loyere,
How myȝtyst þou do on þys manere?
As for the dewke Oton,
He hath done euyr tresowð:
But for cauþe of hys fauowre
Thou schalt be holde a traytowre.

Lorde, how schall y wyth þe emperowre fare?

Amonge þem may þy come no mare.

When þy came to þys cuntre,
He sende me knyȝtys gode and free
To helpe me, when mystere ware,
And þey be now in grete care.

Now haue þy not so lyttull a grome

1 c written over the line.
To holde my hors, where \textit{pat} y come.  
Allas,' he seyde, 'for Tyrrye!  
We be departyd, sekerlye.  
I trowe, y shall the neuer see:  
My lyfe y schall lose for the.  
And Ontow schall haue Ozell,  
Yf sche hur kepe neuer so well.  
Fro the dethe schall y not flee,  
Tyll that y avengyd bee.'

\textit{ff} All that day Gye dud ryde  
Thorow \textit{pe} lande, \textit{pat} was vnyrde.  
At the laste he sye nerehande  
A castell be a watur stande.  
There he poght to dwelle all nyght,  
For no forther he ne myght.  
At the gate he fonde a knyght:  
He was curtes and wele dyght.  
Be hym stode knyghtys thre:  
He hym be\textit{poght}, whych lorde schulde be.  
"Knyght," quod Gye, "god the see,  
That for vs dyed vpon a \textit{t} tree.  
I am a knyght of farre cuntre:  
I aske harbowre for charyte.'

The lorde answeryd on feyre manere:  
"Syr, ye schall be welcome here."  
He made oon hys hors to stabull lede,  
"And kepe hym, as myn owne stede."  
\textit{ff} The lorde was curtes \textit{perwythall}  
And ledde Gye to the halle.  
He toke a mantell of ryche colowre  
And caste on Gye for hys honowre.  
Then seyde the lorde vnto \textit{yr} Gye:  
"Syr, y the besche specyallye,  
Telle me, what ys thy name,  
Who \textit{pou} art and fro whens \textit{pou} came.'

\textit{ff} a added over the line.

\textit{He rode through the country till night,}  
\textit{when he came to a castle,}  
\textit{whose lord received him hospitably.}  
\textit{[leaf 197 b, col. 2]}  
\textit{His host inquired his name,}
Then seyde Gye: 'y schall þe say,
Syth that ye me so feyre pray.
Gye of Warwyk men elepe me:
I am knowyn in many a cuntre.'
'I kenne þe wele for a knyght hende:
Some tyme þou were my frende.
Ye lounyd me wyth yowre powere.
Ye made me knyght wyth yowre hande
And ledde me sythen to many a 1 lande
To justes and to bordys:
Then was y of grete pryce.
Sythen toke y wyfe, as ye may see,
Ames de la Mowntayne, so mote y thee.'
Also sone as Gye hyt wyste,
Well hartelye he hym kyste.
Then seyde Ames: 'where hane ye gone
In thys londe 2 thus allone?
Me þynkyth, þat ye haue had tene,
As ye had yn grete batayle bene.
Where be all yowre meyne,
And syr Harrawde, where ys hee?'
Then seyde Gye: 'y schall the telle
All my case, how hyt felle.'
There he tolde lesse and more,
How he fonde Tyrrye sore
And how þat he broght hym home
To helpe hys fadur fro shome
And how þat þey were betrayedde echeon
At a parlement, that they had tane,
And how he was paste away
Wyth angwysche that ylke day
And how Harrowde and Tyrrye
Were takyn to pryson, sekerlye,

1 MS. to my.  2 MS. bordes.  3 e in londe gone (worm-hole).
GUY LEAVES AMYS.

'And wyth þem fyue hundurde knyȝtys bolde:
All, ye wote, they be in holde,
I wot not, whedur qwyck or dedde:
Therfore sory ys my redde.'

When Gye had tolde euery dele
Of hys wo and of hys wele,
Then seyde Ames: 'syr, a whyle be stylle
And here me, yf hyt be thy wylle.
I haue nodur castell nor towre
In thys londe wyth honowre,
But they schall be at thy wylle
And my men lowde and stylle.
Fyue hundurd knyghtys may y brynge
To helpe yow in all thynge.
Wyth my strenkyth and my meyne,
That be in thys cuntre,
We schall wrath þe dewke Otoun
And stroye hys castels and hys towne.
Wele schall ye vengyd bee
On the dewke and hys meyne.
We schall neuer fro hys lande gone,
Or that he be takyn and slone.'

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'gramereye!
Hyt were to longe, wytterlye,
For to gedur ooste so stronge:
The vengeawnce wolde dwelle to longe.
I schall sone vengyd bee:
Fro the dethe y wyll not flee.'

Gye syxe dayes was thare:
Euyr he had sorowe and care.
Ames cowmfortyd hym well þan,
For hym he was a sory man.
Ames wolde wyth hym wende:
'Do wey,' seyde Gye, 'my dere frende.'
Ames ys stylle, Gye toke the waye:
For hym bad Ames ofte that day,
That god, for hys grete grace,
Schylde hym fro schame in *pat* place.

\[ \text{He arrived at Pavia} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{arrived} \quad \text{at} \quad \text{Pavia} \]

\[ \text{with his face and} \]

\[ \text{hair tinged black,} \]

\[ \text{[leaf 198 a, col. 2]} \]

\[ \text{so that no one} \]

\[ \text{knew him.} \]

\[ \text{He presented} \]

\[ \text{Otoun with a good} \]

\[ \text{steed.} \]

\[ \text{Otoun} \quad \text{thanked} \]

\[ \text{him for this} \]

\[ \text{present,} \]

\[ \text{That} \quad \text{god,} \quad \text{for} \quad \text{hys} \quad \text{grete} \quad \text{grace,} \]

\[ \text{Schylde} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{fro} \quad \text{schame} \quad \text{in} \quad \text{*pat*} \quad \text{place.} \]

\[ \text{Now ys Gye to Payuye towne:} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{poght} \quad \text{to do} \quad \text{schame} \quad \text{to} \quad \text{Otowyn.} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{smeryd} \quad \text{hym,} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{he} \quad \text{came} \quad \text{there,} \]

\[ \text{Hys vysage} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{hys} \quad \text{yelowe} \quad \text{here} \]

\[ \text{Wyth a black o ytmentte,} \]

\[ \text{That} \quad \text{he} \quad \text{was} \quad \text{black} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{beschente.} \]

\[ \text{Ther} \quad \text{was} \quad \text{none} \quad \text{so} \quad \text{wyse} \quad \text{a} \quad \text{man,} \]

\[ \text{That} \quad \text{cowde} \quad \text{Gye} \quad \text{knowe} \quad \text{than}. \]

\[ \text{At} \quad \text{Payuye} \quad \text{he} \quad \text{fonde} \quad \text{dewke} \quad \text{Otowyn:} \]

\[ \text{Herke,} \quad \text{how} \quad \text{he} \quad \text{shewyd} \quad \text{hys} \quad \text{resoii),} \]

\[ \text{IT} \quad \text{Syr} \quad \text{dewke,'} \quad \text{he} \quad \text{seyde,} \quad \text{‘god}^1\text{ the see:} \]

\[ \text{A} \quad \text{ryche} \quad \text{man} \quad \text{thon} \quad \text{art} \quad \text{of} \quad \text{poste.} \]

\[ \text{Comyn y am} \quad \text{fro} \quad \text{ferre} \quad \text{cuntre} \]

\[ \text{Day} \quad \text{and} \quad \text{nyght} \quad \text{to} \quad \text{seke} \quad \text{the.} \]

\[ \text{I haue} \quad \text{pe} \quad \text{brought} \quad \text{pe} \quad \text{beste} \quad \text{stede,} \]

\[ \text{That} \quad \text{euer} \quad \text{knyght} \quad \text{rode} \quad \text{on} \quad \text{at} \quad \text{nede.} \]

\[ \text{Furste} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{wanne} \quad \text{a} \quad \text{sarsyn}, \]

\[ \text{Sythen y had} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{of} \quad \text{my} \quad \text{cosyn}. \]

\[ \text{Ther} \quad \text{ys} \quad \text{none} \quad \text{in} \quad \text{pys} \quad \text{worlde} \quad \text{so} \quad \text{wyght} \]

\[ \text{Lyon} \quad \text{nor} \quad \text{swalowe} \quad \text{nor} \quad \text{fowle} \quad \text{in} \quad \text{flyght :} \]

\[ \text{Yf a dromande} \quad \text{were} \quad \text{seylande,} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{wolde} \quad \text{passe} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{be} \quad \text{the} \quad \text{lande.} \]

\[ \text{In} \quad \text{the} \quad \text{see} \quad \text{the} \quad \text{grete} \quad \text{brymme} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{wyll} \quad \text{sone} \quad \text{ouyr} \quad \text{swymme.} \]

\[ \text{Yf ye leue not,} \quad \text{that} \quad \text{y} \quad \text{say,} \]

\[ \text{I} \quad \text{wyll} \quad \text{hyt} \quad \text{preue} \quad \text{thys} \quad \text{ylke} \quad \text{day.} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{hath} \quad \text{an} \quad \text{euyll} \quad \text{manere :} \]

\[ \text{Ther} \quad \text{ys} \quad \text{no} \quad \text{man,} \quad \text{*pat} \quad \text{come} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{ner,} \]

\[ \text{He} \quad \text{wyll} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{slee} \quad \text{day} \quad \text{or} \quad \text{nyght,} \]

\[ \text{But} \quad \text{yf} \quad \text{that} \quad \text{y} \quad \text{kepe} \quad \text{hym} \quad \text{myght.'} \]

\[ \text{Then} \quad \text{seyde} \quad \text{Otowyn:} \quad \text{‘gramercye!} \]

\[ \text{Hyt} \quad \text{ys} \quad \text{a} \quad \text{feyre} \quad \text{gyfte,} \quad \text{wyttetrelye.} \]

\[ \text{Thou} \quad \text{schalt} \quad \text{dwele wyth} \quad \text{thy} \quad \text{stede :} \]

\[ ^1 \text{q blotted out before} \text{god} \text{in MS.} \]
Golde and syluyr schall be þy mede.
I haue mystere of soche a stede
For to ryde on at my nede.
Of myn enmyse y haue tane
A grete parte, but oon! ys gane.
God, that dyed on a tre,
Gene, he were in my poste:
Hys lyfe dayes were awaye;
He schulde be hongyd 3yt to day.'
‘Syr,’ quod Gye, ‘for the trynyte,
What traytur may that bee?’
‘My frende,’ he seyde, ‘be thys day,
Gye he hyght, wythowte delaye,
Of Warwyk, that thefe stronge:
He wyll do me mekyll wronge.’
‘Syr, full wele know y Gye:
He slewe my brodur ones in fyght:
I wolde be vengyd, yf y myght.
Knowe ye not oon! Tyrrye?
That ys my dedlye enmye:
He slewe my brodur, pat was me dere,
Hyt ys not gone 3yt halfe a yere.
God let me neuyr dye in lande,
Or y may venge me wyth my hande.’
‘My frende,’ seyde dewke Oton,
‘I haue hym in my pryson.
Y wyll, that þou kepe Tyrrye
And do hym schame and vylanye.’
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘gramercye!
I schall yow sey, wyterlyye :
Y schall hym kepe 3erlye and late.
I trowe sone to chaunce hys state.’
He gaue hym the keyes there
And made hym hys geylere.
The dewke askyd, what he hyght,
As Guy gave a sham name,

And he sayde ........................ 1
The dewke comawndyd, he shulde haue
A feyre chaumbur and a knaue.
Lyttull wyste dewke Oton],
Who schulde kepe hys prysow. 5856

If For seynt Thomas loue of Cawnturbery, 5860
Fylle the cuppe and make vs mery.

N ow haþ Gye all hys wyle
In the courte bope lowde and stille.

Guy found Tyrry in a prison 40 fathoms deep.

To the court Gye ys gone:
He fonde a pryson of lyme and stone. 5864
xl fadoms hyt was depe:
Thereynne he harde oon sore wepe.

[leaf 198 b, col. 2]

Hearing the prisoner’s moan,

Gye askyd hastelye,
Who hyt was, pat made that crye.
'I am a wreche, a cayte:
Me forthynkyth, y am on lyfe.
Erle Tyrrye was my name:
Ther was neuer man, pat had more shame.
I am in a dongeowne
And myssayde of dewke Oton].
I bere on me yron more
Then euyr man dud before:
All my body weyth, as ledde,
Lorde, pat y wolde fayne be dedde.
I was felowe wyth a knyght:
In all yhs worlde ys none so wyght.
For pe dewke myght not hym sloo,
On me pe vengeawnce wyll he doo.
Thys thre days eto y no mete:
I muste dye for hungur grete.' 5868

'T Be stille,' sayde Gye, 'herkyn a prow ;
For y am Gye, þyn owne felowe :
I schall deluyyr the of pryson.' 5884

Guy discovered himself.

1 So in MS: a name, but not the right, or something to the same effect, is missing. See the note.
Then seyde Tyrrye to Gyowne:
'For goddyes loue and seynt Mary,
Wende awey faste in hye.
How came thou heder? telle me,
Skathe schall y haue for the:
Yf Oton wytt, that thou be here,
He wyll þe sloo on all manere.
Hyt ys bettur to dye myselfe allone,
Then we togedur schulde be slone.
For the loue of heuyn kynge,
Wende hens wythowte lettynge.'
† All þat harle a Lumbarde,
Of ther speche how hyt farde.
He beganne for to crye:
'Gye, y schall the sone bewrye.
Ye schall bothe hangyd bee
On the galowse, so mote y the.'
'For god, that dyed on a tree,
Haue mercy of Tyrrye and of me.
Well y wote, that thou may
Make vs to haue grete harme to day
What schall thou therof wynne,
Yf we be slayne wyth schame and synne?
I schall become thy man here
And serue the, as my lorde dere.
Thou schalt be a nobull knyght;
And þerto, my trowthe y plyght,
We schall sese into thyn hande
Halfen dele of all owre lande.'
'Do wey,' seyde the Lumbart,
'Of heuyn haue y neuyr part,
But y telle dewke Oton:
Y wolde not ellys for all þys towne.'
¶ To the courte sone he ranne
And Gye hym folowed than.
He hyt þe Lumarde on þe crowne,
That to \textit{pe} grounde he felle downe. \hfill 5924
He rose no more tales to telle:
For so\textit{pe}, hyt was done full well.
Then seyde Oton: \textquoteleft what haste \textit{pou} done?\textquoteright
Thou schalt be hangyd longe or none. \hfill 5928
How durste thou be so hardy
To slee my man before my nye?\textquoteleft
\textit{My lorde,} seyde Gye, \textquoteleft here, how hyt was:
I schall telle yow all the case. \hfill 5932
\textit{Y} went in \textit{pys} courte abowe
Bothe \textit{wythynne} and \textit{wythowte}:
Then y fonde thys traytowre
\textit{Wyth Tyrrye spekyng in \textit{pe} towre.} \hfill 5936
He broght hym mete at hys wylle:
Of wyne and ale he had hys fyle.
Me forthoght that full sore,
And he manaste me to sloo thorere. \hfill 5940
\textit{Y} seyde to hym redelye,
I wolde yow telle, sekerlye;
And \textit{wyth} hys fyste he smote me sore:
Sythen he flewe awey full \textit{zore.} \hfill 5944
\textit{Wyth} wrath \textit{perfore} y smote hym here.
\textit{Y} pray yow \textit{perfore}, my lorde dere,
Forgene now thys trespas:
For yowre prow done hyt was. \hfill 5948
All schall be chastysed in \textit{pys} towne
Thow hym to kepe yowre prysowne.'

\textit{The dewke} sware: \textquoteleft be heuyn kynge,
Was hyt done for no nodur thynge?\textquoteright \hfill 5952
\textquoteleft No,' he seyde, \textquoteleft be goddys thynge.
I had leuyr be hongyd for \textit{pe} trespas
Or some odur dethe dye,
Then he schulde scape so, sykerlye.' \hfill 5956
\textquoteleft \textit{Y} forgewe the then in \textit{pys} place,'
And Gye hym thankyd of hys grace.
\textit{Gye} went into that cyte
And boght mete grete plente. 5960
He broght hyt yn preuelye
And gaue hyt to syr Tyrrye.
Thus dud Gye many a day,
Tyll Tyrryes sorowe was away.
Awey he toke euery dele
All the bondys of yron and stele.
⬁ Into þe chaumbur Gye came on a day,
There he fonde that swete maye.
All in mornynge was hur songe:
Sehe was then in parell stronge.
Gye sayde to that maye bryght:
‘Ye oght to knowe me well ryght. 5972
I hyght Gye of Warwyke,
Thogh y be not now hym lyke.
Y am comyn to thys cyte,
Ther ys no man, þat knoweth me.
Y am comyn to delyuer Tyrrye,
That y loue so specyallye.’
⬁ When sche harde, hyt was Gjowne,
For yoye there sche felle downe. 5980
Gye toke hur vp hastelye
And seyde: ‘þou doyst grete folye.
Thou wylt vs here sone confownde,
Yf þou fare thus any stownde. 5984
And hyt be perceuyyd anyþyng,
We schall haue schame wyfhowt dwellying.’
Than beganne þat maye to crye:
‘Of me þou haue some mercye:
The terme ys on þe prydde day,
That we schall be wedde wyfhowte delaye.
And, or that y be hys wyfe,
I schall me sloo wyth a knyfe.’
🌹 ‘Do wey,’ seyde Gye, ‘hokle þe stylle.
Folowe ay all hys wylle.

1 MS. to. 2 MS. hym.
Of hys errande he schall mys,
Or he come to pe churche, ywys.
I schall hym sloo, or he come pare,
And then schalt pou wyth me fare.'

GUY LIBERATES TYRRY.

5996

He wente to the pryson 3are
And the maydyn lefte he pare.
'Tyrrye,' seyde Gye, 'for peny honowre,
Hye the faste fro thys towre.
Loke, pou stynte not nyght nor day,
But wende faste on thy way,
Tyll pou come to Ames de la Mowntayn
In a castell vp in Spayne.
Grete hym wele, as he ys hende.
Dwelle wyth hym: he ys pyn frende.
Tyll y come or my sonde sende,
Loke, pat pou not fro hym wende.'
'I graunte,' quod Tyrrye than;
Y wyll sone thedur ganne.'
Gye hym kyste in that tyde:
Fro pe towre faste he hyedde.
He broght hym to pe hye waye
And betaght hym there gode day.
Tyrrye went, Gye was lefte pare:
He came to pe towre full 3are.
He sawe the mayde at the laste
And pedurwarde he hyed faste.
He cowmsfortyd hur all, pat he my3t,
Bothe be day and be nyght.

Tyrry found

6024

As Tyrrye wente fro pat cyte,
Longe and brode was pat cuntre:
Hyllys, wodes and feldes wyde
Was in that cuntre on every syde.
So longe Tyrrye trauelde ywys,

6028

To Ames castell comen he ys.
Ames in the halle he fande

1 part of h blotted out before or in MS.
Feyre at the chesses pleyande;

Wyth hym xxxiv of bolde knyghtys,
That servyd hym on dayes and nyghtys.

They were wyth hym dwellande
For warre, pat had be in pat lande.

'Syr,' seyde Tyrrye, 'god the see.

I prey pe, a worde pou speke wyth me
Be youreselfe preuelye,
Nor man bye, but ye and y.'

'Syr,' seyde Ames, 'at þy wylle
I schall speke wyth the stylle.'

Vp rose Ames and þat anone:
To a wyndowe ys he gone.

'Ames,' seyde Tyrrye,

'Be me well greype þow syr Gye.
He sende me hedur at youre wylle
To be here wyth yowre wylle,
Tyll he come or sende sonde.
To speke wyth Oton he wyll fonde.'

'Syr,' seyde Ames, 'sekerlye,
Thys ys a grete curtesye,
That he wolde þe hedur sende.
What ys þy name, dere frende?'

'Syr, y hyght Tyrrye,
Of Gormoyse þe erles sone Awbrye.'

'Syr,' seyde Ames, 'so mote þe, Thou art full welcome vnto me.'

He hym kyste then full swete
And wyth hys eyen dud he grete,¹
That he was so fowle ylyght:
To amende hyt he dud hys myght.
He made hym full wele at ese
And made hys men hym to plese.
He hym cladde in a wede nobull,
In ryche sylke and purpull:

¹ MS. wepe.
OTOUN GOING TO MARRY OZELLE.

The rychest of all pat lande
He made to be bre³t to hys hande.
Feyre he prayed hym þere to lyne,
Tyll he of Gye harde tythyngye.

Otoïn invited many guests.

He was very joyful þat his wedding-day was come.

And of þe kny³t, syr Gyown.

The dewke let make þen a crye,
þat all men to þe brydale be redye,
All, þat were in Lumbardye
And in the cyte of Payuye.

The dewke was a yoyfull man,
That þe terme was comyn thanþ.
Comen he ys to þat maye
Wyth grete game þat ylke day.

‘Lemman dere, dyght þe :
To day schalt þou weddyd bee,’

‘Syr,’ sché seyde, wyth glade ¹ chere,
‘All thy wylle y wyll do here.’
Sché greythed hur nobull well
To plese þe dewke þat day, as y yow telle.

Sché lepe on a palfray,

He rode to church with Ozelle.

To the churche sché toke þe way
Thorow þe cyte and the towne :
Wyth hur wente dewke Oton.
He wened to, hane wedde wyth yoye þat maye :
Sorowe to hym came þat ylke day.

Gay, having armed himself

Gye hym armed tho in stele :
He had armer at hys wylle.

and bestridden his steed,

Gye hys stede sone bestrode
And owte of þe castell faste he rode.
Faste he prekyd þorow þe towne
And ouyrtoke þe dewke Oton.

Overtok him.

‘Dewke, stonde þou stylle thare :

¹ e of glade gone (worm-hole).
² See the note.
OTOUN KILLED BY GUY.

Y comawnde pe, pou store no mare.

Thynkyst *pou* not of that treson,
That thou dydyst to *syr* Gyon
At the pase, there we went?
At pat tyme my men were schente.

Therwyth woldyst *pou* not holde the,
But wythynne these monythys thre
Thou dydyst me a vylanye,
When *pou* betraydest *syr* Tyrrye.

Thys ys Gye, that thou seyst here:
Thou schalt abyde, be seynt Rogre.'

\[leaf 200 a, col. 2\]

He charged him
with his many
treacheries,

When he had folowed hym v myle,
‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘abyde a whyle.
For hys loue, that dyed on tree,
Oon tyme thou juste *wyth* me.’

Gye hym turned *pat* ylke stownde

*Gye* carried away
Ozelle.

Guy carried away
Ozelle.

He was pursued
by many.

But only a cousin
of Otoun's,

named Barrarde,
came near him.

Barrarde called
upon Guy

to joust with him.
Guy complied.
And set the mayde to the ground.

He toke his sperre and his schelde
And he hyt brake: Gye hyt felde.  

Gye had wonder of that dyme
And turned ageyne, or he wolde stynte,
And wyth his sperre he smote Barrarde
On his schelde, that was so harde,
Thorow all his armour a wyde wounded,
That his stede and he felle to grounde.
Barrarde starte vp full tyte
And drewe his swyrde wyth dyspyte
And smote the stedys rugge in two
And bad, he demell schould hym sloo,
When he myste not on fote stonde
For a dyme of a knyghtys honde.
He seyde: 'Gye, adowne lyght
A whyle wyth me for to fyght.
Hyt schall be seyne pys ylke day,
Who schall bere the pryce away.
The grace of god be me reuyd,
But y smyte of thy heuydde.'
'My frende,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy fare:
I wyll fyght wyth the no mare.
We may come, wythowte fayle,
In better tyme to batayle.'

On his hors Gye toke the way
And passyd for that ylke day.
Barrarde wente to his cuntre
Agyne vnto that eyre cyte.
They brost the dewke to chyrche in hye
And beryed hym wele rychelye.
Barrarde to the emperowre ys gone
And tolde, how the dewke was slone.
He gane to hym all his senyorye:
That was the dewche of Payuye.

1 MS. feledde.  
2 MS. hedde.
GUY AND OZELLE ARRIVE AT AMYS'S CASTLE.

He gaue hym armes at hys wylle
And all, pat he wolde aske wyth skylle.
He made hym steward of Almayne:
Therof was many a man fayne.

¶ And Gye went wyth that mayde trewe:
Then beganne hur sorowe to newe.
‘Syr Gye,’ sche seyde, ‘how schall y fare?
Schall y neynr see Tyrrye mare?
Wele y wot, he schall be dedde,
Yf he be lefte wythynnne pat stedde.
I wolde be there ageyn full þare:
Then had y yoye wythhowten care.’
‘Be stylle,’ quod Gye, ‘for, be my hode,
Tyrrye schall eyle nophyng, but gode.
Y spake wyth the geylere,
That he schulde hym kepe on feyre maner.’
¶ So longe had they redyn on feste,
They came to þe cyte at þe laste,
On the mowntayn þere hyt stode,
Theur he sende Tyrrye the gode.
To the cyte when þey came,
To þe halle þe wey þey name.
Ames sawe Gye and knewe hym well.
‘Welcome,’ he seyde, ‘be seynt Mychell.’
When Tyrrye¹ sawe Gye þe wyght
And wyth hym¹ pat mayde so bryght,
To the mayde can Tyrrye goo
And toke hur in hys armes twoo
And kyste hur there anon.
‘Welcome,’ he seyde, ‘my dere lemmow.’
Aftur he went vnto syr Gye
And kyste hym there, sekurlye.
‘Welcome,’ he seyde, ‘for sothe, ye bee
And wyth yow my lemmow free.
That ye be comyn to thys place,

¹ e in Tyrrye and h in hym gone (worm-hole).

WARWICK.
GUY AND HIS FRIENDS REPAIR TO GORMOYSE.

Thankyd be god of hys grace.
I prey to god in trynyte,
Let vs nener ette departyd bee.

Now be þey all comen same:
There was moche yoye and game.
When þat mayde sawe Tyrrye,
That sche houyd specyallye,
For grete yoye amonge þem all
In a swowne sche dud downe falle.
Sche had not wente to hane fonde hym þare.1

ISTow be þey all comen same:
There was moche yoye and game.
When jat mayde sawe Tyrrye,
That sche loulyd specyallye,
For grete yoye amonge þem all
In a swowne sche dud downe falle.
Sche had not wente to hane fonde hym þare.1

One day Guy and
Tyrrye resolved
so repair to
Aubry in order to
find means
of liberating Duke
Loyere's
prisoners.

Tyrrye toke hur vp full ßare
And seyde: 'lady, let be thy fare.
To game and yoye ys turned owre care.
I am,' he seyde, 'bothe hole and fere,2
And so art thou, y see well here.'
There þey dwellyd all longe:
Yoye and game was þem amonge.

Tyrrye toke hur vp full ßare
And seyde: 'lady, let be thy fare.
To game and yoye ys turned owre care.
I am,' he seyde, 'bothe hole and fere,2
And so art thou, y see well here.'
There þey dwellyd all longe:
Yoye and game was þem amonge.

Wyll we to Gormoyse wende
To the erle, that ys so heude?
For vs, y wote, he ys sorye.
Vs to venge he wyll helpe in hye
And brynge my men owt of pryson,
That Loyere holdyth wyth gret treson.

Then bespake Tyrrye anon:
'Full glad wyll he be wyth yow to gone
And ellys y wolde, þat he were colde;
For he ys þerto moste beholde.'
Then bespake Ames the heunde:
'Y wyll also wyth yow wende
To helpe yow in all thynge.

1 After this line the catch-word Tyrrye toke hurc in another hand.
2 MS. clere.
AUBRY IS GLAD OF THEIR COMING.

Fyue hundrur knyghtys wyll y brynge
And of squyers a thousande:
They schall be redy to yowre hande.'
'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'gramercye;
For in yowre helpe y me affye.'
Ames sende aftur hys knyghtys all:
They came sone to hys calle;
So dud hys squyers euerychone:
They fayled hym neuer oon.
When they were redy dyght,
Forpe pey went on stedys lyght.
To Gormoyse they toke the way:
Loreyn pey stroyed that same day.
As pey went in pat londc,
They slewe all, that they fonde.
They came to Gormoyse in hye:
Joyfull was the erle Awbrye.
He was so yoyfull a man,
That he swownyd, when pey came.
He wende full sekurlye
Neuer to haue sene Tyrrye nor Gye.
All the men of that cyte
Of per comyng made game and glee.
Tyrrye tolde hys fadur than,
How Gye was a nobull man;
And toke hym fro the pryson;
And wyth hys hande slewe dewke Oton.
'Amonge pem all he forgate noght,
But my lady awey he broght.
Now he pynky bothe day and nyght
Dewke Loyere for to stroye wyth myght.
He wyll not wyth grete yre
To be vengyd on that syre.'
But, when pe dewke harde tythande,
Dat Gye was comyn to hys lande,

1 but seems to be omitted after not.
Duke Loyere wants to be reconciled to Tyrry.

He told it to Harrowde,

Whom he asked to be his messenger to Aubry,

Guy, and Tyrry, to whom he wanted to be reconciled.

Leaf 201 b, col. 1

The prisoners were all delivered

Wyth hym Ozelde, hys doghtur dere:
He was gladde and made gode chere.

He calle Harrowde to hym in lye
And tolde hym, how pat Tyrrye and Gye
Were comyn and grete power brought
And in hys londe grete harme had wro3t
And Ames de la Mowntayne
And wyth hym all the men of Spayne.
When he harde tythyngs of Gye,
That he was comyn wyth Tyrrye,
He was neuer so gladde nor blytlie:
He thankyd god fele sythe.

'Harrode,' sayde the dewke Loyere,
'Y wyll, pou be my messengere.
To erle Awbrye pou schalt gone,
To Gye and Tyrrye and pat anon)
And prey them pur charyte
For to be at oon wyth mee;
And y wyll amende at per wylle
And all per harmes to fulfylle
And all, pat euer pat pey wyll craue;
And my doghtur Tyrrye schall haue
And, whyll y leue, halfe my londe
And, when y am dedde, all in hys honde.
I prey the, bere wytnesse
Of all pese wordys more and lesse.'
'Syr,' sayde Harrowde, 'wyth gode chere
Wyll y be yowre messengere.
I wyll do myn entente
Faste abowte that cordement.'

The dewke let the constabull calle
And bad hym brynge owt pe prisoners all
And deluyrde them full yare
And all per harnes lesse and mare:
Ther was none, pat fayled onypynge
The mowntance of a farthynghe.
He seyde, þey schulde all wyth Harrawde fare  
To speke abowte the cordement þere.  

† Now ys Harrawde redy dyght  
And wyth hym many a doghty knyȝt:  
They were felows euerychone,  
To Gormoyse they be gone.  

Gye and Ames went þat day  
Wyth Tyrrye into þe feld to play.  
They lokeyd besyde þem on þe playne:  
Ther came knyghtys þem agayne.  
They were agaste of treson.  
Ames seyde to syr Gyou):  
‘Yonder comeþ a meyne,  
But y wot not, what þey bee.  
Hedur, me þynkyp, þey take þe way.  
I schall wytt, yf that y may,  
Whedur hyt be in pce or in werre.’  
In þys honde he toke a spere :  
Forthe he rode prekande,  
Tyll he came nerehande.  

He stode and avysyd þem euerychone :  
Harrowde hym knewe and þat anon.  
‘Ames,’ he seyde, ‘where ys Gye  
And whedur wyndyst þou þus hastelye?’  
‘Harrowde,’ quod Ames, ‘y schall þe saye,  
Thou schalt see Gye thys ylke day.  
I lefte hym on the 3ondur hylle  
And hys meyne hove stytle.’  
Then seyde Harrawde: ‘go we thedur,  
Euerychone and all togedur.’  

† There they redyn a gode pase,  
All the knyghtys, þat þere wase.  
Gye houyd there stytle,  
Tyll þey were vpon the hylle.  

‘Lorde,’ seyde Gye, ‘god almyght,  

† s blotted out before þus in MS.
HARRAWDE DELIVERS HIS MESSAGE.

183

They all kissed one another, HARRAWDE delivered his message.

3ondur y see Harrawde the wyght
And my felows euerychone:
Y wene, they be ownt of pryson\w tane.'
When Gye and Tyrrye\(^1\) and Harrawde were mett,
They kyste eyder oder\(^1\) wythowten lett.
'Syrs,' quod Harrowde, ‘y prey yow here,
A\(^2\) gode councell \(\textit{pat} yow lere.\)
For y am comen, as a messengere,
From the dewke syr Loyere.
Y oght to loun hym, as my brodur:
He honowred me afofe all odur.
Y sey yow for yowre prowre:
He wyll be at one wyth yow.
He wyll geue Tyrrye hys doghtur dere
(And be at oon\w on all manere)
And all hys londe more and lesse
And therto fynde sekernesse.
\(\textit{Wyth yss message} he hath me sente\)
To yow, syr Gye, and Tyrrye presente.
He wyll amende in all thynge,
That he hap trespaste, at yowre askynge.
I wyll, \(\textit{pe} \) parell be on me leyde,
That he wyll do, as y haue\(^3\) seyde.'

[leaf 202 a, col. 1]

There pey preyed all syr Gye
And wyth hym erle Tyrrye,
That pey schukle graunt for to bee
Wyth hym in loun and charyte.
To the cyte wente syr Gye
And tolde hyt to erle Awbrye,
How \(\textit{pat} \) Harrowde was comen home
And wyth hym hys felows euerychone
And how he wolde acordyd bee
And gene to Tyrrye hys doghtur free

1 The second \(r\) of \(\textit{Tyrrye}\) and \(o\) of \(oder\) gone (worm-hole).
2 MS. \(\textit{And}\).
3 \(y haue\) is written by the same hand over \(he hath\) struck out.
And make amendys for hys trespas

‘And put hym in owre owne grace.’

‘Therto my gode wyle y graunt here,’
And so dud all, þat þere were.

† On þe morowe þey made þem all ȝare
Vnto Loren for to fare,
The erle Awbrye and syr Gye,
Ames, Harrowde and Tyrrye,
And wente vnto þe dewke Loreyne,¹
And he of þem was² full fayne.

They were made at oon thore
And louyd togedur for euermore.
There was forguyen euery trespas
And grete yoye in that cyte was,
That Tyrrye was on feyre manere
Acordyd wyth the dewke Loyere.
The dewke hys doghtur gaue to Tyrrye
And of hys londe the more partye
Before all hys baronage,
That were of dyuers langage.
The brydale was ordeygned than:
A feyrer sawe neuyr no man
Of kynge nor of emperowre.
Hyt was made wyth grete honowre.

‡ At the partynge of the feste,
That was made so honeste,
They toke þer leue, knyghtys free:
Home þey wente to þer cuntre.
The erle Ames hys leue hath tane
And to hys castell he ys gane.
There was Gye a whyle stylle
And had ynogh of hys wylle;
Tyll he wente vpon a day
Wyth howndys hym for to play,
And also the dewke Loyere

¹ MS. loijcren).
² a of was gone (worm-hole).
Wente for to chace the dere:
Wyth hym he toke pe erle Tyrrye
And many a nodur knyght\(^1\) hardy.

\(\text{If}\) They enturde into a wylde foreste
And pere pey fonde a bore wylde and prestes.
All pe howndys, they had, than
After the bore faste they ranne.
The bore awey faste ys gone
And many of pe howndys he hap alone:
Moo, p\(\text{en}\) twenty, in a stownde
Had he broght vnto the grownde.
He passyd the foreste hastelye:
They folowed hym wyth grete crye.
Faste he passyd thorow pe londe:
Ther durste no hownde come nerehonde.
The knyghtys prekyd aftur faste,
Tyll \(\text{per horsys myght not laste.}\)
The howndys, that folowed \(\text{pat day,}\)
Were slayne all be the way:
Thes odur were werye,
They went home, \(\text{pey}^2\) my\(\text{yt}\) not drye,
All, but thre, that were wyght,
That folowed alwey \(\text{wyth}\) ther myght,
Tyll they come to Bretayne.
Ther folowed \(\text{pem nodur kny\(\text{yt}\) nor swayne:}\)
Of them all was no huntere,
That wyste, where the borre were,
But syr Gye hymselfe alone,
That folowed faste \(\text{wyth}\) grete randone
On hys stede faste prekyynge
And wyth hys horne faste blowynge.

\(\text{If}\) Gye chasyd the borre so faste,
He came to Bretayne at the laste.
Be then was pe boore full hote:

\(^1\) \text{ky blotted out before knyght in MS.}\n\(^2\) Another \text{went} blotted out after \text{pey} in MS.
GUY KILLS THE BOAR.

He fonde a dyke and yn he smote. [6448]
There he wandyrde faste abowte
And wrotyd faste wyth hys snowte.
Gye sawe the bore well
And, what he dud, every delle.1
Downe he lyght of hys stede
And to the bore soud he yede.
He toke hys swyrde in hys hande:
The boore hym sye and came rennande.
Gye on pe rykke smote hym soo,
That hys body felle in twoo.
The boore felle downe at pe laste,
And Gye wyth hys horne blewe a blaste.
He wende to haue had some felowe,
But ther was none, pat dud hym knowe.
He was in a farre cuntre
All aloone fro hys meyne,
And, as he openyd there the boore,
Euyr he blewe more and more.

¶ Then bespake erle Florentyne:
‘What may thys be, for seynt Martyne,
That y here blowe in my foreste?
Takyn they haue some wylde beste.’
Forthe he clepyd there a knyght,
Hys owne sone, that was wyght.
‘My dere sone,’ he seyde, ‘hye the,
That he were broght anonw to me.
Whedur he be knyght or huntere,
Brynge hym hedur on all manere.’
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘hyt schall be done.’
He lepe on a stede sone.
To the foreste he came in hye
And sone he mett wyth syr Gye.
He bare a staffe and that a longe:
Therwyth he pought to do Gye wronge.

1 d erased before delle in MS. 2 MS. on.
'Harlot,' he seyde, 'what art thou,
That comen art into þys foreste nowe
Wythowte þe leue of my fader?'
In wyckyd tyme come thou here.
How durste þou take thys wylde beste
Wythowte leue in thys foreste?

and demanded his
horn.
Gene me thy horne; be thy swyre,
I schall þe brynge vnto my syre.'

After a short
altercation,
¶ 'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'wyth gode chere,
Yf ye hyt aske in feyre manere.'
'Nay, traytour, y the say,
Thou schalt not passe fro me away.'

he struck Guy
with a staff;
Wyth hys staffe Gye he smote,
That he felyd hyt full hote.

for which offence
Gye seyde: 'þou doyst vncurteslye
For to smyte me wrongesuslye.'

Guy killed him
with a blow of his
horn.
Wyth hys horne Gye brake þan
Hys hedde vnto þe brayne panne.
'Felow, take þou that therfore.
Loke, þou smyte no knyght no more.'

Riding away,
¶ Forthe he rode a gode spede,
When he was lopyn on hys stede.
He went the foreste nye abowte,
Or he myght wende owte.

He lokyd abowte hym on euery hande,
But he knewe noþyng of þat lande:
He sawe a towne be the way.
He fasted all that same day.
He had not redyn, but a whyle,
Vnethe þe mowntawnce of a myle:
He sawe a castell nerehande
Feyre on an hylle stande.

He hyed hym thedur faste rydande:

1 MS. ffadur.
2 he b blotted out before Gye in MS.
He mett *wyth* oon of that lande.

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘for thy lewte,
Who owyth the 3ondur cyte?’

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y schall the say.
A better lorde leuyth not to day:
Men calle hym Florentyne.
A better man dranke neuer wyue.’

* Gye rode to the castell gate:
Porter fonde he none therate.

He went to the halle 3are
And of hys stede he lyght thare.
In he wente a gode pase:
He fonde syttynge at the deyse
An olde man, an hore knyght.

He semyd of moche myght.
To hym came syr Gye
And gret hym full curteslye.
‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘herkynw to me :
I am a kny3t of straunge cuntre.

Yf hyt yowre wylle bee,
I aske mete for charyte
But for oon meel of thys day,
And sythen y wyll wende away.’

He seyde : ‘syr, so mote y tho,
Thou art welcome vnto me.’

* He bad hys men *and* pat in haste
Go feche forthe of the beste.

Gye cte faste on feyre manere
Of hys mete *wyth* gode chere.
He harde bellys faste rynge
In the cyte *wythhowte* cessyng.

All, *pat* perse were, aferde was,
For they harde soche noyse.

‘Lady,’ pey seyde, ‘henyn quene,
What may all thys sorowe bemeene?’

* Wyth* *pat* they come wyth sory chere
the young dead knight was brought in on a bier.

And brought his son layde on a beere
And leyde hym there in the halle.

‘Lorde,’ seyde he, ‘pat boughht vs all,
Ys thys,’ he seyde, ‘my dere sone,
That on beere ys thus come?’

He drewe hys cloys and hys hare:

He poght, hys herte myȝt breke for care.

‘Alas,’ he seyde, ‘my dere chylde,
Who hath pe sole in the felde?

God, that dyed on a tree,
Leve, he stode here be me:

Y wolde not leene for all pys lande,
But y wolde slee hym wyth myn hande.’

¶ Then bespake a squyere:

‘He syttyth now before yow here.

I knowe hym ryght wele:

Y sawe that dede euery dele.’

¶ When pe erle harde, pat hyt so was,
He starte hym vp fro the dayse.

A spere he toke in hys hande
And came to Gye rennande
And seyde: ‘traytour, pou schalt dye here,
For pou slewe my sone dere.’

Vp he drewe then hys arme:
He poght to do Gye grete harme.

Wyth grete wrath he can mynte,
But he fayled of hys dynte.

Halfe a fote the spere stode
And into the borde wode.

’T Syr,’ quod Gye, ‘for goddyse mercy,
Smyte not, but ye wott, why.
If y haue slayne thy dere sone,
Me defendawnt hyt was done.’

¶ Tho they lept Gye abowte,
Knyghtys, pat were styll a and stowte.

Getting his shield

Gye wanne hys schelde, þere hyt stode,
GUY URGES THAT HE MUST NOT BE SLAIN IN THE HALL. 189

And in hys hande an axe gode.
He turnelde hys rykke to a walle
And hym defendyd for them all.
Tho starte forthe the steward:
Hyt semyd, he was no cowarde.
Wyth a swyrde he smote Gye
On the schelde hardelye.

Wyth hys axe Gye to hym mynte:
He fayled not of hys dynte.
He claue hys hedde euyn in twaye:
Hys lyfe he loste that ylke day.
Gye wyth hys owne hande
Defendyd hym wyth hys axe bytande.
There he slewe knyghtys thre,
The strengyst of all pat cuntre.

† 'Erle Florentyne,' seyde Gye,
'For the holy crosse loue, mercye!
Thou art holdyn a doghty knyght,
A wyse man of were and fyght:
Yf thou slee me in thys halle,
All men wyll the traytour calle.

Hyt were a grete schame vnto the,
When pou harbarowste me for charyte.
Were hyt wyth ryght or wyth wronge,
Hyt wolde pe turne to schame stronge
And moost of all in that case,
When y at the mete was.

Therfore do wythowte blame,
That hyt turne not to no schame.

Do me now to haue my stede
And owte of the zate me lede.
Hyt were to the more honowre,
Then y were slayne in thy towre.'

† The erle wythdrewen hym than.
He was a sory man,

\[ a \] over the line in MS.
When he syc 1 þere lye dedde.
What he myȝt do, he cowde no redde.
‘Alas,’ he seye, ‘and wele away!'
My sone ys dedde thys ylke day 6628
Now schall y enyr mare
Leue in sorowe and in care.'
He swownyd soone vpon the beere.
Ther was no man in þat place þere, 6632
But of hym they had pyte.
He comawndyd nys 2 meyne,
That none were so hardye
To assayle hym before hys yee. 6636

[leaf 293 b, col. 2]

Guy now, sitting on his horse,
the Earl complid,
And also all hys odur wede,
When he were owt of the towre,
He schulde be slayne wyth dyshonowre. 6640

Gye toke hys gode stede
And on hym lepe, as he had nede.
Hys swyrde he forȝate noght,
And hys spere was to hym broght. 6644
Owte of the castell ys he gane:
The way he hath soone tane.
Be þat the erle was armed wele
Bothe in yron and in stele. 6648
Faste he sewyd there syr Gye
Wyth hys grete companye.
Gye turned the hed of hys stede
And farde, as þat he wolde wede. 6652

slew many of his pursuers.
He mett a knyght and smote hym sore,
That he rose neuyr more.
A nother there soone he smote.

Even the Earl
The erle came then full hote 6656
(To slee Gye he dud fonde)
Wyth a spere in hys honde.

1 þem is very probably miswritten for hym or for hys sone.
2 pyte blotted out after hys in MS.
Gye hym turned and dud hym see:
To fyght wyth hym wolde he not flee. 6660
They faghght togedur þere full faste,
Whyll þere speres myght laste.
The erle smote tho syr Gye
Thorow the schelde hardelye. 6664
Gye smote at hym a nodur dynte:
Hys hors and hym downe he tynte.
Gill Gye had pyte of that knyght,
When he sawe, he had be of myght,¹
And þat he had hys sone slone.
Twenty wyntur hyt was gone,
Sythen he myght armes bere,
Or helpe hymselfe in any were. 6672
Gye seyde: 'haue here thy stede
And hye þe whome a gode spede.
Hyt were bettur for þe to be in churche
And holy werkys for to wyrche, 6676 [leaf 294 a, col. 1]
Then to welde schelde or spere
Or any² odur armes to bere.
I haue 3ylld the thy mede:
For þy mete haue here thy stede. 6680 restored it to him.
I wolde haue askyd þe none, yf y had wyste,
Thogh y schulde haue dyed for hungur and þyrste.³
I schall neyr more come to the
To aske mete for charyte. 6684
God let me euyr wele fare,
At þy courte or y come mare.' 4
Also so god geue yow reste,
Fylle the cuppe of the beste. 6688
Now wendy þ Gye faste away:
He wolde not 3elde hym þat day.
þer came knyþys on euery syde
Yonge and of moche pryde. 6692

¹ m in myght uncertain in MS. : on might be read as well.
² armes blotted out after any.
³ MS. þyrste.
Wyth the helpe of þat cuntre
They chasyd Gye grete plente.

Gye rode faste thorow þat londe:
A grete foreste there he fonde.

Gay defended himself so well,

Ofte he turned them hys\(^1\) vysage
And dud them grete owtrage.

and his horse was so quick,
that he escaped.

Many a wownde awey þey bery eke in fere.

Guy defended himself so well,

† Gye on hys stede rode faste:
Fro þem all soon he paste.

His pursuers turned back
to bury the
Earl's son.

The eyle and hys companye,
Agyeyle they went hastelye.

Guy continued riding
till the next
morning,
when he saw he
was in Lorraine.

All that day Gye dud ryde
(He wold not there abyde),

His fellows were
glad to see him
[leaf 204 a, col. 2]
again.

Tyll hyt were on a nodur morne:
He sawe Loreyn hym beforne.

After some time
Guy resolved to
return to England.

He toke leue of Loyere

All hys men þere he fonde,
That were for hym sore dredeande.
All they made gode chere,
When þey sawe Gye hole and fere.

He tole þem all, or he wolde blyynne,
What parell that he was ynn.
Then they þankyd seynt Mychell,
That he was deluyrd so well.

† When he had a stownde dwellyd þare,
Into Ynglonde wolde he fare.

He toke lene of dewke Loyere
And he hym bad on feyre manere
Of hys tresure for to take
And þat he schulde hyt not forsake.
Of the tresure kepte he noght:

\(^1\) hys omitted in MS.
On odur thynge was hys þoght.
To Tyrrye went Gyowyn
And schewyd hym hys resoun.
‘Tyrrye,’ he seyde, ‘y wyl fare:
Into Ynglonde y wyll þare
For to see there my kynne
To wyt, what state þat þey be ynne.
I wot not, whethur þey be leueande,
And therfore y wyll passe þe sande.
Thys vii yere y sawe not thame:¹
For sothe, therfore y am to blame.
Yf anythynge come to the,
What some euyr that hyt bee,
Sende to me for anythynge,
And y wyll come wyþhowte lettyngę.
Now þon haste þy wyfe hende
And all þy warre broght to an ende:
Thyn enmyse, they bealone,
For soþe, that y knowe, euerychone.
In pese now ys all thy londe:
Ther dar no man brynge þe warre on honde.
Thou art holdyn of pryce,²
Therfore the wyll drede thyn enmyse.
I schall the sende my messengere:
Thou do also, my brodur dere.
Myselfe wyll come to þe some day,
And þat schall be, when þat y may.’
¶ ‘Syr,’ seyde Tyrrye, ‘gramercye!
I am sorowfull, sekerlye.
Thou haste me sauyd fro þe dedde
In mony a dyuers stedde.
Yf þon wylte now wende fro me
Y not, whethur euþer y schall þe see.

¹ MS. them.
² y in pryce altered from some other letter in MS.
WARWICK.
Then schall myn enmyse\(^1\) wyt full wele,
How we be departyd everly dele:
The Almayns wyll geue me were,
Wyth pe myght pey me wyll dere.
They be of Otuns kynne,
And many a lande ys therynne.
I schall be in grete stryfe
Euyr, whyll that y haue lyfe.
Yf we be togedur here,
Me par not drede on no manere.
Yf ye wyll dwelle wyth me,
Castels and cytees y schall geue pe
(The beste, that in thys londe be,
Schall be thyn, so mote y the)
And dwelle wyth pe dewke Loyere:
All Gormoyse ye schall haue here.
I sey wyth my herte, god hyt wote,
Schall y neuyr chalenge fote
Of all Gormoyse eche a thynge,
Not so moche, as a farthyng.

\(\text{Tyrrye, bydde me no more:}\)
\(\text{Hyt ys no saluyng for my sore.}\)
\(\text{I desyre that londe fayne}\)

\(\text{And for þy loue y wolde turne agayne.}\)
\(\text{Yf hyt ne were for my leman dere,}\)
\(\text{I wolde not go fro the here.}\)
\(\text{Togedur we wolde be, wythowte othynge,}\)
\(\text{Tyll we came to endynge.}\)
\(\text{Dere brodur, let be thy care:}\)
\(\text{Y wyll come ageyne full 3are.}\)

\(\text{And wepte wyth ther eyen sore.}\)

\(\text{Ther was none, when Gye dud goo,}\)
\(\text{But he wepte wyth hys eyen twoo.}\)

\(\text{Perhaps we ought to read When myn enmyse schall.}\)
And he wente forthe on hys way.
The erle lefte stylle thare:
For Gye he made moche care.
Gye, forthe euyr dud he ryde,
Tyll he came to the see syde.
A schyppe he fonde and gode fare:
Into Ynglonde he came 3are.
To Wynchestur he came ryght:
The kynge was pere wyth myght.
When he came to that cyte,
Agenste hym came pe kynge free.
All the men of that cuntre
Preysed Gye for hys bewte.
The kynge hym nome abowte pe halse
And wyth yoye he kyste hym alse.
All men of hym had ferlye,
That he had passed so, syr Gye.

At the chesses vpon a day
Gye wyth the kynge dud play.
Then came knyghtys prekande:
'Syr,' they seyde, 'here tythande.
A beste ys comen to the lande:
Ther may no man agenste hym stande.
He ys comyn fro Yrelande:
Moche care he bryngyp on hande.
He sleyth bothe beste and man
And all, that euer he fynde can.
He ys a dredefull beste:
Hys hedde ys black and wyth pe meste;
Hys wombe ys black, hys rygg donne,
Hys body ys gretter pen a tonne.
Wyngys he hath on euery syde:
Hys body ys longe and vnryde
(Of no wepon he þar not dowte),

\footnote{1 h blotted out before yoye in MS.}
GUY UNDERTAKES TO KILL A DRAGON.

Hys breste brode and black skynne.

At hys mowthe a stede myght yonne. 6832

Powes he hath, as a lyon.

He ys an vgle, fowle dragon.

Hys tayle ys grete and pertolonge.

Ther ys no kny3t halfe so stronge, 6836

Were he armed neuer so wele,

But, and pe dragon byt hym wele

Wyth hys tayle a lytull mynte,

But he schulde dye of that dynte.' 6840

If When the kynge harde well,

What they seyde, euery dell,

He was in sorowe stronge:

He myght not speke aftur longe.

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy thought:

Of yat beste drede the nought.

I schall wende to that cuntre

And, yt that beste fowndyn bee,

I schall hym sloo wyth force and myght

And come ageyne anon ryght.'

When the kynge harde well,

What they seyde, euery dell,

He was in sorowe stronge:

He myght not speke aftur longe.

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy thought:

Of yat beste drede the nought.

I schall wende to that cuntre

And, yt that beste fowndyn bee,

I schall hym sloo wyth force and myght

And come ageyne anon ryght.'

When the kynge harde well,

What they seyde, euery dell,

He was in sorowe stronge:

He myght not speke aftur longe.

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy thought:

Of yat beste drede the nought.

I schall wende to that cuntre

And, yt that beste fowndyn bee,

I schall hym sloo wyth force and myght

And come ageyne anon ryght.'

When the kynge harde well,

What they seyde, euery dell,

He was in sorowe stronge:

He myght not speke aftur longe.

'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'let be thy thought:

Of yat beste drede the nought.

I schall wende to that cuntre

And, yt that beste fowndyn bee,

I schall hym sloo wyth force and myght

And come ageyne anon ryght.'
When he þeður came, syr Gye, 6868
There he sawe the beste lye,
Gye hym armed soone thenw: 6872
Sythen he comawndyd al hys men,
That none were so hardye
To come to hym, þogh he schulde dye.
Vndur an hylle went syr Gye,
There as, he sawe, þe beste dud lye.
Gye sate vpon hys stede:
Of hym he had grete drede.
He smote hym wyþh his sperre faste:
Hyt brake in pecys at the laste.
So thyck was hys skynne,
That he myȝt not thoroAv wynne.

When the beste faled the dynte,
Wyth hys hedde he dud mynte.
To Gye he starte, as he wolde wede,
And smote hym downe and hys stede.
There was Gye stonyed sore:
Soche a dynte had he ûeuer ore.
Gye starte vp and lay not lunge.
‘God,’ he seyde, ‘of myght so stronge,’ 6888
That madyst bothe day and nyght
And dyed on tre for synfull wyght
And sauyd Sampson fro the lyon,
Kepe me to day fro thys dragon.’

Hys swyrde anow he drewe owte:
To þat beste he starte full stowte.
Before the hedde dud he Smyte,
But the swyrde wolde not byte.
So grete wondur had Gye þere,
That no wepon myȝt hym dere.
He was now in batell stronge:
The dragon faghed aegenste hym lunge.
As Gye assayled hym in the place,
Hym befelle auenturs case:

Having arrived at the place where the Dragon was,
Guy armed himself,
[leaf 265 a, col. 2]
and forbidding his men to assist him,
assailed the beast.

He and his horse were thrown down.

His sword did not hurt the Dragon.
Guy’s hauberk was damaged.

So nye Gye the beste wente,
That *wyth* hys pawes he hym rente 6904
The pecys of hys hauberke,
That was bope stalwourthe and starke.
In aventure was Gye thanw:

Another time he fell upon the ground.

To a tre faste he ranne 6908
To loke, yf he myght better fare,
And for to defende hym thare.
He on Gye faste dud bete
And *wyth* hys tayle faste he dud hym smete
Thorow ðe schelde in a stownde,
That Gye felle flat to ðe grownde.
Than there a lytull whyle
Gye was in grete paryle:
He foldyd hys tayle hym abowte,
That he myght not on no syde owte.
Hys tayle was grett and vnryde:
He brake two rybbes in Gyes syde.
Gye sayde: ‘y am but dedde,
But god sende me ðe bettur redde.’
He smote hym þere *wyth* all hys myght
Abone þe tayle in two full ryght.
Wyth grete angwysche and *wyth* woo
At þat tyme he wanne hym fro.
Then perseyuyd Gye full wele,
That no wepon) made of stele 6928
Fro the tayle to the heuydde
Myght hym not þe lyfe haue reuydde.
The beste hym felyd smetyn) sore:
He caste a crye and a rore.
Thorow þat cuntre was the dynne:
All myght here, þat was þerynne.
Ther was no man, þat herde þat crye,
But that they wente for to dye.
3yt ranne Gye abowte the tre:

1 MS. *hedde*.
He þoght, þro hym he wolde not fle.¹
Hys hawberke þere was all torente:
Hys body was full nere schente.

At the laste Gye hym betoght,
To Smyte before hyt helpyþ noght.
As the dragon was turnandæ,

Gye had hys swyrde in hys hande:
Euyn betwene the wyngys twoo
He smote the body almoste a too.
He felle downe and myght no more,
But beganne to crye and rore.

Gye wyþdrewæ hym sone thanþ²:
For grete styrike he was nye slane.³
He restyd hym vpon the playne:
Of hys dede he was full fayne.

When Gye had rested hym well,
He rose and mett hym euery delle:
Syxty fote was he longe.
Therof men had wondur stronge:
All, that came be the way,
Wondurd on hym, þere he lay.
The hedde of soone he schare.

To the kynge a man hyt bare:
To þorke the hed dud he brynge
And presentyd hyt to the kynge,
And wyþ a grete precessyowne
They broght Gye to the towne.

At þorke the hed was hangyd þanþ:
Theron lokyd many a manþ.

He toke leue at þe kynge thare
And to Walityngforde dud he fare.
The kynge was then full blythe
And thankyd god fele sythe.

Longe was paste, wyþhowte lesynge,

¹ þe written twice, but the first time blotted out.  
² MS. then'.  
³ MS. slayne.
His father had died long ago. 
He was his only heir. 
He bestowed his inheritance upon Harrawde, 
and rewarded all his other companions.

Coming to Warwick, he was received very honourably.

He told Felice all his adventures, 
and that he had declined the hands of several daughters of Kings and Emperors 
out of love to her.

She answered that she also had been desired in marriage by Kings and Dukes, 
but Guy had taken her heart with him.

Guy felt very happy.

Or he of hym harde more tythynges.
Hys fadur was dedde longe gone:
Odur heyre, bote he, was ther none.  
† Gye callyd Harrowde on a day, 
That hym had seruyd aye:
He gaue hym pe castell and pe towre
And all hys londe wyth honowre.
To euery knyght ferre and nere, 
Lesse and more, that wyth hym were,
That had bene wyth hym in fyght,
He gaue peem warysow full ryght.
† To Warwyk dud he wende
And þere he fonde þe erle so hende,
That honowred hym wyth hys myght:
So dud all the londe, baron and knyght. 
The erle dud hym honowre aye
And wolde not leue hym an owre of a day:
They went to þe wode and to þe ryvere 
To solace them on all manere.

† He tolde Felyce all hys wylle and lyfe, 
And, how he was bedyn ryche wyfe,
Kvangys doghtur and emperowre, 
And wyth hur moche honowre:
'Of them all wolde y noght, 
For on yow was all my thoght.' 
† 'Syr,' sche seyde, 'gramereye!
I yow sey, sekerlye:
For me þer hath be preyere
Of kynge and dewke ferre and nere.
Of them all wolde y nane:
Ye had my loue wyth yowre tane.
I am yowrys (hyt ys skylle)
To do wyth me at yowre wylle.' 
† Gye hur kyste wyth yoye than:
He was neuer so gladde a man.

1 heyre and he omitted in MS.
He toke hys leue and home wente:
Of myrthe and yoye was hys entente.
He made yoye nyght and day,
When he was seker of pat maye.

FELICE REFUSES TO MARRY ANY ONE BUT GUY.

One day the Earl mentioned to his daughter that it was time for her to marry.

7008

7012

7016

7020

7024

7028

7032

7036

7040

He hath forsakyn, be thyss day,
The loue of many a ryche maye,
Dewkys doghtur and emperowre,

1 MS. maytene.
He was determined soon to know Guy's mind.

Being once with Guy out hunting,

he asked him when he would marry.

Guy replied he knew only one lady that he wished for his wife.

The Earl then offered him the hand of Felice.

Guy protested that he preferred her bare body,

to the Emperor's daughter with all his land and honour.

The Earl was overjoyed.

That were and are of grete valowre.

Y schall wytt, so mote y the,

Of hym wythynne pese dayes thre,

What he wyll sey, trewlye,

Whyll pou louest hym so spe❝yallye.'

Gye and he wente on a day

To the wode them to play:

Venyson they had plente.

The erle caldyd Gye in prenyte:
‘ Gye,’ he seyde, ‘ y prey the here,

Telle me þy wylle on all manere.

What tyme wyll yow weddyd bee?

I prey yow, leyne hyt not fro me,’

‘ Syr,’ quod Gye, ‘ y schall the say,

In all the worlde ys no maye,

But oon, that euer y wyll wedde,

And brynge hur vnto my bedde.’

‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘ loke in a throwe:

I haue a doghtur, þat ye well knowe.

I haue no heyre, but hur, lyecande:

Sche wyll be yowrys, y vndiirstande.

And geue hur the wyth herte free.

And lorde of my londe schalt þou bee.’

To þe erle tho spake Gye

And seyde: ‘ syr, for yowre profur gramercye!

I had leuyr the body all bare

Of yowre doghtur wythowten mare,

Then þe doghtur of þe emperowre

Wyth all hys londe and hys honowre.’

The erle anone kyssed Gye

And thankyd hym full curteslye:
‘ Now wote y,’ quod he, ‘ full well,

That ye loue me, be seynt Mychell,

That ye wyll my doghtur take

And soche ladyes for to forsake.

From hens be the seynt day
Schall be the weddynge, yf y may:
At Warwyk, myn owne cyte,
There schall that ryché brydale bee.
All the lordys of thy cuntre,
At that brydale schall they be.'
'Syr,' quod Gye, 'y wyll fulfylle
Yowre ordynaunce at yowre wylle.'

If Syr Gye tolde Harrowde euery dele,
How the erlé seyde, full wele.
'Harrowde, now may y synge,
That y haue wonne that swetyngne,
That y traneelde fore day and nyght,
And euer hur louyd wyth all my myght.'

If now ys the weddynge ordeyned soone:
There the brydale schulde be done,
There came grete meyne,
Lordys of many a cuntre,
Dewkys, erlys and baronage,
Knyghtys, squyers of grete lynage.
The mayde was rychelye dyght
And weddyd to Gye, þat nobull knyght.
A ryché brydale was ordeyned thare:
Hyt stode fowrtene nyghtys and mare.
There were mynstrels on all manere:
Moche yoye there men myght here.
Ther was none so lyttull a grome,
But þey had gyftys of syr Gyowne.
He gauè them robes many oon:
Golde nor syluyr he wantyd none.

¶ They partyd on the fyftenyth day:
Everý man wente hys owne waye.
Gye had of yoye hys fylle,
When he had of Felyce hys wylle.
Fyfty dayes and no mare
Lasted hur1 yoye wythowten care.

1 þer?
Felice conceived a male child.

One evening Guy ascended a tower, and enjoyed the prospect.

There he was struck with the thought that he had been so highly honoured by God,

and had done nothing at all for Him.

He determined in future

 ¶ Hyt felle on the furste nyght,
 When Gye laye wyth that wyght,
 He gate of hur a man chylde,
 That afterwarde was full mylde.
 ¶ For the gode, that god made,
 Fylle the cuppe and make vs glade.

Hyt was in a somers tyde,
 That Gye had moche pryde:
 He came fro huntynge on a day
 Wyth grete solace and mekyll play.
 Pey toke plente of venesow
 And broght hyt vnto the towne.

At euyn he wente into a towre
 Wyth moche yoye and honowre.
 He behelde there the ayre
 And the lande, pat was so fayre.
 The wedur was clere and sternes bry3t.

Gye beganne to thynke ryght,
 How god, that sate in trynyte,
 Had made hym a man of grete poste,
 And how he was preysed in euery lande
 Thorow dedys of hys hande,
 And how he had many slane
 And castels and towres many tane
 And how in many londys longe
 He had bene in parell stronge
 And all for pe loun of pat maye,
 That he1 trauelde fore nyght and day,
 And not for god, hys creatowre,
 That had done hym that honowre.
 ¶ He thoght þere wyth all hys my3t
 To serue hym bothe day and nyght.
 Gye beganne to syke sore.
 In hys herte he thoght more:
 He thoght for to chaunge hys lyfe

1 MS. y.
GUY RESOLVES TO LIVE IN Penance.

And to leue thys worldys stryfe 7148
And ordeynge hym in all wyse
To leue and dye in goddys seruyse.

Wyth that Felyce thedur soght:
Sche fonde hur londe in a thohte.
‘Syr,’ sche seyde, ‘what thinke ye?
Telle me, for seynt Charyte.’

‘Lemman,’ he seyde, ‘stande stytle,
And y schall telle pe all my wylle.
Sythe pe tyme, pat y pe knewe,
For pe my sorowe was euyr newe.
I wene, ther was neyvr knyght,
That had so moche sorowe in fyght
For none, as y haue had for the.
Farre in many a dyuers cunte
I haue many a man slane,
Abbeys brente and cytees tane:
All pat euyr y haue wroght,
Syth furste pat y on pe thohte,
And all y dud, my leman free,
For to wynne the lune of thee.

And all, pat euer y wanne þere,
I haue geuyn hyt knyzt and squyere.
Had y bene warre and wyse
And spendyd hyt in goddys seruyse,
Halfen dele my trauayle,
Of heuyn schulde we neuer haue fayle.¹
I haue done for hym nothynge,
Therfore y may in sorowe synge.
I haue done mekyll schame:
God hath leyde on me þe blame.
All thys worlde y wyll forsaie
And penaunce for my synnes take.
Wende y wyll yn goddys seruyse,
Ellys were y nothynge wyse.

¹ MS. fayled.
FELICE TRIES TO PERSUADE GUY OUT OF HIS INTENTION.

Half the merit of his future life was to be hers.

Felice, who feared lest he had a lemmam somewhere for whom he wanted to quit her, fell into a swoon.

He tried to comfort her, and bade her educate their expected child with all care.

She proposed to him, instead of going away, to build [leaf 207 b, col. 1] abbeys, in which holy men might pray for their salvation.

Euyr schalt pon, wythowten fayle, Haue halfe pe mode of my tranayle.'
‘Syr,’ quod sche tho full tyte, ‘Haue ye me now in soche dyspyte? Well y wot, so god me reddye, Ye haue a lemmam in odur steddye, And now ye wyll vnto hur fare And come ageyne neuyr mare. Allas,’ quod sche, ‘that y was borne.’

Sche felle in swoannyng hym beforne.

He toke hur in hyss armes twoo And sayde: ‘lemman, let be thy woo. I holde the a grete folke, Yf thou make soche dole.

I haue now pys vyage thoght: For all pys worlde y leue hyt noght.
Dwelle wyth thy frendys here And, y prey the, make gode chere And bydde thy fadur cowmfort the,

Yf pon wylt haue pe loue of me. Thou haste conceuyd a chylde be me:
Kepe hyt wele, pur charyte;
For thyselfe and all thy kynne May haue of hym yoye and wynne.’
‘Allas,’ sche sayde, ‘how schall y fare, Wrechyd woman full of care,
When ye wyll wende me froo? Bettur hyt were me for to sloo.

Yf ye wyll leue my redde,

Ye schall not wende fro pys stedde. Abbeyes, syr, let thou make, And so schall y for thy sake:
Holy men schall for the pray

Wyth per myght bothe nyght and day. Thus may yow saue yow fro paryle: ¹

¹ MS. parelie.
Why wyll yow wende in exsyle?'

'LEMMAH,' he seyde, 'let be thy fare:
Speke thou therof no mare.
Thou louyste lytull pyn ownd prowe,
Yf pou make me to breke my vowe:
That y haue wyth my body wroght,
And wyth my body hyt shall be boght.'

When sche sawe, for lefe nor lothe
That he wolde not chaunge hys othe,
Sche clepyd hurselde caytyfe:
'Allas,' quod sche, 'that y haue lyfe.'
Downe sche felle vnto pe grownde:
Ofte sche swowned in that stownde.

Then seyde Gye: 'y wyll fare,
But, dere lemmar, take no care;
For y schall come ageyne soone,
When y haue my penaunce done.
Also oon thynge y bydde the:
Yf thou wylt loue me,
Do so moche for my sake,
That no man see pe sorowe make,
As pou derelye loueste me here.
Grete wele ofte thy fadur dere
And Harrowde, pe knyght so fre,
And all myn odur meyne.
Loke, pat pou be meke and mylde.
Fro pe tyme, pat pou haue chylde,
Kepe hyt, tyll hyt can goo,
And aftur to Harrowde pou hym doo.
He wyll hym kepe wyth gode chere
And norysche hym on all manere.
Ther was neuer 3yt a trewer knyght
Leuyng in 3orthe day nor nyght,
Then he hath be vnto me:
Therfore y loue hym wyth herte fre.
Take here my swyrde of stele

But he adhered to his purpose.

Seeing him firm,
she again fainted away
By way of comfort Guy promised to come back after having completed his penance.
When their boy could walk, he was to be sent to Harrowde.
And kepe hyt to thy sone wele:
In jorthe ther ys none bettur nowe.
Therwyth may he wynne prowne.'

Then Tho he kyssyd Felyce swete:
He my3t not speke, for he dud grete.¹
There was dole in þat stownde:
They swownyd bope on þe grownde.
Gye rose fro swownynge
And went forthe in mornynge.
'Syr,' sche seyd, 'pur charyte,
Abyde and take þys rynge of me.'
Gye toke at hur feyre þat rynge.
Dole was at ther partynge.

Then went hym forþe syr Gyowne
Hys wey soone owte of þe towne.
Gye wolde speke wyth no wyght
Nor wyth Harrowde, þat trewe knyght.
Forthe he wente to the see:
At Jerusalem wolde he bee
And in many an odur londe,
There holy men were lygande.

In þe towre Felyce he lefte þare.
Sche was in grete sorowe and care:
'Lorde,' quod sche, 'what may y say?
How schall y leue þys wofull day?'
Hur handys sore dud sche wrynge:
Sche felle downe in swownynge.
Hur cloþys sche drewe and hur hare:
Ther was neuer woman, dud so fare.
On hur handys brake the rynge:
Sche was tho a sory thynge.
At hur nayles þe blode braste owte.
Thys lyfe sche ladde þe nyght owte.
Ofte sche cryed there: 'allas,'

That euyr sche borne was.

¹ MS. wepe.
Owte sche toke pe swyrde bryght
And set hyt to hur harte ryght
And thoght to seche\(^1\) pe harte blode,
For sche had lorne hur lorde goode.
Then sche bethoght hur full wyselye,
That sche was tempted wyth grete folye
And \(\hat{p}\)at sche had a chylde hur wythynne :
Hyt to sloo hyt were grete synne ;
And \(\hat{p}\)at sche myyt not hurselfe sloo,
But yt sche slewe bothe twoo.
Sche \(\hat{p}\)oght also anodor manere :
When he hyt wyste, hur fadar dere,
Hur fadar and hur frendys all
Wolde in grete sorowe falle :
They wolde sey, that syr Gyowne
Had slayne hur, or he went fro towne.
Therefore folye sche thoght than :
Ellys sche had hurselfe slane.\(^2\)
\(\hat{T}\) Of all pe nyght sche had no reste
More, then had a wylde beste.
In the mornynge vp sche rose
And to hur fadar soone sche gose.
‘Fadar,’ sche seyde, ‘wot ye noght?
Wyckyd tyngys y haue yow broght :
My lorde ys wente fro thys cuntre.
I trowe, y schall hym neuyr see.
Yn exsyle he ys gone :
For sorowe y may myselfe slone.'
\(\hat{W}\)yth \(\hat{p}\)at she felle to pe grounde
And swooned soone in \(\hat{p}\)at stounde.
\(\hat{T}\) ‘Doughtur,’ he seyde, ‘let be \(\hat{p}y\) mornyng.
I may not leue hyt for nothyng, That he wolde wende in exsyle

\(^1\) seche seems miswritten for schride. The Caius MS., p. 150, gives the line: And thought to shede her herte blode.
\(^2\) MS. slayne.
WARWICK.
Guy had left her only in order to test her love. 

And put hym in soche paryle.

He hath done hyt to proue pe now,

How he may thy loue rowe.' 

' Nay,' sche seyde, 'so mote y the,

He wyll neyur come to me.' 

But Guy could nowhere be found.

But vp he rose and dwellyd noght,

And thorow all pe cyte he søght. 

When he myght not fynde Gye,

Aftur hys men he sente in hye 

And tolde, how that syr Gye

Was went, and no man wyste, whye. 

When pey wyste that tythyng, 

All they made moche mornynge. 

Y rede yow, sende yowre messengere 

Thorow allrys londe bope farre and nere. 

Yf he be not fowndyn here, 

He ys in Loreyn, be seynt Rychere, 

Wyth gode erle Tyrrye, 

That he lounyth specyallye.' 

IT A messengere was forpe sente 

And all the londe porow wente. 

He myght not fynde hym thare: 

Whome ageyne he can fare 

And seyde, all Ynglonde he had soght, 

But Gye he cowde fynde noght. 

IT There poght Harrowde, he wolde fonde 

To seke hym in odur londe. 

He toke two messengerys ryght,
Bothe a squyer and a knyght.
He gaue them tresoure grete plente
And bad ðem wende bezonde the see
To seke euery londe and gode townes
To spere tythyngys of syr Gyowne.
Harrowde hymselfe forthe ys gone:
Wede of palmer hath he tone.
The erle of Warwyk soone he fonde
And betoke hym all hys londe
And seyde: 'in wede of palmer
I schall seke Gye bope farre and nere
Yn euery stedde, in euery londe,
There he hath bene beforehonde.'
When he sye Harrowde so dyght,
He seyde: 'pou art a full trewe knyght.'
Harrowde went forpe fro þe erle þare.
To the see he came full þare:
Schyppe he fonde and passed in hye.
Comen) he ys to Normandye,
Sythen to Frawnce and Burgoyne,
To Almayne and to Cesoyne:
He harde no man speke wyth nowthe,
That of Gye telle cowthe.
Then he þoght, pat he was schent,
And into Ynglondo soone he went.
All that londe was sorye,
That no man myght fynde Gye:
Kynge, erle and baron;
All made dole for Gyownd;
For þey wenyd full sekerlye
Neuyr to haue seyne hym wyth eye.
God, pat dyed on a tre,
Saue Gye fro schame and vylane!
Now turne we aseyne and speke of Gye,
As we fynde in owre storye.

1 MS. Cesyone. The Caius MS., p. 153, has sosayne.
Guy went first to Jerusalem. Guy went first to Jerusalem. 

All that yere Gye can gone 
Ryght vnto Jerusalem, he borowe. 

On his way from this city 
Furthermore wolde he fare 
Into hethen cuntre:

he met with a pilgrim 
A pore pylgryme there stonde. 
Hyt semyd wele a sarsyne,

who was very sorrowful. 
That had moche pyne. 
Hyt semyd comen of hye lynage. 
Hys hed whyte, hys berde longe.

He had grete eyen and stronge vysage, 
He had grete eyen and stronge vysage,

Gye had pyte of that tythynge. 
He had pyte of that tythynge.

He drewe hys berde and hys hare: 
He drewe hys berde and hys hare:

He swownyd anon for care 
And seyde: 'allas, that he was borne;

That yon art noyed on some manere: 
That yon art noyed on some manere:

Therfore, syr, telle thou me, 
Therfore, syr, telle thou me,

That y am so sorye. 
That y am so sorye.

MS. semyth. Caius MS. semed.

MS. herre. Caius MS. berd.
Itrowe, pou wylt haue pyte,
When pat y haue tolde hyt the.

I was some tyme doghty of hande,
And to me felle moche lande.
I was a bolde man and a wyght:
Erle Joonas so y hyght.
I had sonnes fyftene,
Bolde men and therto kene.
I wene, per was newer man lyueande,
Syth crystendome was bro^t to laude,
That had so many sonnes wyght
Echeou in hys owne ryght,
As y had onys be the way
(Allas, that euyr y abode pys day)
At a batayle certeyne
Of sarsyns, that haue done trayne.
To Jerusalem comen they were
And dystroyed farre and nere:
We gedurde ooste, as men wyght,
And gaue pem batayle anon ryght.
A grete batayle was there oow,
For there dyed many a man.
I and my sonnes fyftene
Made the sarsyns for to flene.
At pat tyme wyth strenkyth toke we
Seuyn amerallys and kynys thre.

We chasyd them porow pat londe,
I and my sonnes, a kynge folowande:
Hys name was Triamore:
He ys a man of grete honowre.
To Alyssawndur he fledde ryght,
There he was kynge of myght.
We dud there a folye stronge,

1 In lines 7455, 7476, 7489, 7493, the abbreviation of ri is written with darker ink, with which also r of therto in line 7434 seems to have been freshened up.
too far,  
That we folowde hym so longe.  
There was redy in a wode  
Two hundurde knyghtys, pat were gode.  
Owte of the wode þey came anon
And belapped vs euerychon.  
Many of them we smetyn sare :  
For nothyng we wolde spare.  
Owre stedys þere soone they slowe  
And many oon abowte vs drowe.  
On fote we fagh faste than  
And slewe there mony a man :  
Or we wolde ȝyldde vs or be tane,  
Many of þem þorow vs was slane.  
Tyll owre swyrdys were brokyn of stel,  
We defondyd vs full wele.  
We sawe there no socowre :

were taken
prisoners by him,  
We ȝyldyd vs to kynge Triamore.  
We made soche couenande,  
Therto he helde vp hys hande,  
That we schulde for owue rawnsome

[leaf 209 a, col. 2]

To Awfryke he led vs thare  
And put vs in a pryson dore :  
Mete and drynke we had smalle  
And euyll lyfe led wythall.  
Hyt ys xii wynter and more,  
Syth we were put in pryson þore ;  
Tyll hyt befelle soon in a tyde,  
That the sowdan wyth grete pryde,  
That was þe kyngys lorde Triamore,

and put in his
dungeon,  
We made soche couenande,  
Therto he helde vp hys hande,  
That we schulde for owue rawnsome

where they
suffered for more
than 12 years,  
And euyll lyfe led wythall.  
Hyt ys xii wynter and more,  
Syth we were put in pryson þore ;  
Tyll hyt befelle soon in a tyde,  
That the sowdan wyth grete pryde,  
That was þe kyngys lorde Triamore,

At a festival of
the Soudan,  
He made a feste wyth honowre :  
Thretty kyngys þere were ryght,  
That were vnto the sowdan plyght,  
And amerallys þere were fourye,  
That were vnturnethe hys crye.
Theder wente kyng Triamore
And wyth hym hys sone Fabore.
He was yonge and also wyght
And therto newe made knyght.

At the thrydde day of the feste,
That was ryche and honeste,
The sowdon sone rose vp full ryght
(Syr Sowdan) of Perce he hyght):‘Faber,’ quod Sowdan, ‘y bydde the
To playe at pe chesses wyth me.’
’Syr,’ quod he, ‘wyth myn entente
I schall do yowre comawndement.’
To Faber chaumber perce pey wente
And aftur the chesses soon pey sente.
They sate downe frendys in all wyse,
But pey were wrope, or pey dud ryse.
Syr Faber at pe chesses a worde seyde: 2
Sowdan was wrope and owte brayde
And clepyd hym horeson thore
And wyth a roke he smote hym sore:
On the hedde he brake the crowne,
That pe blode faste ranne downe.
’Syr, thou doyst me dyshonowre,’
To Sowdan seyde Fabowre,
‘When thou haste brokyn my heuedde.’
The grace of god be fro me reunedde,
Yf thou were not my lordys sone,
Thou schuldyst abye, put pou haste done.’
Then seyde Sowdan: ‘what seyste thou?
Haste thou me manest nowe?
In euyll tyme pou hyt thoght :
Thyn owne depe pou haste wroght.’
And wyth hys fyste he wolde hym smyte,

1 The spelling of the MS. Sowdan, though evidently wrong for Sadoyne, yet has been left unaltered.
2 Corrupt without doubt. The Caius MS., p. 158, has At a chcke, that Fabour seyde.
3 MS. The Sowdan. 4 MS. To the Sowdan. 5 MS. hedde.
But Faber toghyt hyt dyspyte:
On hys fete dud he stonde
And toke the chexur in hys honde.
He smote Sowdan undur the ere:
He felle to gromnde and dyed pere.

When Faber sye, that he was dedde,
For fere he flewe fro that stedde.
He yede as faste, as he myst renne,
Towarde hys fadurs ymne then:
And tolde hys fadur there anon,
How the sowdans sone was solne.

The kynge dowtyd hym thare:
For the depe he had grete care.
On hys hors lepe he swythe:

For pe ye rode in hye vnblythe
Faste fleande to Alysaundur,
Or pe were resyn more sclaunder.
Owte of the londe soone pey went,
Or any wyste, pat Sowdan was schent.
When he came to that cyte,
A sory man, for sothe, was hee.

But therof be, as be may,
Let vs be mery, y yow pray.

The Soudan

But, when hyt wyste pe sowdan,
Pat hys sone so was slane,

He was, y trowe, a sory syre,
Full of tene and of yre
And beryed hys sone rychelye,
And pghyt to venge hym hastelye.

He sente hys sonde to the kynge,
As man, pat louyd hym nothynge,
And bad hym come hastelye
And defende hym of felonye
And brynge hys sone wyth hym, Fabowre,
That slewe Sowdan, as a traytour.

1 MS. slayne.
‘Yf he wyll not do that couenande,
Bydde hym fle forpe of hys lande,
Or ellys soche jugement suffir þere,
As in courte ordeyned were.’

† The kynge dyght hym full 3are :
To the sowdan dud he fare,
And wyth hym Faber, þe hende knyght,
Before the sowdan came ryght.
He askyd hym and þat azow,
How he had hys sone slone :

Yf he myght hyt not defende,
That dede he schulde derely amende.
He broght forthe a sarsyne :
A fowler dranke neuyr wyne.

Comyn he ys fro the lande of Ynde,
A stronger man may no man fynde.
He ys black, as any pyck,
And also felle, as a lyon in his swyck ;
Hys breste brode, hys body grete :
He ys more, then a nete.
Ther were not þre in all þat lande,
That durste stande a stroke of hys hande.

He ys two fote and more
Hyer, then any, that was þore.
Yf þe kynge durste wyth hym fyght
And hym defende wyth all hys myght,
That Sowdan¹ was neuer dedde
Thorow hym nor hys sonses redde,
And hym vnto dethe brynge,
He schulde passe quyte² in all thynge.

† Triamore³ had drede stronge
Of that sarsyn, þat was so lange.
Neuer þe lesse before them all

¹ MS. the Sowdan.
² quyte omitted in MS., but cf. l. 7600, and the Caius MS., p. 160, He shuld go quyte of all thynge.
³ MS. Tamore.
The sarsyn there he dud be calle
And seyde, that Sowdan was newer dedde
Thorow hym nor hys sonnes redde,
And, yf he myght hym to depe brynge,
That he schulde passe quyte in all ynge.
7596
A xii monyth pe trewe was tane
And thretty dayes, tyll he was gane.
Soche a man in hys cuntre
Neuyr was nor neuyr schall bee.
7600
Yf he durste not hymselfe fyght,
He schulde fynde anodur knygght.
7604
To Alysawnder the kynge ys went
And to hys barons he hath sente
And made crye thorow the lande,
Yf they had ony man fande,2
That durste for hym pat batell craue;
7608
And halfe hys londe he schulde haue.
He myzt neuer fynde none so wyght,
That durste agenste pat gyawnt fyght.
7612
Toke me owte of hys pryson
And askyd me thys resom,
7616
Yf y knewe any knyght,
That durste agenste pe gyawnt fyght.
A ryche man he wolde hym make
And do hym honour for hys sake
7620
And geue hym golde grete plente
And halfe hys londe euymore free.
I knewe none, y seyde to thame
(For to lye me poght hyt schame),
7624
In no cuntre nor in no lande,
That durste pat batell take on hande,
But yf hyt were Gye, the knygght,
That, all men seyde, was so wyght.
7628
And y myght fynde Gye or Harrawte,

1 MS. the: but the Caius MS., p. 161, has that.
2 Perhaps corrupt. See the note.
They wolde do hyt, wythowte defaute: 7632
Then myght pou be seker, sawns fayle,
To haue the vyctorye of that batayle.' 7636

When the kynge stode me bye
And herde me speke of syr Gye,
Hys hande he leyde vpon me.

‘But y haue helpe,’ he seyde, ‘of the,
I schall neuer of man leueande
Haue helpe, y vndurstande.
Yf y myght haue Gye,
That ys knyght so hardye!
Into Ynglonde schalt pou fare
For to loke, yf Gye be thare.

Yf he may not fowndyn bee,
Loke, Harrowde thou brynge wyth pe;
And y schall deluyer pe owt of prysow
And all thy sonnes wythowte rawnsome.
Thou schalt haue for thy seruyse,
Yf thou wylt be ware and wyse
And of tonge be trewe and holde,
Fyftene somers chargyd wyth golde.'

Sythen y sware on all manere
For to be trewe messengere;
And, yf pat y of pem modne none,
I schulde come ageyne allone:
Y schall be hangyd on a galowe tre,
Wyt ye wele, y am sore.

If I went into Almayne
Fro Fraunce vnto Hyespayne, 1
Sythen to Pole and Burgoyne,
Into Sysyll and Cesoyne 2
And sythen into Ynglonde
(And askyd every man, pat y fonde)
To Warwyk, hys cyte,
There he was wonte lorde for to bee. 7664

1 MS. hye spayne.  2 MS. Cesoyne.
I harde neuer man speke wyth mowthe,
That anythyng telle cowthe
Of Harrowe odur of syr Gye:
Therfore a sory man am y.
Gyes men tolde me on a day,
For sothe, syr, as y the say,
That Gye was in exsyle wente:
In holy weyes was hys entente.
And Harrowe aftur hym ys gone
For to seke hym, be seynt Iohan.
Longe dwellyd y there noght

And many landys syth haue y soght.
I myght neuer fynde no wyght
That cowde telle me of that knyght.
Now come y hedur thys ylke day
And restyd me be the way.
Hyt ys xii monythys and mo,¹
Syth y the kynge wente fro.²
And now y wende to hym agayne,
Well y wote, for to be slayne:
For the dethe wyll y not fie
(I haue the told, how hyt wyll be);
For y haue my trowthe plyght,
That y schall come ageyne ryght.
Then, y wott, y schall be sole
And my sonnes euerychone.
Of my lyfe yeue y noght,
But for my sonnes ys all my thoght.
They were knyghtys bolde and wyght
And well defendyd pen in euery fyght.
Yf they³ myght leue and olde⁴ bee,
They⁵ myght moche helpe crystyante.

¹ MS. more. ² MS. farm. ³ MS. y. ⁴ MS. bolde.
⁵ MS. i. Cf. Caius MS. p. 164:
Yf they myght leue and old men bee, They myght much helpe crystyante.
Now to hym wyll y fare
And take my dethe ryght thare.'

Wyth that he swownyd before Gye,
And therfore he was sorye.

Guy, feeling for Jonas,

Gye had sorow and moche care,
For he sawe the erle so fare.

Leue pylgryme,' sayde Gye,

That for thy sonnes art sorye
And Gye and Harrowde bope haste soght
In far londys and fonde hem noght,
Yf thou haue dole, hyt ys no ferlye,
When pou mayste hem nowhere aspye:
Thorow hem pou wenyst delyuerd to be
Owte of pryson and thy sonnes fre.
Some tyme y was in my lande
Holdyn doghty of my hande.
For the loue of god allmyght,
That he me gaue soche myght,
And for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake
That batell for by loue wyll y take,
And porow pe grace of heuyn kynge
The and by sonnes owt of prison brynge.'

When erle Joonas sawe Gye,
That he was bolde and hardye
To do that batell, yf he myght,
And wyth pe gyawnte for to fyght,
He avysed hym full wele
Fro pe hedde downewarde every dele.
Hys body, he pogh, was feyre and longe
And wele ymade to be stronge:
Hys bones were bare of flesche.
He semyd all of wyldurnesse:
Hys berde was longe,¹ fowle farande.
He lokyd vp stype starande.

Syr,' he sayde, 'for thy reson

Jonas looked at him:

he appeared tall
and well-made,
but very lean.

Jonas thanked

¹ Perhaps we ought to add and after longe.
him for his goodwill, but expressed his apprehension, lest in the presence of the Giant his heart should fail him, But Guy answered that, feeble as he seemed to be, God could make him so strong as to be victorious.

Haue thou goddys beneson.  
Thou knowest not *pal* sarsyne,  
That ys so wyckyd and so kene:

Wylle hys eyen, wytterle,  
He wolde the agaste make,  
That *pou* schuldyst the batayle¹ forsake.¹

¶ Then seyde Gye: 'perof drede *pe* neght.  
God ys myztfull, *pat* ys my thoght.

Many haue proudye to do skathe  
And wyth *per* eyen lokyd wrathe :²

My harte schall not therfore fayle.  
Yf *pou* thynke, y febull bee,  
God ys soche of poste,  
That he may gene me grace and myght

To slee *pe* gyawnt in *pe* fyght.'  
' Syr,' seyde *pe* pylgryme, 'gramereye!

And Harrowde, *pat* pou haste soght?  
Haste *pou* any of them broght?'

¹ MS. hym, but Caius MS., p. 165: That thou shuldyst the batayle forsake.  
² MS. rathe; but Caius MS., p. 165: And wyth hys eyen lokyd wrathe.

³ Gye omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 166: 'My frende,' quod Gye, 'so haue i hele.
GUY DOES NOT TELL HIS RIGHT NAME.

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘y schall the saye:
I wyll not lye, be thys day. 7764
Y haue bene in many a cuntre:
Harrowde nor Gye y my3t not see.
I was farre in many a londe
And askyd euery man, pat y fonde. 7768
They seyde, he was in exsyle wente,
Therfore the londe was nye schente;
And seyde, Harrowde had take pe way
To seke Gye nyght and day. 7772
But y haue braght a nobull knyght,
In armes pat ys bolde and wyght:
For yow he schall do thyss batayle
Thorowe helpe of god and not fayle. 7776
He wyll defende pe full ryght
And wyth pe grawnt wyll he fyght.’

† Tho seyde pe kynge to erle Joonas:
‘Loke, þou lye not in thys case. 7780
Yf y be betrayed thorow the,
Hongyd hye schalt thou bee,
And þy sonnes everychone
Wyth þe the same wey schall gone.’ 7784
‘I grawnte,’ quod Joonas, ‘that ye saye.
God vs helpe, that beste maye.’

†† The kynge clepyd soon) Gyown)
And tolde hym there all hys reson.
‘Pylgryme,’ he seyde, ‘what ys þy name?’
And he hym tolde, but not þe same.
‘Frende,’ seyde tho the kynge,
‘Telle me wythowte lesyne,
Where haste þou bene and in what lande?
Was þer þere no corne growande?’ 1

‘Syr,’ quod he, ‘syth y was knyght,2

1 Perhaps corrupt. Cf. Caius MS., p. 167:
   Was there no brede ne corne growande?

2 Here the MS. is evidently corrupt; giving a single line
   instead of three. Cf. Caius MS., p. 167:
TRIAMOUR MAKES INQUIRIES ABOUT GUY AND HARRAWDE.

Hearing he was an Englishman, the King made inquiries about Guy and Harrawde.

Guy, he said, had deserved his hate for slaying several relations of his.

But all should be forgiven if he would undertake the combat against the Giant.

Guy answered that, if either Guy or Harrawde would espouse the King's cause, he might be sure of victory. Triamour further observed to Guy, that as he looked so lean, he must have served unkind lords.

I have bene in mony a fyght.'

'Art þou Englysehe,' seyde the kynge, 'Me oght to hate þe ouer all thynge. Knewe thou oght sym Gywone
And wyth hym Harrawde, þat bolde baron? Yf that þey be nowe leueande, They be full bolde and stronge of hande.
I oght to hate Gye wyth yre:
He slewe my faður, Clynant of Tyre, 7804
And my neme wyth his hande
And þe sowdan at mete syttande.
I sawe hym smyte of his hedde,
And wyth strenckyth awey hyt ledde. 7808
Awey he pryckyd at the laste,
All we chacyd hym full faste.
The deuell hym saued : we slewe hym not þan,
But he slewe of vs many a man. 7812
Lorde gene, that he were here:
Then schulde y make gladde chere.
Yf he wolde fyght for me,
All forgeuyn schulde hyt bee.' 7816
'Tell me,' seyde the kynge than,
'Why art thou so lene a man?' 7824
Unkynde men thou seruest aye,
When þou partyste so pore awaye;
Odur hyt ys for thy folye,
That þou faireste so porelye.' 7828

'Sir, he seyd, 'in Englond' Was i borne and moste dwellande :
Sethen that i was dubbyd knyz'e,
I have bene in mony fyght.'
‘Hyt may,’ quod he, ‘full wele befalle,
My state knowe ye not 3yt all.
I was some tyme in gode seruyse:
My lorde me louyd in all wyse.
For hym y had grete honowre
Of kynge, Prynce and maydyns in bowre.
But ones y dud an hastenesse:
Therefor y loste hope more and lesse.
Sythen y went fro my cuntre.’

¶ Then to hym spake ye kynge:
‘Telle me ye sope, so mote yu thye.
Wylt yu take ye batell for me?
Or ellys y schall gete a nodur.
Telle me ye sothe, lefe brodur.’
And Gye seyde: ‘Therefor come ye hedur,
Joomas and y now togedur.
Thorrow ye helpe of ye trynyte
The batell y schall take for the
And slo ye gyawnt wyth my hande,
Yf ye wyll graunte me yrs couenande,
That Joomas and yrs sonnes echone
Fro prysow be deluyyrde anow.’

¶ Then seyde the kynge: ‘y ye graunte.
Mahownde ye helpe and Termagawnte.’
‘Nay,’ seyde Gye, ‘but Mary sonne,
That for ys on a rode was done:
He may me helpe for yrs mercye.
Syr kynge, y sey, that ys no lye,
But that Mahownde hap no poste
To helpe nodur the nor me.’

¶ Then seyde ye kynge: ‘my frende dere,
Triamour promised,

1 MS. goddys. Cf. Caius MS., p. 168:
For soth, i was in good serryse.

2 After this five lines have been omitted in the MS., at the end of the fift of which there was another cuntre. Line 7839 has been added after this omission. See the note.

3 MS. ye. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 169:
‘Nay,’ quod Gye, ‘but Mary is sonne.

WARWICK.
I shall make pe a couenande here. 7860

Yf ou may the gyawnt sloo
And brynge me owte of thys woo,
Thy god for the loue of the
Schall haue also pe loue of me. 7864

The crysten men, that y haue tane,
Schall be deluyrde euery man.
Ther schall be none in heþynnes,
Man nor woman, more nor lesse,
That ys of erystyante,
But they schall deluyrde bee.
For pe and for by goddys sake
I schall in thys londe make,
That crysten men schall wende
Thorow pys londe feyre and hende,
And, yf any be so hardye
To do þem schame and vylenye,
Be he neuer so grete nor so stowte,
He schall dye, wythowte dowte.'
'Syr,' seyde Gye, 'gramercye!
Thys ys a feyre gyfte for me.'

Riche clothes 7880

'And geue hym robes grete plente :
Loke, þat he wante noght.'

Guy declined: 7884

But Gye had of þat no thoght.
'Syr kynge,' he seyde, 'of þat be style
Hyt ys nothyng at my wylle
Ryche robes for to haue :
I am but a pore knaue.

He only wanted his fyll of food and drink. 7888

Mete and drynke geue me my fylle,
And þen y haue all my wylle.'
The kynge bad, þat he schulde haue,
What some euer he wolde cran.

As the day appointed for the combat was approaching, the King went 7892

 ¶ When þe tyme was comen sone,
That þe batell schulde be done,
The kynge was full rychely dyght
And wyth hym all hys baronage wy3t:
To þe sowdan wolde he fare.
Swyþe he wente and came full 3are.
Gye wente armed and wele ydyght,
As felle to a gentyll knyght.
On hym he had an hawberke:
Hyt was made of rych warke.
In farre londe hyt was wroght
And to þe kynge in present broght.
When hyt came to Jerusalem,
Hyt was bryght, as sonne beme.
A thefe hyt stale sythen wyth honde
And broght hyt vnto hethyn londe.
The aunceturs of kynge Tryamowre
Boght hyt wyth moche honowre.
Hyt was of grete tresorye
And in þat nede was geuyn to Gye.
Thretty wyntur was gone and more,
That hyt came in no felde 3ore.
Hyt was so clere and so bryght,
That all þe halle schone of þe lyght.

He had an helme of olde warke
And on euery syde stones starke.
He, that on hys hedde hyt bare,
Schulde not be vencowsde in no warre.
Hyt was Alysawndurs, þe kynge :
He wanne hyt in hys fyghtynge.
When he slewe ðynge Pore, 1
He wanne hyt and moche more.
He bare a swyrde in hys hande :
Ector hyt oght, y vnþurstande.
There were Gregywos many a wonne,
Or he hyt gate, that were sone.
He had also a nobull targe :
Hyt was bothe bryght and large.

1 MS. favre. See the note.
Ameraunt the Giant is brought forth.

All wondered who Guy could be.

Triamour presented Guy to the Soudan

Ameraunt the Giant was brought forth.

Guy, on seeing him,

observed to the King that he was the Devil.

The two opponents, having gone to an islet,

Ther was no nyng, hat myst hyt dere,
Knyfe, swyrde, axe nor spere.

When he was dyght, syr Gye,
Of hym all men had farlye.
Echeon askyd, what he myght bee,
Fro whens he came and fro what cuntre,
That schulde for the kynge fyght.
They sawe neuer so semelye a knyght.

Then seyde the kynge to pe sowdan:
‘Herkyn me, syr, and that anon.
Now y am comen to the here
To defende me on all manere
Of that wyekyd felonye,
That was put on me vntrewlye,
Thorow pe knyght, pat stondyth here,
That Sowdan, thy sone dere,
Thorow my sone was neuer dedde
Nodur porow my cowncell nor my redde.’
The sowdan seyde: ‘syn por haste hym broght,
Hyt schall soone be sene, so ys my thoght.
Brynge forthe,’ he seyde, ‘the gyawnt,’
A paynym, that hyght Amerawnt.
He was armed nobullye:
Every man of hym had farlye.
Hys body was bope grete and longe:
He semed to be owtrages stronge.
But, when Gye sye that sarsyn,
That was so myghty and so kene,
‘Be Cryste,’ he seyde vnto pe kynge Fan,
‘3ondur ys pe dewell and no man.
Who schulde hym a stroke stande?
He wolde hym felle wyth hys hande.
Forthe pey wente to that batayle
Hastelye, wythowte fayle,
To an yle besyde the see,

1 A word blotted out before stronge in MS.
There the batayle schulde bee.
When þey came þere, as þey shulde fyght,
They lepe on þer stedys full ryght. 7968 commenced their fight.
Soone þey smote togedur faste,
Whyll þer sperys wolde laste.
Soone þer sperys dud glyde
Abowte þer hedys in pecys wyde. 7972
Soone þey drewe þer swyrlys of stele
And fught togedur faste and wele.

If Amerawnt drewe hys swyrde owte:
Hyt was scharpe all abowte. 7976 Ameraunt's sword
Hyt was Arcules swyrde þe wyght:
He hyt bare in euery fyght
And þerwyth slewe many a man.
Amerawnt hyt in warre wanne.
Hyt was put in the watur of helle;
For hyt was boþe scharpe and felle. [leaf 212 b, col. 1]
God of heuyn thynke on Gye;
For he came to hym full hastelye. 7984

If Togedur soone dud they Smyte
Wyth brondys, þat full wele cowde byte.
Wyth grete wrath starnte Amerawnt
Wyth hys strenkyth Gye sayleant. 7988
He smote hym on the helme bryght,
That was made of stele ryght,
That þe flowrys felle all abowte,
And hys schelde he smote þorowowte, 7992
That was neuyr peyred are
In stryfe nor in warre, but thare.
Thow þe sadull he smote also
The gode stede enyn in twoo. 7996
The swyrle felle downe þore
Into þe erthe two fote and more.
Gye was at þe grownde anon;
Hys gode stede þere was slone. 8000 Guy was soon

Lorde,' quod Gye, 'god almyght,
They fight very obstinately.

That made bothe he day and nyght,
Schelde me fro schame thys day,
As þat þou of all beste may.
Kepe me, for thy holy grace,
That y be not slayne in thys place.'

On hys fote he starte vp ryght,
As a nobull doghty knyghte.
He toke hys bronde wyth envye
And smote to þe gyawnte hardelye.

On þe helme the stroke glode:
Besyde þe gyawnte downe hyt rode.
Hys hors neck he smote in two:
The gyawnte to þe grownde felle þo.
Vp he starte wythowte lettynge,
But he playned hym nothynge.
He smote Gye wyth hys myght
And he hym kepte, as a nobull knyght.

Then þey faghhte faste thare:
Ther wolde nodur odur spare.
They faghght togedur wyth grte yre:
Of þer helmes sprange þe fyre.
Ther strokys breke styffe scheldys,
That þe mayles flewe to þe feldys.

¶ Amerawnt hap hym bethoght,
That in many a stowre he had faghght,
But neuer are before that day
Was he so stadd in no jurnaye.

Therfore hys armes he lyfte vp ryght
And smote Gye wyth all hys myght:
Gye was bothe stronge and lyght
And kepyt hym,¹ as a nobull knyght.

Then they faghght so faste thare,
That nodur of þem wolde odur spare.
He smote Gye on the hedde tho,
That the perlys dud downe goo,

¹ MS. hyt.
At the drawynge of that bronde
That Gye on hys kneys felle to grounde.

If vp he starte, as a man,
But hyt greuyd hym sore than.
Greuyd was Gye sore:
‘Lorde Cryste,’ he seyde, ‘thy nore.
Neuyr in batayle nor in no fyght
Knelyd y are for dynte of knyght.’

He lyfte vp tho hys hande
And smote vnto Amerawnde
In the helme, that clere was,
That golde felle downe a gode pase ;
The mayles he smote also in twoo.
Then was Amerawnt full woo,
That nothynge helped the mayle,
But all tobrake hys ventayle.

He hyt hys flesche : pe blode downe ranne.
Hys necke he made lyke no man.
Hys targe, pat was golde belokyn,
Hyt was all tofruschyd and brokyn.

To pe bokull, pat was golde begone,
He made hys bronde to go anon.
Sythen he brayde ageyne soo,
To pe grownde pat he dud goo
On kneys and on handys also,
As he had had no frendys tho.
Amerawnt dud, as a gode knyght :
He lyfte hys swyrde anon ryght.

Guy was brought on his knees,
which had never happened to him before.
[leaf 213 a, col. 1]

But he hit the Giant so luckily
as to make him fall upon his knees and hands.

Gye sore there he smote:
So eydur odur, wele y wote.
Of ther helmes flewe the fyre :

So faste they faghght wyth grete yre.
Betwene pem was so grete fyght,
That no man pe betur knowe myght.

They fought so bravely that no one knew which was the better.

So stronge batayle was never made :
Of pem, pat hyt sye, hyt was so sayde.
The weather was hot, 

AMERANT IS THIRSTY.

if Hyt was in somer, the wedur was hote:

The story so tellyth, wele y wote.

On þe morne after mydsomyr day, 

Was the batell of the barons, 

Amerawnt drewe hym ageyne

That frescher were, þen any lyons. 

And helde hys hedde, as men seyne. 

What for blode, þat he had leuyd, 

The story so tellyth, wele y wote.

Thurst he had euellye:

Art thou Gye of Warwyke, 

But yf he dranke, he muste dye.

That, men sey, ther ys none lyke?

I wolde fayne fyght wyth hym,

Of whens þou art and of what cuntre.

Hys hedde y schulde smyte of here:

Of vs he slewe twenty thousande

Wyth hys dyntes of hys hande.

Yf that y had hym ones slayne

Wyth hys dyntes of hys hande,

And syr Harrowde, þat ys hys swayne,

Two the beste then slayne had y:

Then myght y be full yolye.'

He seyde: 'nay,' wyth moche vnwynne,

Of synne þou art gretly to wyte.'

But he hath mysdone to my kynne.

The wedur ys hote, as þou may see.

But to my kin.'

He requested Guy

¶ Crysten man, vndurstande me:

For the lordys lone, þat þou lenyste ynne,

1 Perhaps Wyth the dyntes?
And as he may forgeue þe þy synne,  
Geue me leue to go style  
To drynke of water but my fylle.  
Thurstè y haue vndurgone:  
My herte wyll breste and that anon  
Yf y for thurstè ouyrcomen ware,  
Thou schuldyst be preysed newr þe mare,  
But schame therof þou schuldyst haue,  
And thou warne me, that y craue,  
Y prey the for goddys sone,  
That made bope þe sonne and mone  
And geue the grace well to spede  
In euery place and euery nede.  
And, yf thurstè vpon the falle,  
þeue þe leue to drynke y schall.'  
Then sayde Gye: 'ygravnte the  
To drynke ynogh in safete,  
So that eftþe þou geue me leue  
For to drynke, yf þurste me greue.'  
†But, when þat he the leue hadde,  
He was neuer before so gladde.  
He ranne to þe watur, wythowte fayle,  
And vnlasyd hys ventayle,  
There as he was moste hate:  
For to drynke ynogh he thrate.  
‘Knyȝt,’ sayde þe gyawnt, ‘þelde þe to me:  
Thy endyne  day thou haste ysee.  
Euyll y haue begyled the,  
When þou to drynke leue gaue me.  
I am freschar, then y was are:  
Thou schalt dye, wythowten care.  
My custome ys soche, y the say:  
Fyght y neuer so moche on a day,  
And y myght haue ony space  
My mouthe to wete wyth ony gras,  

1 g blotted out after may in MS.
Guy wants to drink in his turn.

But Guy did not fear him.

So their struggle was continued.

Guy was wounded in his side.

He now wanted to drink in his turn.

Sythen anon) gene y no tale
To fyght, where that euer y schale.'
Then seyde Gye: 'no fyng drede y pe.'
That fyng getyst peu not of me.'

If Togedur they streke, as ye may herke,
And on pe helmes strokes they marke.
Nother flewe a strawe brede:
In pat tyme no dethe they drede.
Togedur pey smeten to make pey tame:
On ther bodyes pey dud schame.
In pecys scheuyrde pey per scheldus:
They schente pery vysage wyth pery swyrdu.
Amerawnt greuyd tho full hote
And on the hedde Gye he smote.
The pomell, pat on pe helme was,
In sonder was smyten into pe place.
The dynte felle on Gyes schoulder:
Hys hawberke he smote pery in sonder.
Wyth that he brake an hole wyde
And woundyd Gye in the syde.
In the 3orthe a fote he smote:
Of that men spake, wele y wote.
Of that dynte Gye wondur hadde,
That euer he myght set ony so sadde.
Gye hym to yelde had grete desyre
And Amerawnt he smote wyth grete yre:
Wythynne the schelde a fote and more
Hys swyrde hyt and bote sore.
Sythen ageyn he hyt droghe,
As a man, that was very ynogh.

Therefore, Amerawnt, y prey to the,

`To the y telle wythowten more:
Soche a thurstye ys me befalle,
But yf y drynke, y dye wythalle.
Therfore, Amerawnt, y prey to the,

1 Line 8145 after 8146 in MS.
Of me þou woldyst hane pyte,
Now that boone thou quyte me,
That þou are behyghtest me,
That y to drynke leue schulde hane,
At what tyme y wolde hyt-craue."
Amerawnt seyde: 'was þat þy thought?
Leue to drynke getyste þou noght.'
To that sarsyn answeryd Gye:
'Of me thou hane some mercye.
Yf y for thurste dedde bee,
For cowardyse men wolde wyte the.
Wylt þou suffur, þat y drynke nowe
(For hyt were gretly for my prowe),
Then,' seyde Gye, 'we may fyght same,
To wytt, who schall haue harme or game.'
"The gyawnt seyde: 'thou art smarte:
I wyll not the holde for no cowarte.
Y wolde not for þys cyte wyth þe gylte towre,
But y myght stroye kynge Tryamowre.
When y haue thy hedde of schorne
And þe slayne the kynge boforne,
Hys landys y nede not for to craue;
For the beste of them y schall haue.
The sowdan hath a doghtur dere:
In all þys worlde y knewe not hur perc.
Y loue hur well, so dothe sche me:
The sowdan þynkyth to geue hur me.
3elde the,' he seyde, 'vynto me
And of thy harnes vnlace the,
And thy lyfe y schall saue soo:
And, yf thou wylt not, y schall þe sloo.'
"Gye answeryd then wyth grete yre:
'Y wyll not þyt, leue syre.
Hyt ys not þe custome of my londe.
Arste wyll y be drawyn wyth horsys stronge,
Then euyr y schulde in soche a nede
But if Guy would surrender,
his life should be spared.
Guy answered that to surrender was not the
custom of his country.
[leaf 214 a, col. 1]
Ameraunt then offered to let Guy drink if he would tell his right name.

\[ \text{But Ameraunt, knowing that his opponent was Guy,} \]

\[ \text{declared that not even for the whole of Hungary would he allow him any drink.} \]

\[ \text{3elde me vnto soche a quede.'} \]

\[ \text{7 Then seyde Amerawnt: 'sey me now,} \]

\[ \text{Where were } \text{pou} \text{ borne and what hyght } \text{pou?} \]

\[ \text{To let the drynke haue y thoght ;} \]

\[ \text{For why } \text{py} \text{ name } \text{pou layne nught.} \]

\[ \text{Thou makeste men to clepe the,} \]

\[ \text{I trowe, not so, os hyt schulde bee.} \]

\[ \text{Yf } \text{pou on } \text{pe} \text{ that name bare,} \]

\[ \text{Thou schuldyst be knowyn wyde whare.} \]

\[ \text{Guy complied.} \]

\[ \text{\[ Gye answeryd: 'thou schalt here;} \]

\[ \text{Loke, thou ley hyt to thyn ere.} \]

\[ \text{Gye of Warwyk clepyd am y,} \]

\[ \text{Borne in Ynglonde, wytterlye.} \]

\[ \text{I fyght for Tryamowre the kynge} \]

\[ \text{The to take ouer all thynge} \]

\[ \text{And to delyuyr hym of fame stronge,} \]

\[ \text{That ys put on hym wyth wronge.'} \]

\[ \text{But, when Amerawnt vnduryode,} \]

\[ \text{That Gye there before hym stode,} \]

\[ \text{That so moche preysed was,} \]

\[ \text{Of hym had he wonder in } \text{pat place.} \]

\[ \text{He seyde: 'Gye, welcome mote } \text{pou bee.} \]

\[ \text{Ouyr all thynge desyred y the.} \]

\[ \text{Now wot y well, that sothe hyt ys,} \]

\[ \text{That men haue spokyn of } \text{pe or } \text{lys.} \]

\[ \text{But so, or } \text{y go, } \text{y schall the dere,} \]

\[ \text{That } \text{py} \text{ hed fro}^1 \text{ pe body y wyll schere,} \]

\[ \text{And present hyt to my lemmom}: \]

\[ \text{Hyt schall be so, be seynt Mahowne.} \]

\[ \text{Now } \text{pat y am seker of Gye,} \]

\[ \text{Yf men wolde gene me all Hungurrye,} \]

\[ \text{To drynke y wolde not geue } \text{pe leue :} \]

\[ \text{Thou myghtest me sore aftur greue.'} \]

\[ \text{\[ 'Lorde,' quod Gye, 'what schall y done?} \]

\[ \text{Leeue to drynke haue y noone.'} \]

\[ ^1 \text{fro altered from } \text{foo in MS.} \]
Guy drinks without his opponent's leave.

Sy[nen he hath be]poght hym there
To lepe into the ryvere.
Th[edurwarde ys he] gone:
Drynke he muste or dye anone.
Amerawnt folowed \textit{wyth} hys swyrde:
Gye was then sore aferde.
Of the watur he was fayne.
But god hym helpe, he ys but slayne.
Now ys Gye bestadde sore,
In \textit{pe} water to \textit{pe} gyrdull and more.
Into \textit{pe} watur hys hedde he threste
To \textit{pe} schoulders, or he wolde reste,
And Amerawnt smote hym soo,
That in \textit{pe} water he knelyd thoo:
The colde water abowte hym ranne.
Gye start vp then, as a manw.
Then seyde Gye, that all myght here:
'\text{Thou haste me hyt on ylle manere.}"
'\text{Thou haste me baptysed, hyt ys \textit{py} schame.}"
'\text{But 3yt \text{you} haste not chaunged my name.'"
\text{Ameraunt by a stroke drove Guy on his knees in the water.}
\text{The battle soon was renewed.}

\text{Forthe of the water he came, y wote,}
\text{And Amerawnt full soone he smote.}
Eyther hath other bethoght,
\text{How \textit{pe} myght to grownde be broght.}
\text{Of acorde was not speke:}
Eyther of odur wolde be awreke.
'\text{A, felle fende,}' s[eyde syr Gye,}
'\text{Thankyd be god full hastelye.}"
\text{Thorow \textit{pe} water at \textit{pe} brymme}
I was well holpyn soone \textit{perynne.}
\text{Yn \textit{pe} affye y me no more,}
\text{Traytoure,' he seyde, 'be goddys ore.'}
\text{They fought from morning to night.}

\text{Then they togedur rathe}
Smote, as men, \textit{bat} were wrathe.
Fro the morne to the nyght,
And at \textit{euy[w} were sterrys bryght,
So haue þey foughyn all that day,
That no man þe bettur knowe may.
At a dynte, that Gye caste,

Ameraunt to smyte he hyed faste.
Of he smote hys ryght arme:
Into þe felde hyt flewe full warme.
When Ameraunt was smetyn soo,
He was greuyd, as y troo.
Vp he nome hys grete bronde
And helde hyt faste in hys honde
And assayed Gyowne,
As he were a lyone,
That had fasted xiii nyght.
But Gye defendyd hym, as a knyght:
Fro Ameraunt he nopyng drouwe,
And Ameraunt was hote ynowe.
Thorow þe blode, þat fro hym ranne,
The dyntys lessud of that man.
At a dynte, that Gye smote
(Ameraunt felyd hyt full hote),
The lyfte arme wyþ þe schoulder boon,
Hyt yede of and that anon.
So nye Gye dnd he gone,
That almoste he felle hym vpon.
Gye smote to hym faste
And to þe grounde þe gyawnt caste.
Hys ventayle he vnlasyd, y wote,
And hys hedde of soone he smote.
Wyþ the boot he came passynge
And caste hyt to Tryamowre þe kynge.
The sowdan þere hym quyte made
And all, þat euyr he there hadd.
To Alysawndur he went, þe ryche towne,
And wyþ hym broght he syr Gyowne
And sythen he sende aftur erle Joonas,
And he came to hym a gode pase.
He kyssyd hym there full soone
And hys sonnes everychone
And wythowte any respyte
Of pryson he made þem þere quyte.
‘Erle,’ seyde tho the kynge,
‘Thou schalt be my darlynge.’

† The kynge seyde: ‘lorde, þat þe wroght,
Geue, hyt were in thy thought
To dwelle styyle here wyth me.
Golde and syluyr y wolde geue the:
I wolde geue parte of my londe
To cese hyt now into þy honde.’

Gye seyde: ‘hyt ys not in my thought:
To dwelle wyth þe kepe y noght.’

† The erle at þe kynge toke hys leue
And prayed hym, þat he wolde hym not greue.
To Jerusalem, the gode towne,
The erle Joonas þoght to gone.
But he at Gyes partynge
Wolde wytt of hym some tythynge
And, as they wente on þer waye,
At þer partynge þe erle can say:
‘Telle me, syr, for seynt Symonde,
What ys þy name, in þys stownde,
That makyste vs to clepe the
Other weyes, then hyt schulde bee.
I prey the, now we be same,
Telle to me thy ryght name.
I prey þe for þe loue of þe trynyte,
Thy ryght name þou layne not fro me.

† Then seyde Gye to hym in haste:
‘Erle Joonas, be Jesu Cryste,
Loke, that þou layne hyt woile.
Yf þou me bewrye, hyt ys dole.
Gye of Warwyk ys my name.
Yf þou me bewrye, þou mayste me shame.
For the toke y the fyght
And slewe þe gywnt be goddys myght.'

But, when he harde verelye,
That hyt was syr Gye,

To Gyes fete dud he falle,
And Gye toke hym vp þerwythall.
'Syr,' seyde þe erle, 'for goddys mercye,
That thou goyst thus, say me, whye,
And þou art so doghty and stronge:
God made neuer a bettur schorte nor longe.
The erledame of Durras y geue the,
And many a man schall serue the,
And þy myselfe become thy man
And my sonnes euerychone:
All we schall be trewe to the
And swere on boke to serue the.
We schall nopynge chalenge fro þe
Of honowre nor of dygnyte.
Thou haste wonne hyt wyth þy hande,
Thogh hyt were bettur, þen any lande;
For, þf thou thyselfe ne were,
We had be dedde and leyde on bere.'

'Ærlc Joonas,' tho seyde Gye,
'I thanke the moche and gramercye.
To dere thou haddlyst hyred me,
Yf þy thy landys toke fro the.
Wende whome on þy way nowe:
Goddys blessynge haue thou.
I wyll home to myn owyn lande
(Y haue so thoght, y¹ vndurstande)
And neyr estte see the more.'
Wyth þat they kyssed and leue toke þore.

To Durras þe erle wente agayne,
As man, þat was nothyngye fayne.

Now goyth Gye god thankende²

¹ ye shall? ² MS. thankande.
FELICE HAS A SON NAMED REYNBROWN.  241

For the honowre, god had hym sende.  8392
The londe he hate thorow gone
And soght the halowse everychone.
He sognere wythynne pat londe nobell
And sythen he went to Constantyne pe nobell.
Off pe lady now wyll y telle,
Of Gyes wyfe, and nothyng dwelle.

Of charyte pe was none hur make,
Sythen hur lorde pe wey dud take
Halowse to seke mony ow\':
He neyur stynte, or he had done.\(^1\)
Abbeyse, churchys sche dud make
At that tyme for Gyes sake
And pore men bothe clothe and fede
Mony, sythe pat Gye fro pe londe yede.
Neyur for game, that was done,
Loghe sche, sythe pat Gye was gone.
That lady had a sone free:
A feyrr myght no man see.
They crystenyd hym in a fant stone
And clepyd hym Reynbowne.\(^2\)

To Harrowde pey deleyyrde pe chylde,
As Gye baddhe the lady mylde.
Harrowde toke the gode grome
And kepte hym, as hys lordys sone.
He betoke hym two knyghtys pore
To kepe hym well and do no more.
When the chylde was vii yere olde,
Well waxen he was and feyre and bolde.

\(^1\) done altered from don', which shows clearly that the flourish did not mean e: and what else could it mean? Cf. 9094.

\(^2\) Reynbrown\(^3\) is the correct form, but the MS. always has Reynbown[e].

At seven years old, he was very tall, beautiful, and bold.
It happened that some Russian merchants,
Copur and tynne *and* brasse *pertoo,*
Veire and gryce *and* pylches arnyne
And clothys of sylke *and* of satyne.
Rygth at deuer¹ haue þey renyn
And to kynge Athelston a *present* geuyn.  
To þer schyppes be they gone
And soght townes many oon,
So þat þey came to Wallyngforde
x myle tolde fro Oxonforde.  
Hyt was a cyte gode wythall

[leaf 215 b, col. 1] And wele yclosyd wyth stone walle;
And, syþen wyth warre hyt was caste down,
Hyt was neuer syth so gode a townere.  
The *marchandes* þoght not to be schente
And to Harrowde broght a presente,
And Harrowde toke hyt wyth gode wylle
And thanked þem bothe lowde *and* stille.  

Struck with the *beauty* of the boy,
*Pley* in þe halle so wantow *and* wylde,
Wondur had the *marchandys* there:
A fayrer chylde sawe þey neuer ere.
They asked the knyghtys² in that place,
Whose that feyre chylde wase.
They answeryd, sekerlyke:³

¹ *Hyt* ys syr Gyes sone of Warwyke.'  
² MS: knyght.  
³ ke in sekerlyke altered from e in MS.  
⁴ t in *Hyt* altered from s in MS.  
⁵ Part of a letter struck out before *wyth* in MS.
To Russye the wey they dud take,
And, when they sawe pe londe, grete yoye they dud make.
They wende to haue reyn feyre and wele,
But to them befelle grete sorowe and dele.
The nyght waxed soon black, as pycke:
Then was the myste bope marke and thycke.
The weder waxe pycke, pe wynde blewe faste:
Almoste the schyppe hyt dud downe caste.
Then were they turmentyd soo,
That they wyste not, whodur to goo.
The wawes ouyrvede pe schyppe soo,
That they were wete fro toppe to too.
Hyt brake per cordys and eke ther maste:
Then wende they to dye all at pe laste.
Ouyl all greuyd them that turmente:
They preyed to god omnypotente,
That he schulde pat lowde wynde felle
And borowe per sowles owt of helle.
Farre in pe see pe schyppe ys dryuen:
In Awfryke well soone they be yryuen.

When they marchandys can pat see,
That they in Awfryke aryuen bee,
They post Reynbrown, pat chylde, to take
The kynge wyth hym a present to make,
That they may freschly and well
Go porow pe londe ferye and well
For to selle and for to bye,
That no man schulde pem affraye.
Sythen they toke two marchans
Wele ydyght of Romans:
To pe kynge they presentyd pat chylde,
And he hym resseyuyd wyth wordys mylde.
The kynge had a doghtur in pe towne:
Of pe selfe age was Reynbrownne.
Sche preyed porow hur modur wylle

---

1 *dud* over the line in the same hand.
2 MS. *marchandys.*
KING ATHELSTAN ASSEMBLES HIS LORDS.

in her chamber, 
Reynbrown's education was completed.

Harrowde ordered
Reynbrown to be searched for everywhere,

but in vain.

Now it came to pass that the English King, Athelstan, [leaf 216 a, col. 1] assembled all his Earls and Barons, Harrowde being among the rest. The King's good opinion of Harrowde raised the envy of others.

The King asked his Lords' advice with regard to

Of hur lorde bope lowde and stylle,  8492
The chylde my3t in hur chaumber be
To norysche hym wyth hur own mayne,
Yf pat he myght serue hur wele.
The kynge hur grauntyd every dele.  8496

When Harrowde perseyued soo,
pat pe chylde was stolen hym fro,
He made hym to be sozt porow pe towne
And porow pe cuntre be dale and downe.  8500
When he wyste, for sope, pat case,
That pe chylde stolen wase,
Tho beganne moche of hys woo;
For he had so lorne hys lordys two.
In all Russye he dud hym seke
And in many a strange lande eke;
And, when he my3t not be fownde,
He swowned, as a man for sore wounde.  8508

¶ Then so befelle, kynge Athelstow
Let gedur hys barons euerylkon,
Bope hys erlys and hys barons,
The wysest pat were of all resons.
Harrowde of Arderne pedur yede :
The kynge hym louyd for hys gode deade
More, then any of hys lande;
For he was doghtyest of hys hande.
And odur lordys therof had envye,
And betwene them they can seye,
That the kynge dud grete wronge
To honowre so moche Harrowde pe stronge ;
For he was but a pore knyght :
'Hys lorde he hath done moche vnryght.'  8520
¶ 'Lordyngys,' pen seyde pe kynge,
'Vndurstandyth wele my tythynge.
Y wyll yow now of cowncell praye,
For y wot well, ye haue harde saye,
That the kynge Anlaf of Denmark,
That ys full felle, styffe and starke,
Wyl come on vs wyth moche heer
All owre londes for to dere
And þem to haue wyth grete myght,
But we defende vs wyth grete fyght.
Many yerys hyt ys gone,
Syth he claymed thys kyngdome.'

'Then answeryd syr Harrawte:
'Ve dowte hym not, wythowte defawte.
Yf þey come in yowre landes,
We schall þem sloo wyth owre handes.
Gode men haue ye and cytees stronge:
Ye nede not to dowte none of hys wronge.
In olde dayes, men seyden, aplyght,
That Danes schulde haue þys lande wyth ryȝt;
But þorow batell þey were slone:
Therfore now ryȝt haue þey none.
But now comawnde thy barowns,
Tho that haue castels and townes,
Wyth horse and harnes to be made ȝare
Into batell wyth the to fare
And to yowre knyghtys of armes all,
That þey be redy at yowre calle:
They may yow helpe on all manere,
What tyme ye haue to þem mystere,
Or þey haue yowre londe wythowten ryȝt,
Yf the Danes wyth yow fyght.
For yowre men þem schall be redy
And fyght wyth þem well manlye.
Thorow helpe of god all wealdande
We schall haue the hyer hande.'

'Syr,' seyde the kyng, 'wythowten fayle,
The King promised to do so.

1 The first letter in the name of the King of Denmark is in part gone, in consequence of a worm-hole. But if we may conjecture from what remains, it was not A, but E.
Then Duke Merof, starting up,

cautioned the King against Harrawde,

who (he said) had betrayed Guy by selling his son to the Russian merchants.

Harrawde, giving him the lie,
That you haste seyde here nowe,
Loke, you arme the hastelye
To preue thy false testemony.
And y not defende me,
I wyll, that men do hange me.
Thou haste me sclawnduryd of a lesynge
Here before my lorde, the kynge,
That y solde pe chylde Reynbourse,
My lordys sone, syr Gyowne.
Also helpe me god, pat all hath wroght,
That pynge came neuer in my thoht.
The ryche marshandys, be god veray,
Stale pat chylde be nyght away.
Gretter sorowe had neuyr no man,
Then had y, when he was gane,
And sythen y wente and edur thre
To Russye, that feyre cuntre ;
But y cowde not fynde hym in no stedde,
Therfore sorowfull ys my redde.
Be y false or be y noght,
I am for euyr in sclawndur broght.
Before pe kyng y schall hym hyght
And therto my trosthe hym plyght
Owte of thys londe for to fare
And come ageyne neuyr mare,
Or y myght my lordys sone
Fynde, yf he be vndur pe mone.'
† 'Be styllle,' seyde the dewke so felle,
'The deuell pe honge, pat ys in helle.
Whyll you art in yxs cuntre,
Traytory schalt thou holdyn bee.'
† All that harde a nobull knyght,
Syr Edgare, for sothe, he hyght.
Trewhe he was and doghty of hande.
He was steward of Harrowdes lande.
Soche sorowe had pat ylke knyght,
That he ne wyste, what he do myght. 8632

Before the dewke he starte in hye
And spake to hym wyth grete envye.

‘Syr dewke,’ he seyde, ‘be heuyyn kynge,
When pou on my lorde seyste soche pynge,
Thou lyest falsely1 of that dede;
The whycy wyll preue ypon my stede
Allone wyth pe for to fyght:
Then men may see, who hath pe ryght.
The helpe of god be fro me reuyd,
But y smyte of thy heuydde.’2

The kynge comawndyd on pe lyfe,
That pe schulde be no more styfye.
When pe kynge had all seyde
And hys charge on them leyde,
That pe schulde kepe well hys londe
And be euyr redy to hys honde,
Home pen wente the knyghtys free
Enerychone to ther cuntre.

‘Edgare,’ he seyde, ‘dwelle thou here
And kepe my londe wyth thy powere,
Bothe my chylde and my wyfe
And my cyte, wythowten styfye;
For moost of all men tryste y the.’

‘Syr,’ he seyde, ‘gramereye;
But, swete syr, leue thys folye,
And wende wyll y in farre cuntre.
Y schall not blyiine day nor nyght,
Or y see that chylde wyth syght.

1 y in falsely altered from e in MS. 2 MS. hedde

also challenged Merof.

But the King did not allow of any fight.

Harrowde, after his return to Wallingford,
entrusted his family and estate [leaf 217 a, col. 1] to the care of Edgar,

who la vain offered to go himself,
HARRAWDE GOES IN SEARCH OF REYNBROWN.

I was ones seuyn yere
Yn the see a marynere:
In crystyante ther ys no lande,
But y haue be therin dwellande;
And ye be oolde and whytehore:
Ye may not well trauell no more;
Wherefore y prey yow, lene yowre wylle.'

¶ 'Edgare,' heseyde, 'holde the stylle.
For all the gode, that euyr god made,
Y wolde not cese, or1 y hym hade.
Full well y wott, when y am gone,
Myn enmyes wyll come anone
And sege the wyth grete batayle:
Defende þe then, wythowten fayle.'

¶ Now wendyth Harrowde fro that cyte:
A well sorowfull man was he.
Schyppe he fonde and passed yare
And soght Reybourn wyde whare:
In Denmarke and in Yrelonde,
In Norway and in Scotlonde,
Yn Almayne and in Sossyrrye,
In Cesoyne3 and in Turkye
Euyr hys lordys sone he soght,
But, for sothe, he fonde hym noght.
When he myght nowhere fowndyn bee,
Another tyme he wente to the see.
At Costantyne wolde he bee,
And tho come a tempaste on the see
And chased þem þen belyue:
Ryght at Awfryke pey can ryue.
He sawe besyde hym on the londe

1 or all but completely gone (worm-hole).
2 vs omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 200, If they come, we will vs defende.
3 MS. Cesyone.
A swythe feyre cyte stonde:
But the wallys of that towne
To þe þerthe were brokyndowne.
†'Lorde,' seyde a marynere,
'Moche sorow schall we haue here.
We be now fasteynyande
Into the kynge Harkes² lande.
He ys a full ryche kynge
Of golde and sylver and other þynge.
Then seyde Harrawde: 'who owythe þys cuntre,
That ys dystroyed, and thyssyte?'
'Syr,' seyde a schypman,
'Ther ys none so felle to fléme Jordan.'
Y schall yow telle, as y can.
Hyt ys admyrals Presane:
He hatyth crysten men echon.
Full well y wote, he wyll vs slone.
The kynge Harkes hath seged hym here
And stroyed þys londe bothe far and nere.'
† Wyth þat þe paynyms were kene³
And armed them all bedene,
And Harrawde and hys companye
They broght þem to þer lorde⁴ in hye,
And caste them in hys pryson all:
Of mete and drynke they had small.
† When the dewke Merof hyt fonde,
That syr Harrowde was owt of þat londe,
He gedurde grete ooste of Cornwayle
And þe stewarde faste he can assayle;
But he hym defendyed day and nyght
Full well, as a doghty knyght.

1 MS. Bothe. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 201, But, for soth, the wallis of that town.
2 Corrupt for Argus, which the Caius MS. has.
3 Line 8719 is repeated as the next line in MS. thus, Wyth that the paynyms were kene.
4 MS. to þat londe. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 201, And bront hem to her lord in hye.
GUY MEETS A PILGRIM.

He hyred men of that londe
And full rychely he them fonde.
He gaue þem golde and ryche tresoure\(^1\)
And kepyd þat londe wyth grete honoure.
All that yere owte and owte
He defendyd hym, as a knyght full stowte.
He gaue the dewke batayle stronge
And slewe hys men euyr amonge.
A thousande were there slayne
Of the dewkys men, certayne.
The dewke myght spede nothynge
Of that ylke longe segeynge:
To Cornwall he went agayne
And lefte þere hys men wyth schame slayne.

Now wyll we speke of syr Gye,
As we fynde in storye:
At all seyntes he had bene
In Costantyne þorow and bedene.
He thought in hys harte yare
Into Ynglonde for to fare:
Hys wey he hath sone tane.
So longe on hys wey hath he gane
Bothe wyth trauell and wyth payne,
That comen he was to Almayne.

\(1\) As he came on a day,
In that wylde cuntraye
A cros he fonde standynghe
And thervadur a pylgryme syttynghe.
He made sorowe on all thynge,
And euyr he seyde wyth mornynghe:
\(2\) ‘Alas, my sorowe, þat arte\(^2\) so stronge,
And my lyfe, that lastynghe so longe.’
\
\(2\) When Gye þat sawe, he had pyte
And seyde to hym wyth herte free:

\(^1\) MS. tresure.
\(^2\) The Caius MS. p. 203, has ys, which appears to be right.
THE PILGRIM HAS FORMERLY BEEN A RICH KNIGHT.

who, asked

‘Y bydde the for my loue nowe,
So god the slake of thy sorowe,
Thou me telle wyth gode harte,

whence he came

Fro whens 
and who he was,

‌

after some

hesitation,

‘Yf y tolde the anow ryght,
Thou wohdyst of me haue pyte,

and who he was,

Thou Gye answeryd and seyde: ‘nay,

[leaf 217 b, col. 2]

Y may be conforte, par ma faye.
 Par aventure y myght pe say,
How 

that he had

told Guy

that he had

that he had

formerly been a

rich knight,

formerly been a

rich knight,

And castels and towres in my hande.

but that he now

had not a half-
penny left to buy

food with.

but that he now

had not a half-
penny left to buy

food with.

Of gode y had grete plente:
All 

that he had

formedly been a

rich knight,

all of londe had drede of me.
In crystendome 

But y was preyed of my hande.

That he had not a halpenny left to buy

food with.

now haue y not an halpenye
My mete nor drynke for to bye.

nowe a pore caytyfe :

Now haue y not an halpenye
My mete nor drynke for to bye.

Y am nowe a pore caytyfe :

Y am nowe a pore caytyfe :

Hyt ys wonder, y hae my lyfe.'

Hyt ys wonder, y hae my lyfe.'

For sorowe myght he speke no more,

For sorowe myght he speke no more,

1 how that omitted in MS. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 203, All

my sorrow how that hyt befell.
THE PILGRIM IS EARL TYRRY.

Lo here my sorowe, let be py fare:
Aske me now of thys no mare,
What y hyght or fro whens y came;
For to telle me thynkyth hyt schame.
Yf y my lyfe to pe schulde telle,
To longe here schulde y dwelle.
Where to aske ye me soche thynge?
Thou mayste not me fro sorowe brynge.
I had lenyr haue some mete;
For y hane grete myster to etc.'

Gye seyde: 'pylgryme, so mote pou the,
And for god dys doue in trynyte,
Telle me py name, and lye noght,
And why pou art in soche state broght.
And Iesu, that ys myn assyawnce,
May happo to gene pe ry3t gode chaunce.
And owre mete schall y bye:
3yt y haue lefte a penye.'
He answeryd: 'y schall the saye.
I wyll not lye, be my faye.

I was ryche, syr, sekerlye:
Now am y a wreche and a caytyfe,
Me forthynkyth, pat y haue lyfe.
All Loren was to me sworne:
In that londe y was borne.
I had a felowe, pat hyght Gyown:
Sythen god suffurde hys pascioun,
Was neuer, pat he, a trewer borne.
To be hys fere y haue sworne:
A trewer man was neuer beforne.
In Warwyke þere was he borne.
We were felows trewthepleght:
We louyd well, hyt was ryght.
Twyes he sauyd me fro the dyeng:
He louyd me ouyr all other þynge;
BARRARDE A POWERFUL MAN.

Tyll hyt befelle, that syr Gye,
That was my felowe trewlye,

Slewe the dewke of Payuye:
He had done hym velenye.

Amonge hys knyghtys euyrychone
Gye hym slewe and passed anon

And broght my leman wyth hym¹ dere,
That y louyd on all manere.

¶ That dewke had a cosyne,
That ys preuyd a felle hyne:

Barrarde ys hys ryght name.
Lorde god geue hym moche schame.
He was then but a squyere
And serued the emperere.

The emperowre louyd hym wele
And gaine hym Payuye euerly dele.
Thys ylke Barrarde tho beganne

For to be a prowde man,
So prowde and so felle,
That no man myght be hym dwelle.

In pe worlde ys none hys pere,
None so stalworth nor none so fere.

Men drede hym more allone,
Then an hundurd knyghtys eechone.
Yf any man were armed wele
Odur in yron or in stele,

And he hyt hym in the felde,
But he kepte hym wyth hys schelde,
Wyth pe myght of hys swyrdre dynte
The hed schulde of, or hyt stynte.

Thou harde neuer speke of soche a knyght:
In all pys worlde pe ys none so wyght
Nor none so stronge in thys lande,
But, and he hyt hym wyth hys hande,

¹ Perhaps we ought to read wyth hym my leman. The Caius MS. p. 205, has, He brought from hym his leman dere.
He wolde breke hys neck in two
Wyth oon dynte wythowten moo.
Barrarde ys so felle a page
And so stowte of hys corage,
Ther ys no knyght in all hys londe
Nor none so wyght of hys honde,
And Barrarde were wrofe, þogh he were stowte,
When he sawe hym loke abowte,
But for feere he schulde quake
And flee away for hys sake.
He ys wyght of hys honde
And sore dreed þorow þe londe.

Steward hym made þe emperowre
And gaue hym feys to hys honowre.
Men drede hym more allone,
Then hys barons euerychone.

Yf ther be dewke or erle in lande,
But þey be to hym boweande,
The steward Avyll anone ryse
And dystroye hym on all wyse:
He schulde anone wyth hym be slane
Or ellys to pryson sone be tane.

Dewke, erle or nobull knyght,
Were he neyruþ so ryche a wyght,
Thogh he were prynce or kynge,
And he" greuyd hym anythyng,
He wolde hym brynge vnto the grownde
And make hym pore in schorte stownde.

† Hyt befelle, that the emperowre
Helde a cowncell of grete valowre
Of erlys, dewkys and barons

¹ MS. þey.
This Barrarde accused Tyrry

of having caused Oton's death.

Tyrry challenged him to combat,

but being unable to find any securities,

And to me he made somons,
And thedur y wente wyth grete meyne:
An hundred knyghtys came wyth me.
When y came before the kynge, Barrarde me askyd of soche thynge
And seyde, Oton porow my meyne Was broght to dethe, sekerlye.
¶ Forthe y starte full hardelye To defende me of felonye
And 3une my glone before þe kynge To fyght wythowten dwellynge Agenste hym and all odur men,
That cowde oght sey agenste me þen.¹
The emperowre hyt toke full ryght And set a day, when we schulde fyght.

But being unable to find any securities, At that cowncell fonde y no man, That durste be my borowe than, For drede of the dewke Barrarde. The emperowre þen helde me harde. I was lonyd more, then he, But he was drad in that cuntre. All my frendys dysseyuyd me: Ther durste not oon my borowe bee. I was sory at the laste: All dud me fayle, that y dud aske. Thorow cowncell of Barrarde I was then bestadd harde.²

he was imprisoned,

and his possessions seized.

Having suffered in prison for some time, I was then bestadde harde.²

The emperowre put me at hys wylle In hys pryson for to spylle.
He sesyd then my londe soone:
He wolde my wyfe þen haue fordone, But sche hyed awey on hur stede, I wot not, whodur, so god me rede. ¶ When y was in pryson thare,
Nyght and day y was in care.

¹ MS. pan. ² MS. harde bestadde. See the note.
Thorow me he wened to wynne
Gye of Warwyke wyth some gynne. 8940
Were he vengyd vpon Gyownw
Wyth some maner of treson,
Soone pen aftur schulde y be dedde:
For me schulde go no golde redde. 8944
Yn that pryson was y longe
And suffurde there peynes stronge.
I sawe neuer there no lyght
No more, pen hyt had be nyght.
Y ete neuyr there my fylle
Nor spake neuer pere wyth men1 at wylle.

My frendes came at the laste
And preyed pe emperowre for me faste 8952 he was at last set free by the inter-
And gae hym gyftes grete ynowe
And to Barrard they dud also,
That y myst wende fro pryson
Thorowe thys condycyon,
That y schulde wende to seke Gyownw
To euery lande and euery towne:
I schulde not reste day nor nyght,
Tyll y had fonde patt gentyll knyght,
And brynge hym to the emperowre
To defende hym, as a traytowre,
Of that grete owtrage
Before all hys baronage
And to defende me that day
Of pytge, patt men wolde to me say.
Then y wente wyth grete care
And in mony a londe haue y fare.
I haue soght Gye in fere2
Thorow Inglonde far and nerc.
When y came pere and fonde hym noght,

1 MS. me. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 200:
   Spake i neuer ther wyth man my fyll.
2 Corrupt. See the note.
nor Harrawde. Then on Harrowde was all my thought;
And bothe were gone fro that lande,
And that was wyckyd tythande.

Men seyde, Harrowde bothe nyght and day
Soght hys lordys sone, that was away,
And Gye was in exsyle wente.

Then me þoght, þat y was schente.
Ther was no man, there y dud goo,
That cowde telle me of þem two.

And sythen haue y soght Gye þe fre
In mony a straunge cunter
And y fonde neuer man be þe way,
That oght of Gye cowde say.

I can not thynke, but he ys dedde,
And therfore sorowfull ys my redde.'
Therwythall he wepyd sare:
He was full of sorowe and care.

¶ When Gye sye Tyrrye, þe knyght,
That was so doghty and so wyght,
That he louyd so trewlye,
He lokyd on hym soberlye.
He was pore for þe nones,
He had noþyne to hylle hys bones:
Hys lymmes were bare and euyll beseyn,
That some tyme were clad in scarlet in greyne.

For dole Gye felle to the grownde:
Ofte he swoynd in that stownde.
When Tyrrye hym sye falle to grownde,
He toke hym vp in that stownde.

Tyrrye seyde: 'be of gode harte.
Me þynkyth, þys euyll holdyþ þe smarte.
Telle me, yf hyt be thy wylle,
How longe ye haue had thys euyll.
Hyt¹ ys the fallynge euyll ryght,
Therfore y hate hyt wyþ my myght.'

¹ MS. Hys.
'Hytye,' quod Gye, 'longe not agone,
Sythe of thyse euyll y had none.'

'If Tho seyde Tyrrye vnto Gye than:
Hytyes greuawnc to euery man.
To day twelfmonyth, for sope, hyt was
Sythe y for Gye toke the pase,
And sythen y dwellyd neuer a day,
There y on the nyght laye.
I haue bene ay travelande,
What be see and be lande.
Hyty was me tolde wythowte fayle,
At Spyre\(^1\) schulde be a cowssayle
Of the emperowre Raynerere,
And all hys baronage schall be ſere:
Ther ys none in that cuntre,
But he schall at ſat cownceU bee.
Hyty\(^2\) ys my terme daye
To come, yf any happe be may
To brynge Gye in my haunte,
Yf that he were lyueande.
Yf y fynde hym nowhare,
I may not come in ſat launte no mare.
Yf y come, y schall be dedde,
And therfore y can no redde,
Whedur y schall take ſe wey fro ſen)
Or ellys thedur turne agetyne.'

'Gye hym harde all sorowande:
Vnethe myʒt he vpyrght stande.
'Lorde,' he seyde, 'of myght stronge,
Why haue y leuyd ſus so longe,
That y see hym thus euylly dyght
And thus pore a nobull knyght.
A trewar felowe, ſen he was oon,'

\(^1\) MS. syprys. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 211:
*At Spire ther shuld be a gret cowncoyle.*

\(^2\) MS. ʒyt.
Guy was determined to revenge his fellow.

Was never made of fleshe and boon.
Hangyd be y thys ylke daye,
But y venge hym, and y maye.
1 Now may y speke my fylle:
I haue my spyrytes somewhat at wylle.
But y reue Barrarde hys lyfe
Odur wyth swyrde or wyth knyfe

And venge Tyrrye, my gode felowe,
God let neuer me of gode knowe.'

Then spake Gye to syr Tyrre:
' Pylgryme, be not sorye.
Hyt may the helpe nothynge
Sorowe to make or mornynge.
No man may wete, be my hode,
That we wyll prone for any gode.
We wyll drawe merchande,
That we may here tythande,
That we may the better bee.'

'Syr,' sayde Tyrrye, 'so schall hyt be.'

They set off for Spire,

If they toke the way to the cyte,
And a sory man was Tyrre.
Gye goyth Tyrrye comfortynge,
But in hys harte he made morenyng.
Gye to wepe forbare nothynge,
When he sawe Tyrrye so faste wepynge:
He couyrde hys face wyth hys slaveye,
That Tyrrye schulde not knowe hys peyne.

They were gone but myles thre
In the way to that cyte:
' Lorde,' sayde Tyrrye, 'what schall y do?
Heuynes ys comen me too.
But y slepe here a whyle,
I dye, or y haue gone a myle.'

'Tyrre felt so sleepy
'Syr,' sayde Gye, 'lye down stylle

1 Corrupt. See the note.
2 Seems corrupt. See the note.
A throwe and slepe all by fylle.
I schall for pe loue of the
At thy hedde reste me.
‘Syr,’ sayde Tyrrye, ‘gramercye!
Thou doyst to me grete curtesye.’

Now lythe Tyrree on pe grownde
And slepyd but a lytull stownde.
Also faste as Tyrrye dud slepe,
Also faste can Gye wepe.

As Tyrrye lay in slomerynge,
Owt of hys mowe went e a bynge
Also whyte, as any armyne.
Gye lokyd theron wele and fyne.

To an hylle went hyt than
And in at an hole hyt ranne.
Hyt dwellyd not longe, os y yow say:
Ageyn hyt came soon pat same day.
In at pe mowthe dud hyt goo,
There as hyt came froo.
When Gye had pat syght sene,
He had wondur, what hyt myst mene.

Tyrree wakenyd soone thore:
Vp he rose and sykyd sore.
‘A, lorde,’ he sayde, ‘heuyn kynge,
I haue a grete wonderynge.
Me poght, y was on a hylle gone
And y fonde pere a roche of stone:
Full hyt was of golde redde,
And there lay a dragon dedde.
A bryght swyrde be hym lay:
Ther ys none bettur in pe worlde pys day.
Also me thoght, that syr Gye
Was here be me, full sekerlye,
And my hed in hys armes lay:
Me poght, my sorowe was away.’

1 mene altered from men in MS. Cf. 8400.
Guy, interpreting the dream,

Tho seyde Gye: ‘my dere frende,
Thorow þe grace of god so hende
Schalt þou wynne þorow Gyowne
All thy londe, castell and towne.
We schall fare wele þys ylke day:
To spyr þe gate take we þe way.¹
But þurste y rede, þat we abyde,
And we wyll wende to þe hylle besyde,
There, þou þoght, þat þat tresure laye.
Yf that we hyte fynde maye,
Hyt may vs helpe on all manere,
And therof we haue mystere.’
‘I graunte,’ quod Tyrrye, ‘þe þys day:
Goo we þedur wythowte ony more delaye.’

There they really found

¶ To the hylle þey came hastelye
And fonde the hole, certenlye,
As Tyrrye had thought beforehande:
The tresure, þe swyrde þere þey fonde.
The swyrde was styff þynghe:
Owte of þe sche þe Gye hyte drogh.
‘God of heuyn,’ seyde Gye þan,
‘Was ther neyth herystan man,’
That had any soche bronde.
Y trowe, hyte came fro far londe.’
The poynte was couyrde everyle dele
Wyth bryght golde gayly wele.
Of þat swyrde was Gye fayne:
He put hyte into þe skabarde agayne,
And sythen he seyde to Tyrreye:
‘That tresure, þat þou seyst there lyne,
Take hyte vnto thy poste;
For þe swyrde schall byde wyth me.’
The seyde Tyrrye: ‘at yowre wylle.
Of tresure haue y my fylle.

But at that time

Ther ys so moche dole in my thought,

¹ Corrupt. See the note.
That of no tresure yf y noght.
To that cyte wyll we gone:
Me þynkyth, we be to longe fro home.'
¶ 'I graunte,' in haste seyde syr Gye:
Bothe they wente forthe in hye.
Then wenyd Tyrrye knowen to haue be
Of some man, þat hym had see.
When they came to that cyte,
A sory man was erle Tyrrye.
They were harbarowde at þe townes ende
And aftur mete dud they sende.
¶ Gye rose vp, full hardelye,
And lefte hys swyrde wyth Tyrrye.
He hyed faste to the towre
To speke wyth the emperowre.
The emperowre fro the churche come,
Gye hym kepyd sone and anon;
And Gye hym grett hendelye,
As a man, that cowde of curtesye.
'God saue' he seyde, 'syr emperowre.
Ye be a man of grete valowre,
And y am pore and of far cuntre:
I aske the gode for charyte.
Of yowre helpe y haue mystere,
As ye may se, in all manere.'
The emperowre answeryd: 'gladlye
I wyll þe helpe, be seynt Marye.
To the pales come wyth me:
Thou schalt haue mete to plese þe.'
¶ When þey were comen to þe halle,
The emperowre and hys meyne all,
The lordys to the mete yode,
And Gye there before þem stode.
'Pylgryme,' seyde the emperowre,
'Telle me, y prey þe pur amowre.
1 he blotted out before þe in MS.
Thou semeste trauelde for to be:
Where were thou borne and in what cuntre?
'Syr,' he seyde, 'ye schall vndurstande,
That y haue be in mony a lande:
In Jerusalem and in Surrye
And in Costantyne pe nobull, sekerlye.'

Whepte men peere of me?
'Syr,' he seyde, 'ye schall here:
Schame and skathe on all manere,
When ye thorow wyckyd cowmceyle
Of yowre steward, pat may not avayle,
That ye banysched Tyrrye, pe kny3t,
And many odur wythowten ryght.
Therfore of pe ys spokyn schame
And in euyr lorde moche blame.
Ye do yowreselue moche dyshonowre
To leue soche a losengeowre.'

Barrarde harde, that Gye sayde,
And he beganne to gene a brayde.
He fared, as a wode man,
And wolde haue smeten Gye than,
But he hym helde, pat stode hym bye,
That he dud Gye no vylanype.

He seyde: 'thou lyest, traytowe.
Yf hyt were not for the dyshonowre
Of my lorde, the emperowre,
Thou schuldyst haue a scharpe schowre.
I schulde schake py berde so sore,
That thy tetha schulde falle me before
Thou art a lyar and pat a stronge:
Thys lyfe haste thou vsyd longe.
If y the fynde wythowte pe towne,

1 may in the same hand over my3t blotted out.
2 For That ye we ought perhaps to read Haue. Cf. the
Caius MS, p. 217, Hath haenesshyd Terry, the noble kny3t.
I schall þe caste in stronge presowne.
Thys vii yere þou schalt not passe away:
Thou schalt not wytt, when hyt ys day.
Men schall so chastyse soche glotons
For to myssaye gentyll barons.'

Thou schalt not wytt, Avhen hyt ys day.
Men schall so chastyse soch glotons
For to myssaye gentyll barons.'

Guy engages to fight for Tyrry.

Guy rejoined that it would be a shame for such a lord to do any harm to a pilgrim.

Guy rejoined
BARRARDE IS CONFIDENT OF THE VICTORY.

That was þe felle and false gloton.¹

Gye seyde to the emperowre:
'Take here my wedde, for your honowre;
For wyth hym wyll y fyght
To helpe Tyrrye in hys ryght.'

The Steward

The Steward was sure lie should strike off his adversary’s head.
Guy asked the Emperor
to provide him with armour.

That was full of farvente yre.

'Pylgryme,' he seyde, 'þou art stowte
And bolde þerto, wythowten dowte,
Whyl þat þou wageyst þys batayle.
I am seker, wythowten fayle,
The deuell hath bedyn the
And hedur he hath broght þe
For to do þys same dede,
And y schall quyte the thy mede.
The grace of god be fro me reuyd,
But y Smyte of soone thy heuydde.’²

'Yef emperowre,' seyde Gyowyn,
‘Herkyn to my resoun.
Comen y am fro far cuntre:
Here ys no man, þat knowyth me.
Armer haue y none redye
Nor no sylyur none wyth to bye.
Ye muste for þe ordur of knyght
Helpe the pore in hys ryght
And in hys mystere do hym socowre:
Hyt ys mekyll for youre honowre.’
'To the emperowre be þey gane:
Bothe þer weddys hath he tane,
And syþen he comawndyd þem full ryȝt,³
þerly þat þey schulde be dyght.
He wyll hymselfe the batell see
And bad, þerly þat hyt schulde bee.

¹ Probably corrupt. See the note.
² MS. heedd.
³ t in ryȝt all but illegible in MS.
The Emperor committed Guy to the care of his daughter.

All men admired Guy's courage.

Barrarde was ready for the fight.

Guy was armed by the Princess, and went secretly for his sword.

\[1\] After this line follows the catchword \textit{To a chaumbur sche} in another hand.
When he was brought into the presence of the Emperor,

he looked so doughty

that all wondered whether he was

the pilgrim of yesterday.

The Emperor recapitulated the occasion of this fight.

It was to take place on a hill near the city.

GUY LOOKS QUITE ANOTHER MAN.

¶ When sche had armed hym wele, \textit{pat} maye,

On all manere, that he cowde saye,

Sche broght hym before \textit{pe} emperowre.

He was of grete bewte and valowre

All, that lokyd on syr Gye,

Of hym they had farlye.

He was a semely knyght,

When he was armed ryght.

All swere be seynt Rychere,

Hyt was neuyr the palmer,

That toke \textit{pe} batell \textit{wyth} Barrarde to fyght;

For he semed a doghty knyght.

¶ ‘Lordyngys,’ seyde the emperowre,

‘All, that be at thys honowre,

Thes two knyghtys, \textit{pat} stonden here,

Be men of grete powere.

A batell they hauw waged here,

Ye wote all, on what manere.

Thys pylgryme, \textit{pat} stondyth me bye,

Wyll defende erle Tyrrye

Of felonye and treson,

That he never slewe \textit{pe} dewke Qton,

Agenste the dewke Barrande,

That ys a champyon felle \textit{and} harde

For hys cosyns dedde,

That he was slayne porow hys redde.

We schall see at thys batayle,

Who hath \textit{pe} wronge, \textit{wythowten} fayle.'

The lordys seyde: ‘we assente,

We graunte to hyt \textit{wyth} gode entente.’

¶ They wente \textit{pedur}, \textit{pe} batell shulde bee,

On an hylle besyde the cyte.

The boke was broght \textit{pe}m before

And, when \textit{pe}y had \textit{per} othes swore,

To the hylle dud they gone

And smeten\textit{w} togedur \textit{and} that anon\textit{w}.
There beganne a stronge batayle:
Eyther other haste dud assayle.
They smote togedur on helmes bryght,
And there beganne a stronge fyght.
They brake bothe sterop and paytrelle
And all the harnes of ther sadelle.
Ther styfe hawberkys wolde not ryue.
Of ther stedys pey dud downe dryue.
They stode on fote bothe,
But soone pey began to waxe wrothe.
On per stedys they lepe stowte:
Nayther had of odur dowte.
Then pey drewe per swyrdys stronge
And fagh togedur swythe longe.
The cantcls of ther scheldes
Flew into the feldes.

Gye was armed well thore,
But Barrarde had wel more:
He had two helmes styfe and bryght
And two hawberkys for drede of fyght
Rychelye sett wyth precyus stones
All abowte for the nones.
They seyd abowte euery man,
That Gye was no 3erthely man:
He was no man 3erthelye,
He was an aungell, seekerlye.
Whedur of them was hardear,
Ther wyste no man, bat was thare.

All, bat were in bat cyte, wythowten fayle,
Came to see that batayle:
Men, women and chykder also
And freres and nonnes thedur dud goo.
Lesse and more in that cyte
Came that batell for to see,
But all oonlye syr Tyrrye
In a churche was prunelye

The battle was very obstinate.

Barrarde had two helmets and two coats of mail.

All said Guy was no earthy man, but an angel.

All inhabitants of the city were spectators, except Tyrry, who was in a church praying to God.
To god preyng, pat he wolde here
And hym to helpe in hys mystere.

In came a preste syngynge
And fonde Tyrrye there lyyng.
' Pylgryme,' seyde the preste thyn."' Thyrrye.
'I trowe, thou art a holy man.
Wherefore wylt thy not zondere goo
To see þe fght of knyhtys twoo?
A pylgryme ys the oon knyght
And for erle Tyrrye doyth he fght.'
' Who ys þe pylgryme?' quod erle Tyrrye.
' I wot not,' quod he, 'sekerlye.
He ys doghty in the felde:
Brokyn he hath þe dewkys schelde.'

Though afraid, lest he should be known, went to the place of the fight.

Seeing the Steward bleeding, he was very glad.

Tyrry wondered if the pilgrim was the same that he had met with the day before.

He was reminded of Guy.
Then for Gye he wepyd sore.  
To churche he turned wythowten more.  
Ofte he preyed god that day  
To helpe hym, as he well may.

* The batell lasted swythe the longe  
Fro morowe vnto euynsonge.

They wolde not let of ther fyght,  
Tyll hyt came to the nyght.

When they lackyd lyght\(^1\) of day,  
They wyste not, what they my\(\tilde{n}\)t say.

Messengerys were sente:

To the emperowre they wente.

They tolde hym, *pat* hyt was nyght,  
They myght see no more to fyght.

* The emperowre clepyd in *pat* stowre  
Fowre barons of grete honowre.

‘Lordyngys,’ he seyde, ‘take Barrarde nowe  
And kepe hym, as ye mowe

As in yow y affye,  
3ylde hym to me 3erly,  
And y schall kepe my pylgryme wele,  
Tyll hyt be day, so haue y hele.  
Then schall they togedur goo:

Men schall see of them twoo,  
Whether schall haue the vyctorye  
Thorow helpe of seynt Marye.’

* They toke Barrarde, pe nobull knyght,  
And kept hym, as they myght,  
And the emperowre toke syr Gye  
And kepyd hym tendurlye.

The dewke Barrarde, pe fals gloton,  
Bethoght hym of a treson.

Fowre cosyns, that he hadde,  
Preuely he them badde,

---

\(^1\) MS, *sight*. Cf. the Caius MS, p. 225:

*For they lackyd the lyght of the daye.*
That they schulde to be courte goo  
The pylumere pere for to sloo.  
They were armed and that anow  
And came to be courte everychow.  
Forthe they yede full prenylye,  

They found him,  
Tyll they came pere, as was syr Gye.  
Gye lay in a lofte bedde  

as well as his keepers, fast asleep.  
Wyth golde cloysys well yspredde.  
Hys kepears were faste slepeande,  
And every man on pe bedde leyd hande.  

They took Guy, without awaking him, on his bed,  
The bedde they toke vp thare  
And to the see they hyt bare.  
But euyr slepyd syr Gye:  
God of hym haue mercye!  

and threw him into the sea.  
They caste the bedde into pe see:  
But god helpe, drowned had he bee.  
Hyt was caste wyth a wawe  
Vp a whyle and done a thrawe.  

Guy, when he awoke,  
Gye wakyd at the laste  
And hys hedde vp he caste.  

[leaf 222 a, col. 2]  
He sawe pe sterres bryght schynande:  
On no syde sawe he no lande,  
But brode watur all abowte.  
Therfore he had grete dowte.  

saw only stars  

and water.  

He prayed to God fervently.  
'God,' he seyde, 'all weldande,  
That stabulde bope watur and lande,  
Who hath done to me pys dede?  
Lorde, y faght for no mede,  
For golde nor syluyr, pou doyst knowe,  
But for my trewe felowe  
To delyuyr hym of paryle,  
That hath be in exsyle.  
Some tymhe he was a doghty knyght  
And now he ys a wrechyd wyght.  
Ageyne Barrarde y toke the fyght  
For to haue getyn Tyrreye hys ryght.
GUY SAVED BY A FISHERMAN.

Yf y had that traytowr slayn,
Tyrrye\(^1\) schulde haue hys lande agayne.
I am but dedde, well y wote:
Thorow me he getyth\(^2\) no bote.

And all ys\(^3\) thorowe Barrart:
God let hym neuer of blysse haue part.'

Wyth that came a fyscher
In a bote Gye full nere.
What he was, he bad hym say,
And whethyr he leuyd on goddys lay.

Vp he heuyd hys hedde, Gye,
And cryed the fyscher mercye.

'My frende,' he seyde, 'hau no drede:
I leue in god, so he me spede.
Knowest \(\text{you}\) oght of a fyght
Betwene a pylgryme and a knyght?'

'\(\text{ysse,}\) quod the fyscher, 'y sawe hyt,
The batell, to the darke nyght.
The emperowre parted them late
And made to kepe \(\text{hem,}\) wele y wate.'

'I am,' quod Gye, 'the pylgryme,
That fagh \(\text{pen}\) agenste hym.
We were partyd 3ystur nyght:
We no longer myght see to fyght.
Into a chaumbur was y broght:
Of no treson\(\text{y}\) ne thougth.
Ynto a bedde was y done:
I was wery and slepyd soone.

Now am y here, but y not, howe.
My dere frende, helpe me now.
For thy trewthe and thy lewte
Haue thow some mercy of me.'

The fyscher for hym was sorye

---

\(^1\) The first \(y\) in \(\text{Tyrrye}\) altered from \(h\) in MS.
\(^2\) \(y\) in \(\text{getyth}\) altered from \(h\) in MS.
\(^3\) Part of \(h\) blotted out before \(ys\).
GUY CANNOT BE FOUND.

And toke hym into hys bote hym bye
And ledde hym home pat ylke nyght
And kepte hym wele wyth all hys myght.

9524

And masse he harde in grete hye.
Sythen he came into hys halle
And wyth hym hys barons all.

9528

He bad brynge to hym Barrardyn.
And afterwarde hys pylgryme.
Fowre barons forthe dud wende
And broght pe dewke, as men hende.

9532

To the emperowre they dud say,
That the pylgryme was away:
Bothe was awey he and hys bedde.
The knyghtys, pat stale hym, were fledde. 1

9536

Ther wyste no man, where he was done.
The emperor was wrothe sone
And sware be god and seynt Marye,
That they Schulde be hangyd hye,
That had betrayed hys pylgryme
And hys wardens, be seynt Martyne.

9540

Tho he spake wyth grete yre
To the dewke, that stowte syre.
‘Dewke,’ he seyde, ‘wythowte stryfe,
Brynge hym forthe vpon py lyfe,
That pou haste takyn in py kepeyng,
Or y schall juge the for to hynge.

9548

Dede or quyck brynge hym to me:
Thou haste hym slayne, wele y see.’

9552

Thou haste hynge well, y see.

1 Corrupt. Cf. the Cainus MS. p. 230:
And hys wardceyns were all fled.
And kept yowre lande to yowre prowé:
Wolde ye now thus juge me?
Ye schall not so, so mote y the.
Yf here be any man so hardye,
That dar hyt prowé and byde þerby,
I schall hym wyth my swyrde so smyte,
That hys hedde schall of tyte.
And ye, that haue þus juged me,
Y schall yow teche, so mote y the:
Wynde y schall to Lombardye
And gedur my power, hardelye,
And thorow þy lande come ageyne,
And all, þat y fynde, schall be slayne.
I schall dystroye the every dele
And all thy londe, so haue y hele.'

The emperowre harde þys wele
And knewe hys maners euery dele.
He beganne to waxe wrothe
And often sware then hys othe,
Yf he went, he schulde be slane,'
And he myght hym fynde or tane.

Then came forthe the fyshere
And sayde to the emperere:
'Syr, y prey yow pur charyte,
Here me, yf yowre wylle bee.
Of that pylgryme y can sey,
Where he ys, be thys day.'
'My frende,' seyde the emperowre,
'Saye me, so god geue þe honowre.
Thou schalt haue, be he not dedde,
An hundurd besawntes of golde redde.'

Tho seyde þe fyshier: 'herkyn me trewlye;
For, syr, y wyll not to yow lye.
To nyght late was y gone
On þe sce to fyshche allone.

1 M accusation.
THE COMBAT RECOMMENCES.

I fonde a loft bedde fletynge  
And therin a knyght lygynge.  
Y askyd hym, what he was,  
And he me tolde in that case,  
That he was that pylgryme,  
That fagh wyth dewke Barrardyne.  
Y leyde hym in my bote wythynne  
And laddde hym home to myn ynne  
And haue kepynd hym ys nyght.  
Sende aftur hym anon ryght.'  
'My frende,' seyde the emperowre,  
'Thou schalt haue grete honowre.'

The Emperor sent for him,  
Aftur pe pylgryme sone he sente,  
And he came at hys comawndemente.  
Hastelye, wythowten fayle,  
They were do to batayle.

and the combat recommenced.  
Now togedur can they goo:  
They dalte strokys many tho  
And wyth pe swyrdys pere of stele  
They smetyn togedur wele.  
Hyt was wonder for to see:  
A stronger fyght myght none bee.  
They fagh tyll vnderne of pe day:  
'Thys ys grete wonder,' they can say.

Barrarde  
The dewke was full of felonye  
And smote Gye wyth envye  
And repulde hys face and hys chynne  
And of hys cheke all the skynne.  
Downe \(^1\) be pe schoulde pe stroke dud glyde:  
Hyt brake many a mayle vnyrde.  
Of pe schelde brake a quartere,  
Os he wolde \(^2\) take hys swyrde hym nere.  
Gye felle also skete  
Bothe on hondys and on fete.

---

\(^1\) e in *Downe* illegible in consequence of an ink-blot.  
\(^2\) MS. *schulde*. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 233:  
As he wold draw hys sword nere.
BARRARDE KILLED.

If Gye starte vp, as sparke of fyre,  
And smote Barrarde with grete yre.  
He smote hym on pe helme so there,  
That awey flewe a quartere  
And of hys odur helme1 wyttheall,  
And made hym to pe grownde falle.  
Wyth hys swyrd he smote also  
Bothe hys hawberkys quyte in two,  
Hys arme and hys schoulder bothe  
Fro the bodye, wytthowten othe:  
Thorow hys bowels also hyt yode,  
Two fote into pe grounde hyt glode.  
Downe he felle to the grownde  
And dyed in a lytull stownde.  
All the men, that stode besyde,  
Had wonder of that stroke vnyde  
And seyde, no man in jerthe lyueande  
Myght smyte soche a stroke wyth hande.  

¶ On the jothe Gye set hym downe  
And seyde: 'Barrarde, false felowne,  
Nowe art thou here forlorne,  
A lack, that esuer thou was borne!  
A boldear knyght was neuer lyueande  
Nor a doghtyar of hys hande:  
Yf thou a false traytowr ne were,  
In all pys worlde had not be yby pere.'  
All, that esuer abowte hym stode,  
Sayde, he was of sarsyns2 blode.  

Guy ys to the emperowre gone  
And to pe barons everychone  
And askyd, yf Tyrrye my3t be quyte  
And of all chalengeys tyte,

But then Guy, starting up with great wrath,

1 Struck off an arm and shoulder of the steward, and wounded his stomach besides,

2 That so bold a knight.

3 As the context is, And cannot be right. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 234, Of all perell and all dyspyte.

MS. schelde. Cf. the Caius MS. p. 233: As on that other helme wythall.

2 sarsyns, at least, corrupt. See the note.

3 As the context is, And cannot be right. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 234, Of all perell and all dyspyte.
And all cryed wyth oon voyce:
'Ye, be the holy croys,'  
All schall be forgenyn here
Wyth the wylle of owre emperere.'  
The emperowre answeryd also tyte:
'I graunte well, that he be quyte.
All forgene y here Tyrrye
My euyll wylle and my malycolye.
Y schall deluyyr hym all hys lande
And all þe honowre into hys hande.
And y wyste, where he wore,
Y schulde deluyyr hym lesse and more.'  
Gye answeryd: 'yf y may,
Ye schall hym see thys ylke day.'
'My frende,' he seyde, 'hastelye
Go seke me erle Tyrrye.'  
He wente all the cyte abowte
And soght Tyrrye wythynne and owte.
At the laste he dud hym fynde
In a churche faste prayinge.
'Pyse vp,' seyde Gye, 'pur charyte,
The emperowre hath sende aftur þe.'
Vp he helde hys hedde, Tyrrye,
And seyde: 'lordé Iesu Cryste, þy mercy!
In whome may any man trowe
For to telle hys cowncell nowe?
Thou semed trewe for to bee
And now þou haste bewryed me:
To the emperowre þou haste tolde
And to Barrarde, that ys so bolde.
Now muste þy dye, or þy ete mete:
Thou haste takyn gyftes grete.  
Thou haste me betrayed and do me schame.
Allas, þat euere thou knewe my name.
I wende, þou haddyst be full trewe:

1 MS. cros.  2 MS. Empere.
Tyrre learns Barrarde's death.

Wele away, that y the knewe!
Y schall wende now wyth the:
Yf y dye, thou arte gylte.
Me thynkyth lothe to wende wyth pe.
God of me haue pyte.'

Tho seyde Gye: 'Tyrre, make gode chere.
Thou schalt now newe tythyngys here:
The dewke Barrarde, he ys dedde
(Of hys councell y can no redde)
Thorow a pylgryme, hardelye,
That the defendyd of felonye.'

When pe before pe emperowre came,
Yf had Tyrre drede of blame.
To the emperowre spake Gye:
'Lo, here ys erle Tyrre.'

Tho seyde Tyrre: 'thus am y:
Longe haue y be thus drerye.
Y haue be in sorowe stronge:
Thys odur halfe yere me p03t to longe.
Y had neuyr reste a day,
But in wo trauelde aye
To seke Gye, yf he my3t be fownde,
Far in many an vncowthe londe.
In Ynglonde there harde y say,
There he was borne and norysched ay,
He was wente in exsyle:
Therfore the londe was in paryle.
And now here y saye, the pylgryme
(Haue he goddys beneson and myw),
That hath pe dewke Barrard schent:
Y weene, god hym hedur sente.'

And tho on kneyes felle Tyrre
And seyde: 'emperowre, mercye!'

Dewkys, erlys grete plente,
That were curtes men and free,
Downe pey felle and pat anon:
TYRRY IS MADE THE EMPEROR'S STEWARD.

For Tyrrye they preyed euerychon.
The teerys fro þe emperowre yede þo.
'Tyrrye, gentyll baron,' seyde he tho,
'Thou haste had grete traualye.
Gentyll knyght, wythowte fayle,
Of thy gode y haue plente:
To day wyll y cese the
In all þy lande, castell and towre.
3yt schalt þou haue more honowre;
Y make þe stawe of my londe.
Y hyt the geue vnto thy honde.'

The Emperor restored him to all his possess-
sions,
and made him his Steward,
to the joy of all,
and all they seyde at oon crye:
'Syr emperowre, gramercye!'
The emperowre then kyste Tyrrye¹
And forgaue hym hys malcylye.
Dewkes and erles euerychone
Kyste Tyrrye and that anone.

The emperowre seyde to Tyrrye:
'Say me now, for þe lour of me,
What man ys the pylgryme?
Ys he thy brodur or of thy kynne,
That faght wyth Barrarde so hardelye
To defende the of felonye?
I went, ther had be no knyght
That wyth Barrarde durste take þe fyght.

Tyrry answered
that he had never seen him before meeting with him on his way.
Thys pylgryme sawe y neuer are,
But be þe way, as y dud fare,
Nor neuer wyste or now ryght,
That for me he had tane þe fyght,
And now y wote wyth glad mode:
God, that dyed on the rode,
3elde hym hys mede, wythowte fayle.
He hath me delyuyrde of traualye.'

¹ After this line 9746 is written, but struck out again.
Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

GUY GOES WITH TYRRY TO GORMOYSE.

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,

Tyrry, who had been treated very well by the Emperor,
Guy then discovered himself.

Y bydde the, yf thy wylle bee,
That on the way thou lede me.
Soche thynge may jou here say,
That jou schalt haue wonder to day.

That no man come wyth the.'

'Tryrre lepe on a mewle awmblande
And thorow the cyte wente prekande:
Ther myght no man wyth hym goo,
But hyt were themselfe twoo.
¶ When jey were paste but a myle,
They set them downe þere a whyle,
Tho seyde Gye to Tryrre: 'herkyn me now.'
Ye knowe not me, as y trowe.
Yf ye vnhurstode wele,
Ye oght to knowe me some dele.
May ye not Gye knowe,
That was some tyme yowre felowe,
That slewe for yow þe dewke Oton

[leaf 221 b, col. 2]
And delyuryd yow of pryson?'
Furste y fonde yow woundyd sare
Yu the foreste, as y can fare,
And slewe for þe theuys fyftene
And wanne þy lemmaw bryght and schene
And the fro fowre knyghtys wanne
And slewe them everychane
And on¹ my hors led þe a stownde
And helyd the of thy wounde
And synthen soyorned wyth þy fader dere
And halpe the on all manere
And now slewe Barrarde wyth my honde,
That chasyd the owt of thy londe.
Thys ys Gye, that thou seyst here:
Thou oghtyste to knowe me on all manere.'

¹ MS. over. But cf. the Caius MS. p. 241, And on my horse led the a stownde.
When Tyrrye sye Gye, hys harte wolde breke:
Not a worde myght he speke.
To grownde soone felle he than:
More sorowe, jen he had, had neuer no man. 9836

‘Gye,’ he seyde, ‘my dere felowe,
Wherefore myght ye the not knowe?
Allas, that euyr y bode thys day!
Myn eyen were blynde, so may y say.
Y myght haue sene and knonen full ryght,
That ye were Gye, þat nobull knyght,
Be yowre strenkyth and be yowre myght
And be yowre strokys, that were so wyght.
Who schulde haue be on lyue so stronge,
That durste agenste Barrard stonde so longe,
But yf hyt were yow, syr Gye?
Therfore of me haue mercye.
Y aske yow mercye, Gye, nowe,
That y dud mysknowe yow.’

Downe he felle to Gyes fete
And full sore dud he grete.
Hys legges were bare euery dele,
That were some tyme cloped1 well.
Therfore he wepyd and wrange hys hande:
In thys worlde was none lyueande,
That myght them bope haue see,
But þey wolde haue had pyte.

Gye had grete moornynge:
He myght not a worde forþe brynge.
Gye toke vp erle Tyrrye
And kyste hym full tendurlye.
But þey had so grete moornynge,
They felle bothe in sowunynge.
Then seyde Gye: ‘my felowe dere,
Now wyll y wende: þou schalt byde here.

1 MS, clope. But cf. the Caius MS, p. 242, That som tyme were clothed well.
I pe beteche god almyght:
He pe kepe bothe day _and_ nyght.
Y hane a chylde be my wyfe:
He wyll be a man, yf he hauie lyfe.
Yf he hauie to the mystere,
Helpe hym _wyth_ thy powere.'

Tyrry wanted to keep him back,

'I My brodur,' sayde Tyrrye than;
'For hym, that thys worlde wan,
Dwelle here style wyth me
And my trowthe y plyght pe,
All, pat in pe worlde myn ys,
Halfe schall be thyne, so hauie y blys,
Whyll that y leue maye.
Y prey pe, sey not _perto_ nay.
And yf _you_ wyll not so do,

Whome _wyth_ pe then wyll y goo;
For leuyr me ys _wyth_ pe to be,
Than here in woo for to dree;
For y had leuyr to wende _wyth_ pe,
Then all _pe_ gode in cristyante.'

Tyrrry went home;

Into hys chaumbur he wente whome.

for three days he touched no food.

Thre dayes my3t he nodur ete nor drynke:
Hyt wolde not in hys body synke.
When the cowntas sye thoo,
That hyt was Gye, that was agoo,
Sche bemoonyd hym swype stronge
And hur lorde sche blamed amonge
And seyde: 'yf ye wyth loue ne holde hym my3t,
Ye schulde wyth strenkyþ haue do yowre my3t.'

Now Gye goyth forthe the full sorye
And ofte he thynkyþ of Tyrrye.
So longe he went in hys jurnayse
Thorowe many vnctowthe cuntrayse,
Tyll he came to whyte sande
And ryued into Ynglande.
There he askyd of many a oon,
Where he myght fynde kynge Adelston,
And þey seyde to hym: 'at Wynchestur,
But twenty myle fro Chychestur.
Grete ooste he begynmeth þedur to bede
(For he had neuyr more nede)
Of dewkes, erles and barowns
And ryche lordys of many townes,
All, that may wyth harnes spede:
Ther was neuer 3yt more nede.
Byschoppes, archedekyns and abbottys,
Wyse men of the churche and no sottys,¹
At Wynchestur be euerychone,
The moost parte of the relygyowyn;
They haue sende thorow Ynglande
To yonge and olde, y vnderstande,
That þey schulde faste dayes thre
And nyght and day in preyers bee,
That god them sende soche a man,
That wyll and may, dar and can
Thorow helpe of god almyght
For Ynglondes sake in batell fyght
Wyth the gyawnt Collebrande

¹ MS. suttes.
Athelstan wants a champion against Collebrande.

The king of Denmark had brought Athelstan the choice either to become a Danesliegeman or to produce a knight that could vanquish Collebrande. Athelstan could not find any one.

And hym to stroye wyth hys hande.

‖ For the kynge of Denmarke,

A felle man and eke a starke,

He ys comen into thys lande

And grete warre haþ broȝt vs on hande.
The londe he stroyeth and cunrayse

And brennyth townes and abbayes.

A champyow he haþ broght wyth hym,

Of Awfryke a felle man and a grymme:

More he ys dowted in fyghtes,

Then an hundurd armed knyghtes.

Men sey, he hyght Collebrande:

A strongar man ys none lyueande.

The kynge of Denmarke to owre kynge haþ sente,

Wherethorow¹ he holdyþ hym nere schente,

That he ȝylde vp Ynglande

Hastelye vnto hys hande

And hys man become and trewþe plyght

And trewage hym ȝelde euery yere be ryght

And, but yf that he graunt wylle

To parforme all hys wylle,

Or ellys that he wyll fynde a knyght,

That may and dar mayntene hys ryght

Agenste the kynge of Denmarke,

A sterne man and a starke,

And to fyght wyth Collebrande,

Yf þat he dar hyt take on hande,

And therto sett a certew day

Or ellys lose² hys ryght for ay;

And to haue an answere in þys case

He hath grauntyd a certew space.

¹ thorow omitted in MS.
² ro blotted out before lose in MS.
For no preyar, that he can make.
The gyawnt ys so stronge of myght,
That þer dar none wyth hym fyght;
Wherefore we deme, wythowten fayle,
Thys londe wyll be loste wythowte batayle.'

Guy asked where Harrawde was,

'Where ys,' quod Gye, 'gode Harrawte,
That in nede made neuer defawte?'

They answeryd hym and that anow:

He ys owte of thys londe gone
To seke Reynbore, Gyes sone,
That marchandys han euawe none.'

Woman borne neuyr none dud
So moche godenes in a stedde.

Guy set off for Winchester,

Toward Wynchestur wente syr Gye:
No man knewe hym, sekerlye.

Guy set off for Winchester,

Hyt was at þe byrpe of seynþ Iohan:
At Wynchestur was kynge Adelston:
And also all hys baronye,
But none, þat he myght on affye.

He calde then soone hys cowncell vnto:
'What ys beste,' he seyde, 'to doo?
Lordys, y prey yow, vndurstonde,
And also erles and barons of my londe:
Agenste the Danes we muste vs were,
That they may not vs dere.
Cowncell of yow y wolde craue,
The King asked them what was to be done against the Giant.

Yf hyt so were, y myght hyt haue,
What were beste for to done
Agenste the thefe and fendys sone,
That men calle Collebrande,

But lie got no advice whatever.
He was sorry that Guy or Harrawde were not with him,

He was soniy that Guy or Harrawde were not with him.
and that he had not formerly secured Guy’s assistance by bestowing upon him half his realm.

What were beste for to done
Agenste the thefe and fendys sone,
That men calle Collebrande,

That þynkyth to stroye all my lande?

So hath he promysed hys lorde, þe kyng:
He þynkyþ hyt sewre on all þyng;
Whereporowe moche ys þe kyngys pryde,
Wherefore we may þe worse abyde.

But we ȝelde hym trewage,
He wyll do vs moche owtrage
And dystroye my castels and my townes
Boþe be dales and be downes,

To þe polle my wodeys and forestys downe
And let my game forthe gone.
Yf that here be any knyght,
That wyþ Collebrande dar fyght,
Hylfe my londe y wolde gene
To hys mede, whyll y may leue.’

All they sate stone stylle:
A worde þey spake nodur gode nor ylle.
Nodur erle nor knyßt, þat was þere,
Durste speke a worde for pewre fere.
‘A,’ quod þe kyng at the fryste,2
‘Lorde, in whome may þy tryste,
When none of yow for my sake
The batayle wyþ hym dar vndertake?
A, syr Gye, thou gentyl knyght,
And Harrawde, þy felowe so wyzt,
Yf y had holdyn other of yow,
Wele at ese had y be nowe.
Yf þat y had done so wele
Of my londe the halfen dele
To haue genyn to Gye wyþ moche honour,
Then had y be sekyr of socowre.

1 MS. Thc. 2 MS. fyyste.
In proverbe hyt ys seyde full 3are:
Mony for þe lesse forgoyþ þe mare.
Yf y had Gye so moche betaght,
Of myn enmyes y had not roght.'

Vp rose then the dewke of Kente
And to the kynge seyde hys entente:
'Syr kynge, þou muste sende þy sonde
Far into vncowthe londe
To everi towne þorow and thoroweth
Bothe in cyte and in borowe
All, that may armes bere,
Swyrde, axe, schelde or spere,
To come to þe at a day certeyne,
And þat þey stonde not þerageyne;
For of the þey schall haue
More wageys, þen þey wyll crane.
Wyth þe kynge þen we schall fyght
And hym overcome wyth goddys myght.
I haue now my cowncell sayde:
Yf hyt be wele, y am well payde.'
Wyth that they parted everychone:
Odur cowncell was ther none.

The kynge at nyght to bedde was broȝt
In clopons of golde rychely wroght.
All that nyght he lay and wakyde
And to Iesu hys preyer maked,
That he wolde sende hym soche a man,
That of þe batayle he myght tryste on;
And god forgate hym nothynge:
As he was in slepeynge,

An angell he sende to hym full euyn:
Hym to cowmfort wyth mery steynþ,
And seyde: 'kyng þe, slepyste thou?
The sendythe word to the kyng Iesu:
To morne, when þat hyt ys day,
Take thou the redy way

WARWICK.
to the north gate,  And go vnto the northe gate  And loke, whome þou fyndyst þerate. 10080
and there he  A pylgryme þou schalt there mete. 10084
should meet  On goddys halfe thou hym grete  And anonþ þou schalt hym lede wyth the
a pilgrim,  And pray hym pur charyte,  
who would  That he the batell for the take
undertake the  In goddys name and for hys sake,
battle.      ¶ Wyth þat þe aungell wente hym froo:
The King went  The kynge was blythe theo. 10088
thither  Tho þerly he rose and that anonþ
with two Earls  And to þe northe gate can he gone.
and the Bishop  Two erles wyth hym lad he
of Winchester.  And the byschoppe of that cyte.
When he saw the  Vnto mydmorne stode they,
pilgrim,  And many a pore man came þat wey.
he asked his  Among þem he sye a pylgryme:
assistance,  Well sone he knewe hym. 10096
The kynge hys  The kynge hys hande on hym layde
hande on hym  And swythely to hym sayde:
layde  'Pylgryme, pur charyte,
And  Dwelle a whyle here wyth me.' 10100
swythely to hym  'Let me stonde,' seyde he,
sayde:  'Wyth yow to goo1 hyt lykyth not me.
'Pylgryme,' he seyde, 'we byd pur charyte
For grete nede, we schewe to the,  For grete nede, we schewe to the,
Ageyne the kynge of Denmarke,  Ageyne the kynge of Denmarke,
That ys a sterne man and a starke,  That þou þe batell wylt vndertake.
That þou þe batell wylt vndertake.  Y schall þe sey, for what sake.
Y schall þe sey, for what sake.
Thorow þe strenkiþ of a knyght  Thorow þe strenkyþ of a knyght
Lese y schall my realme be ryght  Lese y schall my realme be ryght
Agenste the gyawnt Collebrande:

1 Part of h blotted out before goo in MS,
Ther ys none so stronge in all þys lande.  
For hys loue y bydde the,  
That syttyth aboue in trynyte,  
Thou thyss batell for hys sake  
Agenste Collebrande þat þou take.’

¶ Who so had the kynge beholde  
And hys barons, þat were so bolde,  
Betterlye wepte they euerychone.  
‘Syr,’ quod Gye and that anon,  
‘For goddys loue in trynyte  
And, for yow all beseche me,  
Thys batelle y vndurtake:  
For no feer y schall hyt slake.’

¶ Owre kynge þankyd hym wyth gode wylle  
And to þe kynge of Denmarke sende a bylle,  
How þat oon had takyn on hande  
For to fyght wyth Collebrande.  
And the day was ysett  
Of the batell wythowten lett  
In a place, where þey schulde bee  
Yn an yle wythynne the see.  
Who was gladde, but kynge Adelston  
And hys lordys euerychone,  
That the pylgryme wolde take on hande  
For to fyght wyth Collebrande  
And wyth the grace of god almyght  
To delyuyr ther enmyes wyth ryght?  

¶ The kynge comawndyd and that anon  
To hys armerars euerychone,  
That they schulde purvey armewre  
Of the beste and moost sewre  
For hys cham Lyon, the pylgryme,  
In peyne of lyfe, lyth and lymme.  
Ynto euery place they sende and gone  
But mete armowre fonde þey none.
When Gye sye, ther cowde noe be fownde,  
To hye kynge he went in that stownde.  
'Syr,' he seyde, 'be goddis myght,  
Y harde sey, ther was a knyght.  
Some tyme dwellyng in Warwyk towne  
Large and longe from fote to crowne,  
And, but hys armowe wyll serue me,  
Y trowe, in Ynglonde none ther bee;  
Wherefore y rede yow, be my lyfe,  
Sende for hyt to Gyes wyfe.'  
As he seyde, so dud the kynge,  
And sche hyt sende wythowte grucchynge.  
When hyt was comyn, they hyt assayed:  
Hyt was mete, fey were wele payde.  
Sche had hyt kept, pat lady hende,  
That hyt was not peyred before nor behynde.  
When 1 pe tyme was yeomen  
Of pe batayle, pat was nommen,  
Gye was armed rychelye  
Ryght feyre and gentullye.  
Hys helme was rychely dyght  
Wyth a cros of golde, pat schone bryght.  
The serkyll of golde was so ywro3t,  
That for no3yng hyt cowde be bo3t.  
Therynne were set precyus stones  
Well schynynge for pe nones.  
Before an hye ouyr the nasel 2  
Was a charbokull set full wele,  
That so grete lyght caste on pe ny3t,  
As hyt were the day bryght.  
On pe helme was a flowre,  
That was wroght of many a colour.  
Gyrde he was wyth a swyrde of stele:  
Kynge Adelstow louydde hyt wele.  
And sypen men bro3t hym a stede:  
1 The initial W is wanting in MS.  
2 MS. sayle.
In all pe londe was none better at nede.

Hastelye he was hym vpown:
The blessyng he had of mony a man.
He had a spere carvande
And towarde the batell was rydande.

When he into pe place come,
Of hys stede he lyght anone.
On hys kneys he set hym downe
And to Cryste he made hys orysown
And seyde: 'lorde, pat reysed Lazerowne
And Sampson werred fro pe lyon
And socurde Susan fro pe selons,
\[pat\] wolde haue slayn wur be trasons,
Schylde me to day fro pe 3ondur gloton,
That y thorow hym haue no confusyon.'

Swyje men brot a boke anon.
The kynge of Denmarke swere peeron,
Yf hys man were to dethe woundyd,
Slayne or ellys in batell confowndyd,
That he schulde neuyr aftur pat day
In peyne of renayenge of hys laye
Ryght to clayme in Ynglonde,
But wende whome into hys londe
And neuyr more in hys lyue
Wyth Englysche nodur fyght nor stryue.
And sythen swore kynge Adelston
Before the barons euerychon,
That, yf hys man be slawe,
That he schall stande to pys lawe:
Hys sworn man become he schall
And of hym holde hys landys all;
Grete trewage he schulde 3olde
And hys heyres aftur hym hyt holde.

When pey had sworne in pat stownde
And eche of them hostage fownde,

1 was omitted in MS. 2 MS. Of peem pat.
Collebrand was so big and stout that no horse could endure him.

Collebrande for the schett.
He was so large and so grett,
That no hors hym bere myght
Nodur in pese nor to fyght:
Therefore on fote euyr he foght;
For odurwyse kepte he noght.

Armowre he had of many a manere:
Vnethe a carte myght them bere.
In the place they were leyde,
That he myght take at hys nede.
Gret was Collebrande,
And hys hawberke was full stronge.

Of mayles was not hys hawbarke:
Hyt was of odur maner warke.

Hyt was made of splentys of stele
Before and behynde younyd wele.

Hys legges were in the same case
Wyth splentys, as hys body wase.

A helme lie had bothe gret and stronge:
Abowte hys swyre a targe longe.

Wyth yron and stele bowndyn hyt was:
No nodur metell theron was.
Black hyt was and lothelyche,
Hys armowre, as hyt were pych.

Hys spere carvande of stele
And hys darte fyredde wele

And hys axes also smeten

Wyth gaddes of stele, pat made pov to betyn;
Mases of yron and gaddes of stele
And gysarnys for to smyte wele.

The champyons bene togedur ladde.

Guy was afraid of him as of no one before.

Gye was then sore adradde:
Neuyr in batell before he nas,
That of hys depe so ferde he was.

Hys hors wyth pe spurreys he prykkepe
(That ranne as faste, as fowle, pat flyeth)
GUY WOUNDS COLLEBRAND.

Towarde Collebrande wyth myght,
And, or he to hym come myght,
He lawncyd to hym dartys thre:
Wyth ii he fayled, wyth pe prydde hyt he
Thorow pe schelde paynted wyth golde;
For þorow, he þoght, þat hyt schoulde.
Betwene hyrs arme and hyrs syde
That scharpe darte forthe dud glyde
And so forthe into the mede
More, then an akers brede.
But Gye on þe helme hym smote
Wyth a darte, that came hote;
And so faste hyt can dryve,
That hyt brake in pecys fyve.
Collebrande drewe hys swyrde anon
And smote Gye þe helme vpon;
Betwene þe body and the arsm
Felle þat grete stroke adowne
And gaue the stede dethys wounde,
And downe he felle to the grownde.
Gye vp starte they full rathe:
Blessyd be god, he had no skathe!
And sypen hys swyrde soone he drowe,
That was gode and carvande ynowe,
And Collebrande he smote wyth myght
That þe sparkes of fyre to grownde lyʒt.
A newe lesson he wolde hym teche;
But¹ he myght not hye reche.
And hys swyrde was longe be syght:
But hyer, þen þe schouldur, reche he ne myʒt.
On the schoulder felle the stroke:
A grete splente owte hyt smote.
The flesche hyt carue, þe blode owt ranne:
He, that hyt smote, was a nobull man.
Collebrande tho was aschamed,

¹ MS. Pur.
When he sye hys blode so tamedde.

Soche a stroke he smote to Gye

Hye on hys helme, sekerlye:
The flowre felle and pe serkyll also,
The schelde he carue also in twoo.
Of soche a strokke y haue not harde.

Stronglye Gye was aferde.

Sythen Gye wyth hys honde
Stroke vnto Collebronde

And hym smote so, os y yow seye,

That porow pe schelde hyt wente, par faye,
That hys swyrde stycked faste.

Tho was Gye sore agaste:

Hys swyrde brake wyth the vpbrayde,
And therwyth was Gye dysmayed.

¶ Now the Danes prowde bene
And seydj pemselfe pem betwene,
That Gye was pem ouerconem
And the kynge yschente and ynomen.

‘Knyght,’ sayde Collebrande,
‘Thou haste no wepyyn in jy hande.
To werre pem you art not myghtye:

Come to me and crye mercye,
And y schall haue mercy of the,
Wyth that thou wylt beseche me.
Y see, thou art an hardy man,
Syn pem to fyght wyth me began.
And to my kynge y schall pem brynge:
He wyl be gladde of that tyfynge.
Thou schalt wyth hym acordyd bee:
He schall the geue ryche fee.'

¶ ‘Nay,’ quod Gye, ‘pem speke noght;
For pemto schall hyt neuer be broght,
That y schulde the mercye crye:
Y wolde thynke hyt vylenye.

Thogh pem y haue lorne my bronde,
Guy cuts off the Giant's arm with an axe.

3yt my lorde ys so stronge,
That he may helpe me,¹ sawns fayle,
Or y be yoldyn in pys batyle.
Of harnes pou haste here gode oon²
Grete and longe euerychone:
Harnes pou haste grete plente,
Whereof pou schalt lende me.'³
Then sayde Collebronde full ryght:
'So helpe me Mahownde of myght,
Harnes getyst pou none of me:
Furste y schall haue the hedde of pe.
Thou schalt not fynde me soche a brayton
Harnes to take pe into py bandone.' ¹⁰³³⁶
Or Collebronde hym turne myght,
To the axes Gye lepe aryght:
An axe there vp he nome
And to Collebronde þerwyth he come.
When Collebronde that sye,
Hastelye forthe he came to Gye.
Wyth strenkyth he smote to hym in hye
A stroke, that was full myghtye.
But Gye soone asyde schete³
And ellys he had sore be smete.
Into þe þorthe fell the bronde:
Wrothe therfore was Collebronde
Gye forgate that nothynge,
The axe he⁴ hente, wythowte lesynghe:
The arme he smote of of Collebrande
Wyth the strenkyth of hys hande.
When Collebrande felyd hym smyte,
To hys bronde he lepe tyte
And take hyt he wolde in hys lefte hande,
When of the todur no helpe he fonde.

¹ me added over the line in MS.
² oon I suppose to be miswritten for woon.
³ MS. skypte. * ⁴ w blotted out after he in MS.
and soon after his head.

After the death of their champion, the Danes left England.

Athelstan and his barons were overjoyed.

Guy was led into the town in solemn procession.

The King offered him great riches,

[leaf 228 a, col. 2] but Guy did not accept anything.

Athelstan then

Toward the grownde he lowtud in hye,
And Gye yede hym so nye:
Hys stalworthe axe well hye he hafe
And soche a strock in pe neck he hym gafe,
That hys heedd of dud flye.
Gye was fayn then, sekurlye.

(IT The gloton) felle downe to grounde anon:
The Danyschmen) were sory echon).
The kyng Anlafe was well woo
And hys odur folke echon) alsoo.
To schypwarde they be wendande
And anow) homewarde pey be saylande.

And blythe ys kyng Adelston)
And hys barons euerychone.

There they toke syr Gye
And lad hym forthe, sekurlye,
To Wynchestur, the ryche towne,
Wyth songe and wyth precestion)
'Te deum laudamus' syngyng
And god almyghty therof thankyng.

(IT Gye wyth pat vnarmed hym
And sythen askyd hys slauyn).
The kyng hym toke be the honde
And askyd hym, in what londe
He was in borne, and of hys name;
For he was a man of grete fame.

And bad hym gyftys gode and ryche,
Castels enclosed wyth depe dych.

And syr Gye hyt all forsoke,
That he of hym ryght noght toke,
But thankyd god, Maryes sone,
That Collebrande was overcome.

'T Mercye, syr, 'seyde the kyng,
'For hym, pat schope all thynge
And suffurde dethe vpon pe rode
All for mankyndeys gode,
That thon thy name telle me,  
Where thou were born and in what cuntre.  
And he seyde: 'thou schalt here,  
When thou me byddyst on soche manere,  
Wyth that thou do, as y schall say.  
Brynge me forwarde on my way  
And pyselle alone wyth me goo  
Bezonde pe towne a myle or twoo,  
And all pe sope y schall yow telle,  
That of oon worde y lye ne wyll.'  
IT Forthe of the cyte be they goo.  
But wel farre yede they not thoo.  
'Syr,' quod Gye, 'stynhte a throwe.  
For ye me haue bettur knowe,  
Y schall yow telle in thys steddte,  
Sythe ye me haue so often bedde.  
But, syn ye schall wytt my name,  
Loke, ye put me to no grame;  
For y telle yow on soche forwarde,  
That all pys yere hereafterwarde  
Of my cowncell me not bewrye,  
But kepe hyt secrete betwene vs tweye  
Bothe in felde and in towne,  
As thou art gentyll kynge wyth crowne.'  
And the kynge hyt vndurtakyth  
And therof hym seker makyth,  
That hys cowncell telle nyll he  
To none, that now on lyue bee,  
Nodur be day nodur be nyght,  
And therto hys trowthe he plyght.  
'Syr,' quod Gye, 'sekurylye,  
My ryght name ys Gye  
Of Warwyk, thyn owne knyght:

1 part of a b blotted out before wone.  
2 MS. Byt.  
3 ye seems to be omitted somewhere in this or the next line.  
Ou. That ye?
Well thou louedyst me aryght.'

When the kynge harde that And of hys name vndurzate, That hyt was the gode Gye, Neuyr 3ar he had so grete farlye. Of hys hors he alyght And on kneys he felle tho ryght. The kynge seyde tho: 'syr, mercye! How came thou hedur, syr Gye? Hyt ys gone well farre two yere, That y harde sey, thou dedde were. Blessyd be Iesu, Maryes sone, That pou art hedur to vs ycome. God the hath hedur sente:

Ellys we had be fowle yschente. And pou schalt haue for py seruyse, As myselfe schall deuyse,
The halfen dele of Ynglande I take the into thy hande.'

‘Syr,’ quod Gye, ‘be youre leeue, stille:
Thou spekyst all agenste my wylle.
Y wyll none of thy rychesse, Of py londe nor of thy nobulnes;
But oon thynge, syr, y prey the
For hym, that sytteth in trynyte:
Yf that Harrowde ageyne come
And brynge wyth hym home my sone,
Honowre hym, y prey the,
And on hym well may pou tryste pe.
And be thy leue, syr, y wyll goo:
I beteche pe god for enyrmoo.’

The kynge for pat was vnblythe:
He kyste hym well mony sythe.
Homewarde he wendyp all wepande

1 byselfe?
2 f, as it seems, blotted out before tryste in MS.
And sorry was and all morenande.
Hys folke agenste hym be gone
And askyd of hym euerychone:
‘Who was then the pylgryme,
That goyth allone and noman wyth hym
And that wolde for yow fyght?
A gode man he ys and of moche myght.’
And pe kynge hym helde stylle
And seyde: ‘hyt ys agenste hym wylle,
That y yow pe sothe schulde telle.
For me hyt schall be holde cowncell.
Or thys yere be all gone,
The sothe ye schall knowe euerychom.)’

Now wendypp Gye hys wey ryght:
Ofte he pankyp god almyght-
Of hys worschyp and of hys sonde,
That he hym sente in mony a londe.
So longe wente he hys jurne,
That he came to that cyte,
Whereof he lorde clepyd ys,
And of no man) ys perceyued ywys.
To the castell gate he came :
That hym knewe, was þere no man).
Amonge þe pore men he hym dudde :
Grete sorowe toke he in the stedde.
The curtes¹ Felyece was there tho :
xii pore men sche fedde and moo
Euery day by and bye,
That god schulde saue hur lorde Gye,
Wyth soche drynke and soche mete,
As sche hurselfe was wonete to etc.
¶ Hyt was at the none tyde :
The lady wolde no lenger abyde,
Sche set hur downe to hur mete,
And wyth hur sett knyghtys grete.

¹ Cowntas?
And the pore men forthe were fett:
Before the lady they were sett.

Gye was oon of the twelue:
Ouermaste he sate be hymselue.

The cowntas behelde hym, sekurlye,
For he was so sekelye,

Felice, thinking of her husband,
charged a squire to take care of him.

On Guy sche poght pen, hur gode lorde,
And to a squyere there sche spake pys worde:
'Go bere pys,' sche seyde, 'to pat pylgryme,
That 3ondur syttyth in a slaunyn.'

Of bredde and wyne and mete plente,
Of pe beste pat he haue, y charge pe.'
To parforme hur wylle he not forsoke
And the pylgryme fayre he toke.

The cowntas hym bad, sopely to say,
Thedur for to come every day:
Inogh he schulde haue of wyne and brede.
Sythen all gates sche hym bede
And, that he schulde aftar mete
Speke wyth hur and not forgete.
And he seyde: 'lady,' full lowlye,
'Syphen ye comawnde1 me, full blynely.'

If When pat pey had eton all
And pe bordys let downe falle,
The pylgryme pen, pedur he came,
Owt of that towne hys wey he name.

Besydes Warwykk go he can

To an ermyte, pat he knewe or pen.
On a ryuere syde hys hows he hadde
(A full holy lyfe he there ladde)
Besydes Warwyke, pat was hys,

That Gybbeclycf clepyd ys.
But pe hermyte pen dedde wes :2

1 Another me before comawnde in MS. 2 MS. was.
No man leuyng þere nas, dredeles; 10532 who had lived there, being dead, Guy determined to stay there to the end of his life.
And Gye hym bepoght anom, 10536
That fro þens wolde he neuer gone: In vain was the pilgrim searched after, at Felice's
Thens on lyue neuyr he go nolde, [leaf 229 a, col. 2]
But serue god þere he wolde. command.
IT 10540
The cowntas seyde then sdtur mete: He led a holy life in the hermitage.
‘Where ys þe pylgryme? ys he forgete?’
Then seyde a knyght, þat was full hende:
‘Owte of þe towne ys sawe hym wende.’
Then soght he was in a lytull stownde,
But nowhere he myght be fownde.
In the hermytage Gye ys leuynge
And þere he leuytli at hys lykjmge
A preest he knewe þere nygh þat stude,
That goddyys seruyse to hym þere dudde.
All hys lyfe he tolde hym thoo,
And he assoyled hym also.
A full holy lyfe he ledde there:
Goddyys seruyse forgate he nere.
¶ On Gye a sykenes now ys befall,
So wyll, for sope, vpon vs all.
Vpon a nyght a slepe hym namː:
Now herkenyʃ, what on hym bycame.
Goddyys aungell þere to hym can go.
Apertely to hym he spake tho:
‘Guyown, Guyown, slepest þou now?’
‘Nay,’ he seyde, ‘why, who art thou?’
‘Y am Crystys owʃ messangere,
Seynt Myghell, þat þou seyst here.
Fro my lorde Isee u am comen to þe,
And he þe greteth wele be me.
Schryve þe clene: ryght, as y þe seye,
Thys day viii dayes þou schalt dye.’
And Gye awaketh anon ryght:
He sawe þe angell feyre and bryght.
Sythen he seyde: ‘speke wyth me,
Goddys frende, now prey ye the. 10568
Where schall my sone be and my wyfe bo?'
'In paradyse pey schull be,' he seyde pe.
Hastyly aftur hur pou sende
And bydde hur, pat sche to pe wende. 10572
The xl. day hereaftur, syr Gye,
Sche schall be wyth owre lady.'
And Gye seyde then wyth herte fre :
'As god wold, so mote hyt bee.' 10576
When pat hys depe day was ycome,
He clepyd anon to hys grome :
'Lefe felowe,' then seyde he,
'To Warwykk pou wende, y prey pe. 10580
To the cowntas pou schalt goon
On my message ryght anon.
Thys rynge,1 pou hyt not for3ete
And on my behalfe pou hur grete 10584
And sey to hur, pat pe same pylgryme,
That sche sende bothe bredde and wyne,
And sey to hur, for that presente
Thys rynge y haue to hur sente. 10588
Y wot well, sche wyll hyt knowe
Also soon, as pou doyst hyt to hur schowe.2
Then anon sche wyll aske the,
And a ryche gyfte pou schalt haue,' seyde he. 10592
'Aftur me hur askynge schall be mest,3
And pou schalt sey, that in pe foreste
An ermyte y am and in poynt to dye
And þeryn pat thou me sye; 10596
And þat þere pou longe ne dwelle,
But 3yt pou schalt hur telle,
That sche hastely to me come;
For dethe me hath nygh overcome. 10600
Go now þy4 wey, for seynt Charyte :

1 MS. Thys halfe rynge. 2 MS. schewe. 3 MS. moest. 4 MS. þey.
To Jesu Cryste now y betake the."

"Now ys the page forth the goon:"

To Warwyck he came anoon. The cowntas he fonde in hur halle: On knees to hur soone can he falle.

"Lysten to me, lady, now, y prey the:
A message ys sente to yow by me
Fro my lorde, that pylgryme,
That was in yowre halle in hys slauny
And pat ye sende to plente of mete.
To grete yow well he wyll not forgete.
Now he ys dwellyng in þe foreste:
By zerbes and rootys he lenyth mest.¹
Lyfe he ledyth, as man well wyse:
Of goddys grace fulfyllyd he ys.
Thys same rynge to yow he sente,
That y to yow take now in presente.'

"The rynge to hur sche can brayde:
'Alass, lefe lorde, now mercy!\nThys was my lordys rynge, syr Gye.'

In swownyng she fell and hur hert agroos,
And, when þat sche of swownyng aroos:
'Thys tokyn y knowe, þat to me ys broȝt.
For my loue, ne heyle hyt noght
And tresowre þou schalt haue, y telle þe,
The sɔpe yf þou wylt sey to me.'

'In þe foreste,' he seyde wyth wordys mylde,
'Wyth þe bestys wode and wylde
There he lyneth,² be god aboue;
And he beseketh yow for loue,
That he be beryed þorow yowre redde;
For there he lyeth almost dedde;
And þat ye bewrye hym to no wyght:
So he me badde, syr Gye, þe knygght.'

¹ MS. moest. ² MS. lyeth.
And ye shall dye not longe to:
He sende me to yow to sey so.
Of myrthys ye schull haue þe meest
In the yoye, þat euyr schall laste.'

† Furste for sorow sche was nye madde
And syþen sche became full gladde,
That sche schulde hur lorde see,
And a dolefuller loker may none be:
That sche schulde see hym deyd,
Hur harte was heuyer, þen þe ledde.
Vpon a palfrey sche lepte anoone
And hastily forthe can sche goone.
For þe she rode wyth knyȝt, squyere and page,
Tyll sche came to that ermytage.
There þat lady dud feyre alght,
And so dud many a gentyll knyght,

She rode to the hermitage,
followed by many Lords.
When she arrived,

Guy opened his eyes,
and raised his hands
as if begging her pardon;

but speak he could not.
His soul departed,

Wondurly hyght sche caste vp a crye.
Wyth þat hys eyen openyd syr Gye:
Vp he loked anon ryȝt²
And clepyd Felicye, as he myght,
And helde vp boþe hys handys
Before þat lady, as sche stondys,
In tokenyng hur mercy for to crye
Of þe sorowe, sche dud for him drye.
Hedde to hedde þere lay they thoø:
Swetely eyther kyssed other also.
But oon worde Gye þere ne speke,
And þe³ goost þen fro hym breke.

1 hyght written originally, but the last letter blotted out.
² The abbreviation for and blotted out after ryȝt.
³ þen originally, but the n blotted out in MS.
Seynt Myghell anon hyt hente:
As a whyte dowve, he toke hyt þere.
To god in heuen he dud hyt bere
Wyth grete yoye and mery songe:
'Gloria in excelsys' þey seyde amonge.

That louely lady, Felys la Belle,
Wyth dolefull harte dwellyþ in þat chapelle.
On hym sche swowned in þat place
And often sche kyssyd hym mowþe and face.
'Thes be þe hondys,' sche seyde thoo,
'That the rynges breke atwoo.'
Of hur fyngers þe blode owt ranne:
Sorowe and woo sche had than.

Gretë worschyp þere god hym dudde,
Syr Gye, þat ys in þat blessed stude.
Of Gye a sauour spronge at þe laste
And hath so grete swetnes caste,
As and all þe spycys, þat man may see,
And all swete þyngeþ, þat here may bee,
In oon stude togedur were,
Swete and swote bothe in fere.
So swete a þyng in erthe was noon,
As of hys body then can goon.
They þat were in grete sykenes,
Heele þey had þorow þat swetnesse.
The swetnesse lasted, wythowten lees,
Tyll þat the body beryed wes.

To Warwyk þen þey wolde hym haue dyʒt,
But remeve hym þere no man myght;
For thretty knyghtþes þere were broght
And hym remeve myght þey noght.
All þat was þorow goddys wylle,
And þey hym þere beleuyd stylle.
Felyce, that was feyre and free,
Felice did not leave his tomb till she died forty days after, and was buried by his side.

Now you have heard the story of Guy of Warwick and of Felice.

Every one should be like them.

May Jesus Christ save us.

To þem sche seyde: ‘now leteth bee.
He sente me a sondre be a messengere,
That y' hym schulde berye here.'
A through þey ordeyned gode and fyne
Hys body and bones to berye þeryn.
Thretty masses þere were songe,
And almes dudde to ooldre and jonge,
That ðeyr lasteth vnto þys day:

Ther ys none soche geuyn for man nor may.
¶ When þe body was leyde in grownde,
Thens þey wente in a lytull stownde.

But þe cowntas, sche leuyd there:
Fro þens on lye go wolde sche nere.
Fro þat place neuyr sche go nolde,
But þere to serve god sche wolde.

Forty dayes there leuyd þat lady
And beryed sche was be gode syr Gye.
In oon pytte þey lye togedur boo:
Iesu kepe þer sowlys from woo.
And all, þat here oght of thys,
God of hys grace grawnt þem blys.

¶ Now, lordyngys, ye haue harde of Gye
Of Warwyk, þat was wondur hardy,
And also of feyre Felyce, hys wyfe,
That he moste louyd of women on lye,
And in what maner þey partyd in twoo
And how þey leued2 then alsoo
And how þey dreddle god almyght:

Euer synfull schulde so wyth ryght.
As ye haue herde me rede or þys,
Ther lyfes þus þere endyd ys.

Iesu Cryste all weldynge,
That art god and crowned kynge
(In trynyte þou art þe fadur fre
And all knytt in oon persones thre),

1 s blotted out after y in MS. 2 MS. loued.
Tyrre carries Guy's body to Lorraine.

We the besech lowde and style, 10740
That þou vs grawnþ þorow þy wylle
To be also safe, as 1 ys Gyown 1
Of Warwykk, þat bolde barounê.
To Mary mylde prey we for þan,
That sche wyll helpe every synfull man; 10744
That god forgeue vs ovre synnes all,
That we all day beyth yn ysfalle,
And that owre sowles we mote hym sende,
When we owte of þys worlde schull wende.

Now, lordyngys, lystený of þe noyse
Of gode syr Tyrre of Gormoyse:
For Gye was dedde, wythowten lees,
In herte a sorowfull man he wes. 2
He myght noþur drynke nor ete
Nor no comfort he myȝt hym gete.
To þe see he wente, y vndurstonde,
And at London he came to londe 10756
And þere wythynne a lytull stownde
Kynge Athelston he had yfownde.
He tolde hym all of syr Gyown 1,
How they were felows, by gode resown 1,
And how þat they were þerebeforne
Trewe brethern to gedur sworne,
That neythur schulde fayle othur,
‘And y þorow trowthe am hys brodur.’
10764
Hys boones he desyryd wyth mylde boone
And kynge Athelston hym grannytþ soone:
That body warne hym he noþde
To carye hyt, whodur he wolde.
10768
Tyrre the body then vp drogh
And worschypped hyt feyre ynogh.
To Loren then he ledylþ syr Guye:
Grete worschypp þere hym dud Tyrre.
10772
An abbey he made, y vndurstonde

1 part of an y blotted out before as in MS. 2 MS. was.
LISTEN NOW TO THE STORY OF HARRAWDE.

(Ther ys none so rycbe in all pat londe),
For Gyes sowle and for hys wyfe,
That he loued, as hys lyfe.
Hys loue so he quytt hym all.
The abbey standeth and euer schall
For to prey for gode syr Gye,
That god on hys sowle haue mercy
And that god schylde from woo
Hys sowle; and owres alsoo!
ignon Of Gye an endynge y muste make:
To Cryste, crowned kynge, y hym betake
And to hys modur also now ryght,
That they vs brynge to pat blys bryght.2
L
ystenyth now, y schalle yow telle,3
As y fynde in parchment spelle,
Of syr Harrowde, be gode baron,
That lyeth in Awfryke in pryson.
Porely he ys besemydde,
That lyf hym winpe ys beleuedde;
For lytull he etyth and lasse drynketh:
There ys none,4 pat hym forthynketh;
And bemoonyth sore hys lordys sone,
For whome he ys there in prysone.
There he wene anon ryght to dye
And not to skape be no weye
And bemoonyth hys grete sorowe
Bothe on euyn and on morowe,
Hys ryches and his feyrehedde,
Hys grete byrthe and hys stalworfedde.
ignon The geyler harde hym, pere he stode,
And hys moonyng vndur gode

1 The second for added over the line in MS.
2 The rest of this page blank in MS.
3 The letters of this line are as large in MS. as they use to be at the beginning of a poem.
4 none seems to be a mistake for moche or ynowe or the like.
Of hys strenkyth and of hys myght.
To þe admerall he came tho ryght.
‘Syr, wot ye not,’ sayde he,
‘What prysoner in yowre pryson haue ye?’
Of soche oon haue y not harde, aplyght,
Of soche pryce nor of soche myght.’
Then sayde the admyrall:
‘That y anon wyt schall.
Brynge hym,’ he sayde, ‘before me,
And y schall wytt, what ys hee.
Of soche a man y haue grete nede,
Yf y myght tryste hym and hys dede.’
¶ The geyler for þe went anon:
To the gayle he ys gone.
Harrowde vp he drewe anon,
That was full merngr and a febull mon;
Hys berde was whyte onergrown wyth here;
For grete mysese he suffurde there.
Ther ys no man, þat hym knowe myght
Nodur be semblant nor be syght:
Noght hys modur, þat hym bere,
Kowde not haue knowyn hym þere.
Gret he was, mekyll and longe:
Well he semydde myghty and stronge.
Before þe admerall he hym ledyth:
Then of hys lyfe well sore he dreyp.
¶ Then sayde the admerall
(Of ryches he hath no pere egall)
And spake to Harrowde, þe gode baron,
And askyd of hym mony a reson,
Who he was and of what londe
And yf he batell durste take on hande,
As he was hymselfe knowe,
When he was in pryson lowe,

1 that y anon wytt struck out after admyrall in the same line.
Harrawde is willing to fight for the admiral.

Dat odur folke\(^1\) hym here myght,
Bothe be day and be nyght;
And yf he myght of hym be sekure
Odur in batell or in bekur
And to serue hym trewlye.
And he wolde wythholde hym bly\(f\)elye
And armes hym geue gode, aplyght,
To mayntene hys warres in all ry\(t\).

Then seyde Harrowde, \(pat\) nobull man:
'Syr, y schall telle the, as y can.
Harrowde y hy\(3t\), \(pe\) Englyshe knyt.
In me ys nodur mayn nor myght:
Yf my strenky\(p\) were ageyne comen,
That me in pryson was benomen,
And \(pou\) me foundest gode armewre,\(^2\)
That were bo\(pe\) gode, mete and sewre,
In me myghtyst \(pou\) wele af\(ye\),
Be hym, \(pat\) borne was of Marye.'

The admerrall answeryd Harrawde,\(^3\)
A gentyll knyght and no rybawde:
'Thou schalt hane harmes sekur ynogh
And all, that \(pou\) haste nede too.

Syth \(pou\) were in Ynglonde bore,
Sey me the sothe, wyth\(^4\) othe yswore,
Yf \(pou\) knewe oght of Gye,
That y hauue harde so moche preysye.'

'Be god,' quod Harrowde, 'y knewe hym well:
Hys knyght y was and 3yt y wyll.'
'For so\(pe\), y wolde,' quod the admerrall,
'That y hym had geuyn \(pe\) halfen dell
Of all my londys brode and wyde,
Wyth \(pat\) he stode the besyde:
Mekull he myght helpe me
To mayntent\(d\) my warres, y telle \(pe\).'  

\(^1\) *k in *folke* altered from *d* in MS.\(^2\) MS. armowre.\(^3\) MS. havde.\(^4\) *wythankete*?
He forþe clepyþ hys chaumberleyne,
That was a gode knyght and no sweyne:
In feyre cloþys he bad1 hym schreddde and dyȝt
And harnes grayþe feyre and bryght.

4 The admerall to Harrowde spekyth.
'Syr,' he seyd, 'my herte in two brekyth:
The kynge Argus full of boste
Ageyne me werryþ, well þou waste,
That of all my grete realme2
He hap me lefte but þys cyte, þat y in am.
And that ys thorowe a yonglynge,
A knyght vncowthe of newe dubbyng,
That hath my londe ferre3 brenþ and stroyede
And me well swythe sore anoyede
For my folke, þat he hath slawe
And þorow hym broþt fro lyfe dawe.
And yf thou myght wyth anythyng
Hym confownde or to dethe brynge,
Be Mahownde and Ternagawnte,
Y schall the to honowre avawnte.'

Harrowde answeryd, þat nobull man:
'Syr,' he seyd, 'y schall, yf y can.
Jesu, seynt Maryes sone,
Me to helpe4 vnto strenkyþ come.'

4 The Chamberlain was orderet to clothe and arm him.

The Amiral told Harrawde that King Argus had conquered all his realm except the city in which he lived, and especially by dint of the valour of a new-dubbed knight.

Harrowde prom-ised to try, with the help of Jesus.

Jews came

that King Argus's Constable had [leaf 232 a, col. 2] conquered another castle of the Amiral's.

With the Amiral's host

1 bad omitted in MS. 2 Perhaps we ought to read reawme.
3 First e in ferre uncertain in MS.
4 The abbreviation for and blotted out after helpe in MS.
A stalworth knyght, wythowten fabull,  
That he were armyd swythe anon.  
And all hys men euerychone.  
And he so dud well hastelye  
Swythe the and rughtlye.  

Harrowde hys gode hors bestryte

Wyth a spere in hys hande, pat sharply wolde byte,  
And wendyd owte of that cyte  
And ouyrgoyth all that cuntre,  
And comen in a lytull stownde,  
There pey hane pe castell fownde,  
Well straunge assayled and besett:  
Many oon peere was well euelly grett.  
Helmes men sye bope bryst and schene,  
And stedys nye togedur 3edyu.  
Yn yron was mony a knyght  
On hors back redy for to fyght.  
Eydur odur can assaylye

And eydur smote odur wyth envye

Harrowde a sarsyn smote,  
That dedde he felle anon folke hote:  
A nodur and the thrydde also  
All dedde he fellyd to grounde th+  
Dedde felle all, pat hys handys raght:  
Well to smyte ne spared he noght.  
Dede pey lay in the feldys wyde.  
Harrowde was preysed on euery syde:  
All they sayde, hyt was a fende,  
That pe devell had thedur sende.  

The kyngys own stewarde,  
A stalworthke knyght and no cowarde  
(Ther was neuer an hardyar sarsyn)

Nor more seruyd Mahownde and Apolyn),

1 MS. hors dud bestryte. See the note.
2 MS. He luyes.
3 hyt altered from hys in MS.
Harrowde he gretyd *and* hys folkes euerychon, 10940
And to Harrowde he come anon 10941
And wyth hys swyrde so bytturly smote, 10942
That porowowt Harrowdes shelde hyt bote. 10943
Sythen þey drewe þer swyrdys kene 10944
And smote togedur wyth grete tene. 10945
The constabull ys ouyr ygoo: 10946
Of Harrowdes folkes he wrekýd hym þo. 10947
Harrowde mony of hys men dud lese, 10948
But he cowmfortyd þem neuer þe lese: 10949
Than þe constabull þey ouyrcomen 10950
And almoсте hym there had nomen), 10951
But aweywarde he flewe well hastelye, 10952
And Harrowde hym folowed stronglye. 10953
The constabull goyth awey fleynge 10954
And be hys flanke þe blode downe rennynge. 10955
Harrowde hym folowed vpon a rabyte, 10956
And he ouyr fleynge and dyscowmfyte, 10957
And Harrowde hym ouyrtakyth 10958
And hys helme on hys hedde he crakyth. 10959
Grete strokys togedur þey dud smyte 10960
Wyth ther swyrdys, þat well cowde byte. 10961
Harrowde hym nome in that fyght, 10962
And agaynþ he ledde hym anon ryght. 10963
† Toward hys felows he can dryue 10964
And prysoners he ladde moo, þen fyve, 10965
And so all, þat þey wolde haue, þey had þo 10966
And to the cyte be they goo; 10967
And a knyght hardly and bolde 10968
To the admerall hath tolde, 10969
That Harrowde was so gode a knyght: 10970
‘So gode was neuer sene in fyght. 10971
And þe constabull he hath ynome 10972
And hys men yslawe *and* ouercome.’ 10973
† Harrowde come forþe anon ryght, 10974
Before þe admerall dud he lyght.
Harrawde reconquers the Amiral's estate.

The constabull he zalde hym hastelye,
And he toke hym well gladlye.

‘Harrowde,’ sayde pe admyrall anon,
‘Thou haste dyscomfett my foon.’
My lefe frende, y graunt the
The maystry to haue of ys cuntre.
I make pe my constabull:
Thou pe ne holde hyt for no fabull.’

Of Harrowde men haue moche dowte
Bope wythynme pe cyte and wythowte.
Harrowde not longe pere abdyd,\(^1\)
But fro pem soon he rydyth:
Thorow pe londe and pat\(^2\) cuntre:
Castels and cytees conquered hee,
That pe admerall had forgone:
He conqueryd them euerychone.
The kynge he doy p grete harme, aply\(^3\)t:
Hys men he slewe downe ryght.

When pe kynge harde thys,
That pe constabull takyn ys
And hys men slayne in pe felde also
And hys barons dyscormyfyt bope too,
He ys wrope perfore and well sorye
And wyth angur wele can aske in hye,
Why hyt ys and wherefore,
That hys men be thus forlore.
Then answeryd to hym a knyght:
‘Syr, y shall telle pe anon ryght.
To the admyrall ys ycome
A swybe moche my\(^3\)ty grome,
An olde hore kny\(^3\)t and a belde:
Soche a nodur come neuer in felde.
In all ys londe pe ys not soche a kny\(^3\)t,
Were he neuer so well ydy\(^3\)t,
That hys stroke my\(^3\)t adrye,

---

\(^1\) he omitted in MS.  \(^2\) cyte blotted out after pat in MS.
But he schulde hyt sore aby.'

\[\text{Harrowde's conquests lost again.}\]

(He post, hys herte wolde breke in sondur), 11012
And comawndyd þere anon ryghtys
To assemble an c thousand knyghtys
Wyth strenkyp to take þe admyrall,
'And hys fowle hed of smyte y schall.
Fro þens depart wyll y noght,
Or y hym hane to dethe broght
And that olde curle hye honge:
Hys rewle lastyth a lytull to longe.' 11020

\[\text{Hys oost he can ðogedur bede}\]
And vpon þe admyrall strongly he yede
And dystroyed hys castels and hys cytees:
That Harrowde wanne, ageyne he les.\(^1\) 11024

\[\text{The admyrall hys folke can bede,}\]
Lytull and mykell in all hys lede,
And Harowde to hym came þo ryghtys,
That was þe beste of all þe knyghtys.
There archers anon he dyght
And graythed them all redy to fyght.
Sythen þey smetyn to\(^2\) þer foon\(\text{w}\)
And woundys made þorow flesche and boon. 11032
Harde þey smetyn on odur syde
And redyn and prekyd be þe feldys wyde.
Grete harme þey dud þe kynge there
And slewe hys men, þat stalworthe were. 11036
Stronglye hym wrathed þo þe kynge
And to hys folke he made chalynge.\(^3\)
Hyt was feyre day and ferre fro nyght:
Many oon was dradde in that fyght.
Wyth sorow many dyed there
Of the knyghtys, þat well cowde were.

\[\text{The admyrall in that stownde}\]

\(1\) MS. lesys. \quad 2 \text{gedur some blotted out after \textit{to} in MS.}\]
\(3\) \text{callynge?}\]
thrown off his horse.

His men fled at first, but soon rallied and assailed the king.

Harrowde, fighting between the king and the king’s men,

took his Steward prisoner. This done, he brought a horse to the Amiral.

The king, despairing of victory, fled.

Fellyd ys downe to the grounde
And many of hys men hath he lorde:
Well swype wo he ys theryroe.
Hys knyghtys all tohewen bee
And porow pe felde faste can flee,
But they turned soone ageyne
And assayled pe kynge vpon a grene,
And he hym defendyd, as a man:
All, pat he smote, felle downe oun.

Harrowde that can aspye
And to hym soone drewe nye.
Betwene hym and hys men he wendyp
And harde strokys to hym he sendyp.
But pe steward soone come can
For to helpe hys lorde than,
And porow strenkyp and porow my3t
Harrowde wanne pe steward ryght,
And aftur pat he gate an hors
And to pe admyrall swype goys
And horsyd hym full myghtylye
In mavgre of pose, pat stode hym by.
Of many he made pe hedde of to fleyn
Of pem, pat stode hym agayne.
The kynge he assayled and hys men
And ouyrprewe pem in pe fenne.
The kynge was well wrope wythall,
When he sye hys men to grounde falle.
Thorow them that ylke day
He demyd to fayle of hys pray.
He poghth, pe warse went on hys syde.
There he wolde no lenger abyde:
Homewarde fleyng faste he goyth
And wenyth, that no man hyt ne seyth.

1 geth : seth ?
Harrowde hym folowed faste,  
Whyll pat pe stede wolde laste.  
He had hym take or ellys ynome  
Or in batell haue be\(^1\) overcome,  
But pat \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{a}}}}}\) come a yonglynge:  
Of all pe todur he myght be kynge.  
When\(^2\) he sawe pe kynge fleande  
And Harrowde\(^3\) aftur hym dryuande,  
Then he\(^4\) pe kynge soone to socowre 3ode  
And seyde to Harrowde, as he rode:  
"Thou olde \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{and}}}}}\) forhoryd man,\(^5\)  
Well lytull wytt ys the an\(\text{-}\),  
That pou folowest owre kynge,  
That y loun ouyr all thynge.  
Thou schalt abye, or thou goo,  
For pou haste wro\(\text{-}\)t vs moche woo.  
That gode stede, pat ys thyne,  
Y hope to god, he schall be myne.'  
He smote at Harrowde soone anon\(\text{-}\)  
And sende hym strokys gode won,  
And to the todur hym well smote  
Wyth a swyrde, pat well bote,  
That bothe pey felle of \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) stedys.  
And sy\(\text{-}\)pen \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) swerd\(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{y}}}s\text{-}}}\) \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\)ey drewe, \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{w}}}}}\)thowte dredys:  
Grete strokys \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) ey Smyten there  
Vpon the helmys, that trysty were.  
They hewe \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) helme \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{w}}}}}\)th golde enclosed  
And the brymme small ymaylydde.  
Togedur \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) ey smete \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{w}}}}}\)th swyrd\(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{y}}}s\text{-}}}\) bryght:  
Eydur odur to sloo they dud \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{p}}}}}\) myght.  
\(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{f}}}}}\) Harrowde hym drewe soone besyde;  
For he wolde no lenger abyde.  
"Knyght,' he seyde, 'gode \(\text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{and}}}}}\) hende,\(^6\)  
\(1\) \text{\underline{\text{\textbf{\textit{hau}}} be I suppose must be omitted.}\)  
\(2\) MS. Then.  
\(3\) Harrowde written over the kynge struck out.  
\(4\) he omitted in MS.  
\(5\) Before this a whole line seems to be erased in MS.
HARRAWDE ASKS HIS OPPONENT'S NAME.

Telle me, or þou hens wende,
So almyghty god saue the,
Where were þou borne and in what cuntre,
And do wyselye and ȝelde the rathe,
That y do the no more scathe.

Swyþe yonge þou art, so þynketh me:
Gret harme hyt were, and y slewe þe.'

But the answer was:

'I shall kill you

unless you discover yourself,

After the fight had been renewed for a short time,

though there be no great glory to be won by killing so old a man.'

Harrawde replied that in his country people were the bolder, the older they were.

1 F' in For altered from T in MS.
2 No rhyme. Perhaps two lines are wanting. See the note.
The youth then said he was Guy's son.

If Wyth that he wythdrew hym there
Wyth sterne semblant and harde chere:
"Knyght," he seyde, "Pou art well wyse,
Wyght, hardy and of mekyll pryce.
Thorow strenkyth y wolde not pe telle:
Arste y wolde myselfe let qwelle;
But, for pou in loue besechyst me
Thyn askynge y schall telle the.
I was borne yn Yngleonde
Yn Warwyk, as y vndurstonde.
Syr Gye my fadur was:
A bettur knyght neuyr nas.
When he owte of pat londe wente,
A knyght he louyd veramente:
Hys name was Harrowde of Arderne.
Wyth hym y was pe werre to lerne:

WARWICK.
He me forpe bredde and louyd me myche
And kepyd me well worshipfullye.
And marchandys me awey ladde
(Therfore Harrawde moche sorowe made)
And broght me into thys londe
And gafe me to þe kynge in honde.
Hys doghtur swyþe me forþe bredde
In hur bowre and well me fedde.
The kynge dubbyd me a kynght:
So bad hys doghtur, þat swete wyght,
And holpe me to thys stownde,
That y mett wyth þe on þys grownde.'

When Harrowde ouerharde thys
Of Reynbourn, how hyt ys
Hys owne kynde lorde sone,
For whome mekyll sorow he hap ouercome:
He forsok hys swyrde and hys schylde
And toward heuyn hys handys vp helde
And seyde: 'lorde, þat all thynge wroght
And mannys sowle fro helle boght,
Loued thou be of thys day,
That y my lordys sone see may.'

For yoye he wepyd and wroth hys hande,
On fote he myght no longer stande:
In sowynyng he felle þere to grownde.
That sawe Reynbourn þat ylke stownde,
Betwene hys armes areryd hym hee:
Of hym he toke grete pyte.
Harrowde uppon hys fete hym dyght:
Reynbourn had wondur of þat syght.
'Syr knyght, mercye,' quod he;
'Who thou art, telle hyt me.'
Soone answeryd Harrowde þe knyght,

1 MS. moche.
2 y in marchandys all but gone in consequence of a worm-hole.
That wyth Reynbourn had holdyn þe fyght:
' Some tyme well þou knewe me
In Wallyngforde, my chefe cyte.'

When Reynbourn þus hym hande speke,
For dole hyt wolde hys herte breke.
At hys fete he felle to grounde
And seyde: 'Harrowde, allas þys stownde!
Haue mercy on me, yf thou wylt:
All to mekyll ys my gylte.'

What for pyte and what for yoye,
Bothe in swowne felle they,
And aftur lyght vpon þer stedys
And toward the cyte boþe þey yede.
Then þe admyrall þey tolde þare
Of ther acorde and of ther fare,
And he hym worschypped well swyþe;
For hym he was bothe glad and blyþe,
That the kynge ys overcome
And þys men slayne and ynome.

They askyd lycence for to goo
Into þe cuntre, þey came fro.
The admerall preyed þem to dwelle stytle,
But þat was noþynge of þer wylle.
But, when he sawe, þat þey wolde wende,
He offurde þem, as man full hendc,
Golde and syluyr grete plente
To lede wyth þem into þer cuntre.
Schyp þey fownde þere redy dyght:
They went theryn that ylke nyght.
So longe þey wente saylande,
That comyn þey were vpon þe lande.
All that day þey hauve gone,
But castell nor cyte fonde þey non, 
Tyll hyt was at the euyn tyde.
They sye a castell nyc besyde:

\( ^1 \text{ested : yeden?} \)
THEY ARE RECEIVED IN A CASTLE BY A LADY.

Hyt was all wastyd wyth warre and fyxt.
To þe zate þey came full ryght.

Upon inquiry

11252

Then quod Harrowde to þe portere:
'Speke wyth me, for seynt Rychere.
Who ys lorde of thys cuntre?
We aske harbowre for charyte.
To morne þerly, when hyt ys day,
We wyll wende forthe owre way.'

The porter seyde: 'be thyss day,
Of my lorde can y not say,
But in þe halle ys my lady
Full sorowfull and full drery:
For hur lorde, that ys forlorn,
Sche mornyth boþe euyn and morne,
But to my lady wyll y goo
And telle hur of yow twoo.'

The porter went into þe halle:
Before þe lady he can down falle.
'Madame,' he seyde, 'here wythowt
Stonde ii knyghtys bolde and stowte.
That oon ys yonge, þat oþur ys olde:
They seme bothe curtes and bolde.
They be men of farre cuntre,
By ther array as semyth me,
And boþe þey be of vncowthe lande
And þey beseehe þe, y vndurstande,
Of harbowre for thys nyght
For the loue of god almyght,
And þerly at morowe ryse þey wyll
And no lenger abyde they nylle.'

The porter went to tell her of the two strangers,

11256

And þe lade comawndyd þem in to come
And prayde to Cryste of heuyn, godys sone,

11260

That sche þat day byde myght
Of hur lorde to haue a syght.
The porter þede ageyne anon
And swyþe he let þem in goon.

The porter was told by the porter that the lord of the castle had disappeared, but the lady was in the hall mourning for the loss of her husband.

11266

If the porter went into þe halle:
Before þe lady he can down falle.
'Madame,' he seyde, 'here wythowt
Stonde ii knyghtys bolde and stowte.
That oon ys yonge, þat oþur ys olde:
They seme bothe curtes and bolde.
They be men of farre cuntre,
By ther array as semyth me,
And boþe þey be of vncowthe lande
And þey beseehe þe, y vndurstande,
Of harbowre for thys nyght
For the loue of god almyght,
And þerly at morowe ryse þey wyll
And no lenger abyde they nylle.'

The porter went to tell her of the two strangers,

11272

And was directed by her to admit them.

11276

And þe lade comawndyd þem in to come
And prayde to Cryste of heuyn, godys sone,

11280

That sche þat day byde myght
Of hur lorde to haue a syght.
The porter þede ageyne anon
And swyþe he let þem in goon.
At þe halle dore þey dud lyght,
The two gode knyghtys of grete myȝt.
Serjawntyys leynþ1 anon ryght,
Wyth grete wylle þer harnes dud dyȝt
And toke þer lawncyys and þer sheldys2
And leyde þem vpon þe teldes.
The lady grett them felyre anon:
And vnarmyd þem swythe soon:3

If to mete she ladde þem fayre dyȝht
And to soper set þem anon ryght.
Of seruyse they had grete plente;
And, when þey had ete and dronke in hye,
Harrowde askyd of þe lady thys,
What hur lordys name ys.
And sche answeryd: ‘y schall fe telle,
Not oon worde lye y nylle:
De la Mowntaynþ syr Amys.
Now ther ys none of more pryce.
A steward ther was in Almaynþ,
That made mony a wyckyd bargeyn þ.
Stewarde he was wyth the emperowre:
God geue hym mysauentowre.
Hys lordys traytour prouyd he was,
For whom we be in sorowfull case;
For Gye of Warwyk we louyd well,
And my lorde hym recetted in hys castell:
For the dewkys dethe Otow,
A thefe, a traytowre, a false felow;
And syþen we flewe owte of þat lande
And in þys cuntre we were of stondé:
Thys cuntre ys full of eluys:3
The mekill Ardem yclepyd hyt ys.
An eluysch knyȝt longyth þerto:

1 MS. Syr James Epyen1.
2 sperys before shel dys first altered to shel dys, but afterwards struck out.
3 MS. eluysche.
Moche sorow he hath vs doo.
Wyth hym oones faght my lorde
And many a dynte gafe hym wyth hys sworde.  
To many men he dud owtrage,
To yoman, grome, squyer and page.
He hente my lorde at a tyde
And gafe hym strokys full vnryde.
Noþyng myȝt depart hys hawberk wele,
Swyrde nor spere ne knyfe of stele.
He chasyd my lorde halfe a day:
Thorowowt þe wode he flewe away.
There he hath made a queynt gynne:
A man, þat comyth onys therynne,
But yf hyt were þorow godys grace,
Comyth he neuer owt of that place.
Thorow trechery of þat knyght
My lorde had full mekyll vnryght.
Sethyn harde y neuer of hym typande
Nor neuyr schall, y vndurstande.'

‘Lorde,’ seyde Harrowde, ‘hyght he Amys,
Of þe Mowntayn þe gode marchys?
He was my frende and my felawe:
To hym wolde y full ferre dreawe.
A, my dere soone Reynbowrne,
How he louyd thy fadur Gyrown,
And so syr Gye louyd hym dere;
For he had ofte to hym mystere.
We schall hym helpe, yf me may spede:
To owre socowre he hath grete nede.’
Reynbowrn answeryd: ‘þorow godys grace
Yn þat forest now wyll y chace.
I schall neuer stynte nor blynne,
Madame, or y thy lorde wynne.’
The lady seyde: ‘for seynt Mary,
Ne be þou not to folkehardy.'

1 MS. swyrde.
3yf *pou* passe *wythynne* that gynne,
Ther schall neuer man ageyn who wyynne.

*If* Full feyre were ther beddys dyght:
They lay *and* slepyd all *pat* nyght.
They arose soon in the mornynge
And dy3t *pem wythowte* dwellynge.
When Reynbourn was all redy dyght
And armyd well to hys ryght,
Hys gode stede he bystrode
And owt of *pe castell* he *pen rode.
‘Harrowde,’ he seyde, ‘*pou* schalt dwelle here
And make the lady full gode chere.
I schall here holde, *pat* y hur behyght,
And brynge hur lorde *porow* godys myght.’
Syr Harrowde wolde *wyth* hym haue goon,
But he wolde haue neuyr oon.
Syr Harrowde was in drede of *hym* sore:
To Jesus Cryste he betoke hym thore.

*Reynbourn* went forthe *and* Harrowde he lefte pare:
To the foreste he can fare.
Euyr he speryd the ryght way,
And men hym taght, how hyt lay:
He knewe *pe* markys of that place.
Then he was in a parels case.
Well longe he rode forthe, y say,
Tyll hyt was none of that day:
Wyth that he sawe hym besyde
An hylle *wyth* 3atys feyre and wyde.
Tho he blessyd hym *wyth* hys ry3t honde
And into the hylle he wonde.
The 3atys closyd, when he in wente:
Full sore he drade hym to be schente.
Hyt was darke: syght had he none,
Well halfe a myle tyll he had gone.
Then he sawe a lyght full clere
And he beganne to make gode chere.
He came to a broad and deep water, upon the other side of which, upon a beautiful green, stood a splendid palace.

He saw a watur depe and brode:
The durwarde full faste he rode.
Beyonde þe watur he sawe a grene:
A feyrer had neuer kynge nor quene.

All maner flowrys grewe there,
That of any vertews were.
Ther was in þat herber grene
All spycys, that myght bene.

Wythynne þer stode a palays bryght:
A feyrer had neuer kynge nor knyȝt.
The postys were of fyne corall
And þe sparrys of cydre medylde wythall.
Of fyne corall were the stonys
Medulde wyth metall for þe nonys.
Some were of safewrs and some of saradyn,
And some were emrodys fyne.
Hyt was closyd, that ylke palays,
Wythynne þer wallys wyth saradyns.¹

Hyt was bataylyd longe and wyde
Wyth flowrys coruyn on euery syde.
All were þe wallys of marbull fre.
Before þe jatys there stode a tree:
Theryn were fowlys nyght and day,
That songyn mony a mery lay.
The nobull array of þat ylke halle
Y haue no tyme to telle yow all;
For, yf y schulde hyt yow telle,
All to lunge y schulde here dwelle.

Raynbowrn all awondurd was
Ouyr that watur for to passe.
He prouyd þe watur wyth hys spere,
Yf þat hys hors myȝt hym ouer bere.
But he nyghed no maner grownde:
He was full drery in that stownde.
But tyll hymselfe he can say,

¹ Corrupt. See note.
That he schulde neuer wende away, 11424 resolved to cross the water.
Tyll he wyste, yf that he myght, His horse swam over with him.
What was þat yoye and that lyght. 11428 [leaf 235 b, col. 2]

And syþen into þe watyr he wonde. That watur hym closyd all wyþynne
That he blessyd hym wyþh hys ryght honde
And syþen into þe watyr he wonde. 11428 [leaf 235 b, col. 2]

That watur hym closyd all wyþynne
Fro the fote vp to the chynne. 11432
He felle depe, or he myght ryse,
Thretty fote of longe assyse.

God he cryed mercy thare. 11435
The stede was gode, þat hym bare, In the palace,
And also conyng and well lyght
And lawncyd vp wyþh full grete myþt
And fastenyd hys fete vpon þe londe þanþ, 11436
And Raynbowyn was a yoyfull man
And þankyd god heuyn kynge,
That he wolde hym owt of parell brynge.

And to þe paleys he hym dyght : In the palace,
Before þe halle downe he lyght.
Syþen he went into þe halle
And fownde no man, þat wolde hym calle.
Fro chaumbur to chaumbur he can fare : after a long search,
Mony a mervell he fonde thare.
He come into a chaumbur of stone :
Therynne he fonde a knyþt allone.
He hym gret on feyre manere :
Awondurd he was, what he dud þere.
'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'for seynt Martyn,'
Ys all þys feyre paleys thyþw? 11452
Or what man ys lorde here ?
Whethur ys he farre or nere ?
Wyþh hym wolde y aqweynytud bee.
And also, syr knyght, for charyte,
Telle me þy name, my freunde so dere,
And why þou lyest on þys manere.'

And he answeryd : 'y hyght Amys. 11456

This was Amys,
I was some tyme a knȳt of pryse.

Hedur y come thorow trechery:

Therfore y þus in presow lye.

Of all þys ys myn nothynge,

Y the telle, wythowte lesynge;

But he, that ys lorde here,

He ys full felle on all manere.

He come owte of elves londe.

All thys ys hys in thys londe:

The palays and thys foreste wyde

All ys hys on euery syde.

Soche vertue hath þys palays,

Men myʒt leve þeryn allways,

Nor he schulde neuyr older bee,

Then when he comyþ to þys cuntre.'

Reynbrown said

¶ Tho seyde Raynbowrn: 'art þou Amys,

The gode knyʒt of so mekyll pryce?

Thorowowte þe forest y haue þe soʒt

And hedur y am in parell broght.

But, now y haue þe fownde here,

Thou schalt go wyth me, be seynt Rychere.

I schall þe lede to thy wyfe:

Sche ys full trewe1 in hur lyfe.'

Amys answeryd: 'for my loue, let bee.

Moche wondur y haue of the,

How and on what manere

Thou were so hardy to come here.

Ther come neuer man in þys hylle

Thorow qweyntys nor þorow grylle,

But yf the lorde hym hedur broght:

But þorow hys leue come þou noght.

How myghtyst þou me fro parell brynge

And mayste not þyselpe for nopynge?

Yf thou ledde me now away,

For oght, þat euyr þou do may,

1 t in trewe all but gone in consequence of a worm-hole.
Or we were paste a furlonge,
We schulde be slayne wyth peynys stronge;
For he, that ys lorde here,
He ys full felle, be seynt Rychere.
Yf he were fro hens a thousande myle,
He wolde wete wythynne a whyle
All, that euyr we wolde haue done,
And be here at vs full soone.'

Reynbown seyde: ' drede pat noght.
We schall do well, as y haue poght.
Ryse vp, for the trynyte,
And come forthe boldely wyth me.
Be god of heuen and seynt Mary,
Yf any man be so hardy
To holde vs here ageynow owre wylle,
I schall wyth hym play full ylle:
Wyth my swyrde, pat well can byte,
I schall hym full sore smyte.'

Then quod Amys: 'let be by fare.
Hyt ys not worje to speke no mare.
Wyth no strenky p of byn arme
Wyth by wepyn pou schalt hym not harme.
But take bys swerde, pat hangyth here
Besyde me on thys pyllere:
Wyth that swyrde pou schalt hym tane,
Yf euyr thou schalt hym slane.'

Then he drewe owte pat swyrde bryght:
Thereporow pen was all pat chaumbur lyzt.
In he put hyt agayne:
Of that swyrde he was full fayne.
To Amys he wente forthe than
And toke hym vp, as a man.
Bothe vpon pat stede pey strode
And full faste forpe pey rode.

As he can faste forwarde ryde,
They soon saw an armed knight approaching them.

They sê a knyght þem besyde,
A fêre knyght faste prekande
Well armeyd wyth a spere in hys hande.
’Syr knyzt,’ he sayde, ‘abyde a throwe.
Me þynkyþ, þou doyst agyeyn þe lawe.
How were þou now so folkehdye
To passe the watur so boldelye
And come into my palays here
My preson to breke on þys manere?

Thus dud neuer man ere
Wyþhowt my leue, or y here where.
Bothe schulle ye dwelle wyth me:
Ye schall neyur deleyyrd bee.

He threatened them with death,
Here schall ye leue yowre hedys bape,
Y yow plyght here, full rathe.’
¶ Amys starte forthe full lyght.

and attacked Reynbrown,
The elvysch knyzt smote hym full sare
Wyth that swyrde, that he bare,
And he to hym wyth all hys myght.

who defended himself with all his might.
Reynbrown’s hauberke and schylde he smote in twoo,
Hys helme of stele he dud alsoo.
Raynbourn began to þyneke thanð
On hys fadur Gye, the nobull manð.

he struck his adversary so vehemently
He smote as faste, as he myght drye,
The elvysch knyzt on þe helme so hye.
He bowyd yn a fote the pane :
The elvysch knyzt to þe grownde yede þanð.
The swyrde owt of hys hande he reuydde
And schulde haue smetyn of hys heuyd,1
But then he began to crye :
’Syr Reynbowrn, for godys mercy!
Well y wote, thou art full ryght
Gyes sone, the nobull knyght.

1 MS. *hedde*.
Sle me not, and on that couenande
Y schall the 3elde all my lande
And all, pat be in my prysown,
And all pe gode in my bandown; 11568
And feyre and well y schall pe brynge
Owte of the hylle wythowte lettynge.'
Tho seyde Reynbowrn: 'be seynt Myghelle,
Of thy tresowre kepe y no delle,
But delyuer pe prysoners echoon,
For god,' he seyde, 'ryght anoon.'
Into pe palays he went thare
And delyuyrde lesse and mare:
Wythowte peny or farthyngg
He dud them forthe brynge.
Owt of pe wode into a playne
He bro3t pem all and went agayne.
Reynbown was a yoyfull man,
pat he had wonne Amys pat.
Then belyve wythowten mare
To pe castell can pey fare.
When pey were comyn to pe halle,
Glade and blype were they all.
The lady was glad and blythe
And thankyd god oftesythe,
That sche sawe hur lorde so dere
Comyn home bope hoole and fere; 1 11584
For sche wende sekurlye
Neuyr to haue seyn hym wyth eye.
Also Harrawde, pe gode knyght,
Full feste he thankyd god almys3t,
That Raynbown porow godys grace
Passyd so well pat ylke place,
And also for Amys sake:
Full grete yoye can pey make.

Then he tolde Amys, how longe
when the knight offered to surrender all his property, and release his prisoners.
Reynbown declined the former, but accepted the latter.
[leaf 236 b, col. 2]
Reynbown and Amys
returned to the castle,
where all were glad of their arrival, especially the Lady.
Harrawde spoke

MS. sere.
to Amys of his own sufferings,
and told him that his deliverer was Reynbrown.

A knight brought news
that Steward Barrarde had been killed by an unknown pilgrim in defence of Tyrry,

and that Amys was again welcome to his former estate.

The fourth day after, Harrawde and Reynbrown took their leave of Amys,

He had bene in preson stronge
And suffurde payne and vylene
For hys lordys sone so free,
And how he was syr Reynbourn;
That delyuyrde hym of pryson;
And sepyyn he tolde hym all hys lyfe,
How he had be in grete stryfe,
And how that Gye sethyn longe whyle
Was wente in exsyle.
Betwene þem was yoye and gamyn
That tyme, þat þey were all samyn.

Wyth that þer come a knyght prekande
And broȝt þem full gode tythande,
That Barrarde was broȝt to grownde:
A pylgryme hym slewe in þat stowitnde
And defendyd erle Tyrry,
But no man wyste, sekyly,
Fro whens he come ne fro what cuntre,
Nor wyste no man, what he myght be.
And at mony a man there
The emperowre dud enquire:
'Yf Amys myȝt foundyn bee,
All hys londe he schall hane free.'
When Amys herde, þe dewke was slayne,
He was neuer aforo halfe so fayne.
He thankyd god in trynyte,
That he myght so venged bee.
All, that euer were there dwellyng,
Had yoye of that tythynge.

Harrowde and Reynbourn dwellyd þare
Thre dayes and no mare.
Erly on the fowrthe day
They toke þer leue and wolde away;
And the erle dud also:
Home to hys londys wolde he goo
And preyed them for charyte
To come *wyth* hym to hys cuntre
And he wolde geue *pe* all bedene
All hys londys fre and clene.
But *pe* wolde of hym novyng:
They betoke hym to heuyn kyng:
Afterward Amys *wyth* grete honowre
Into Almayn 3ede to *pe* emperowre,
And he delyuyrd to hym all hym londe,
Frely into hym ownde:
And he hyt toke *wyth* gode chere
And seruyd hym, as hys lorde dere.
Harrawde and Reynbrown come in hye
Into Ynglonde warde¹ full hastylye.
So longe pey had *pat* londe owt wente
And traunya*wyth* gode entente:
To Burgoyyn comyn they were,
There as Harrawde was knowynere,
That londe was all feryd than²,
And Harrowde askyd an vnco*wyth* man,
Why *pat* londe was so euyll dyght,
And he hym tolde anon ryght,
That hyt was porow *pe* prowde dewke Mylon, ¹
That ys so stowte and so felon.
² He hath not lefte a fote of londe,
But a castell here nyehonde,
That stondyth hye vpon *pe* rochere:
There he dwellyth *wyth* hys powere;
And all ys porow a sowdyere,
Of vnco*wyth* the londe a knyght full fere:
Soche oon sawe *pou* neuyr in no lande,
That was so wyght a man of hande.
*Jonge* he ys and mekyll of myght:
Berde hath he noon, *pat* nobull knyght.

¹ *warde* added over the line by the same hand in MS.
² The confusion in the following lines I think is owing to the translator, not to any scribe. See the note.
THEY HEAR ABOUT A VALIANT FOREIGN YOUTH.

Wyth the erle he hath bryn a yere
And spedd full well on all manere.
He hath vencowysd the dewke thryes
And slayne hys men on all wyse. 11672

The castels, pat the erle hath lorne
Many a day herebeforne,
He hath pem wonne porow strenkyp of honde:
In hys power ys all that londe. 11676
Thorow hym hath the erle bote
And put the dewke vndur fote.

This youth used
to keep a pass on
a hill, where he
had killed many
passengers.

Joundur he dwellyth vpon pe hylle,
There many a man hath spedde full ylle. 11680
An hundurde men hau lostre pe lyfe,
That haue be there wyth hym in stryfe.
A streyte passage ys holdyn thare:
Yf any man schall forthe fare, 11684
Hawberke or schelde he schall pere geue,
Yf he wyll afturwarde leue.

[Leaf 237 b, col. 1]
Yf any marchande passe or burges,
He schall lese hys beste harnes. 11688
And, yf he gruch anythynge,
He schall be slayne wythowte dwellyng.
Therfore hastely y yow say,
That ye wynde a nodur way." 11692
¶ Syr Reynbrown answeryd than;
And speke, as an hardy man:
‘Thankyd be Criste Jesus of heuyn,
That y haue founde my make euyn.
Yf he aske of vs anythynge,
I schall hym telle wythowte lettyng,
That we hau of hys ryght noght,
Nodur of vs he getyth ryght noght.
We wyll for owre lyuys fyght,
Whedur we do wyth wronge or ryght.’
¶ They pen wente forthe ther way
But a whyle, as y yow say. 11704

Reynbrown was
rejoiced at the
thought of having
now met with his
match.

Proceeding, they
soon saw him.
Reynbrown fights with this youth.

Vpon an hylle the sawe there stande
A knyght well armed full nerehande.
Then seyde Reynbourn: 'be my honde,
Jondur y see my felowe stonde.'
He made hym redy for to fyght:
To hym he wolde anon ryght.

'Wyth hym to juste ys my longyng.'
Quod Harrowde: 'wende on my blessyng.'

Rode then wyth gode wyll over the hille.
The todur came towarde the hylle.
For pryde per hertys wolde nere breke:
They wolde nodur to odur oon worde speke.

They justed togedur a grete stownde,
Tyll the were bope broght to grownde.
They starte on fote and drewe per brondys
And leyde on wyth bothe ther hondys.
They hewe faste on helmys and scheldys:
The peys slewe into the feldys.

That ylke batell was full felle:
The blode ranne down, as watur on welle.
Harrowde behelde the knyghtys fyght:
For Raynbourn he preyed to god almyghtt
To kepe hym fro ska e of hys lyfe;
For he was in a grete stryfe.

Harrowde seyde, wythowte fayle,
He sawe neuer a grettur batayle.

'Syr knyght,' quod pen Raynborn,
'Abyde and here my resown.
Thou art full bolde and wytyt of hande:
Telle me now, in what lande
Thou were borne and in what cuntre
And what name men calle the.
Neuyr yyt, but now thys throwe,
Ne myght y fynde my felowe,

1. frowardo? See the note.  
2. MS. helme.

WARWICK.

11708 Reynbrown made himself ready for the combat,  
11712 and the young knight came towards him down the hill.  
11716 Their battle was very violent.  
11720

[leaf 237 b, col. 2]  
11724

Harrowde said he had never witnessed a greater.  
Reynbrown inquired

11728

Reynbrown inquired

11732

his opponent's name and country:

11736

he confessed that he had now for the first time found his equal.
THE YOUTH REFUSES TO SURRENDER.

If his opponent would surrender, they would be friends for ever.

But the young knight had no mind to this:

He was sure of killing not only his adversary,

but what he thought to be his adversary's father, too.

The battle was renewed.

That my3t me stande, but pou now here:
Therfore y rede on feyre manere,
That pou the 3ylde here to me
(My trowthe y schall plyght the,
That we schall euer fremys be)
And come wyth me to my cuntre:
I schall pe gene castels and feys,
Townes, borowghes and gode cyteys.'

¶ 'Syr knyght,' he seyde, 'let be hy fare.
So god me helpe owt of my care,
Of me schall pou wete nothyngge
For heste nor for no sermonyngge:
Thy hed schall of, be my crowne.
Whereof makyst pou so longe sermowne?
Vpon thys hylle haue y reuydde
Mony a man fro hys heuydde.1
Fownde y 3yt neyr no knyght,
That so well plesyd me in fyght,
But well y wote, or we haue done,
I schall pe gene full euyll dome
And pat olde churle also
(He ys thy fadur), so mote y goo.
For sothe, lytyll he louyd the,
When he pe sende to fyght wyth me.
I schall hym make a gode present
Of thy hedde wyth gode entent:
Then schall y hys berde so schake,
That hys neck schall all tocrake.'

When Raynbrownv vndurstode ry3t þore,
þat he wolde reuerens hym no more,
As faste as he myght drye,
Vp he toke hys swyrde in hye.
On hys helme he smote so faste,
That a quarter all tobraste.
He was so stonyed, he my3t not stonde:

1 MS. hedde.
Adowne he felle on bope hys honde.
Vp he start full of tene
And smote Raynbourn wyth wrap, y wene. 11776
They faghth wyth so grete yre,
That owt of pe helme floewe pe fyre.
Soche strokys gaf pe knyghtys stowte,
That pe hylle donyed all abowte. 11780
A felle fyght then there was:
Vndur hevyn neuer gretter nas.
Longe myzt they not fyght soo,
But pat owen schulde pat other sloo. 11784
Harrowde sawe, wythhowte fayle,
Ayther can other so faste assayle.
He cowde not chese the bettur pan:
For them he was a sory man).
He seyde: ’hyt were grete dele and care,
Yf ̈ bern schulde other mysfare.’
He went betwene them in hye
And seyde: ‘syr knyght, for seynt Mary,
Wythdrawe pe now, as a goode felowe,
And speke wyth me a lytyll throwe.
I rede, thou lene now pys fyght
And acoerde pe wyth thys knyght.
He ys rych e and of grete powere.
Of landys and ledys on all manere
He schall pe gene grete plente:
All at thy wylle schall hyt bee.
I rede, yf pou wyll me trowe,
Thou do pe in hys mercy now.’
And he answeryd: ‘pou olde hore,
Say pou me wythowt more,
So helpe pe god and seynt Mary,
What ys py name? telle me in hye.
Syth the tyme, y speake wyth pe,
All y quake, as leef on tre:
For drede of pe thys ylke day

THE YOUTH STANDS IN AWE OF HARRAWDE. 339
All my strenkyth now ys away.
Syth y myght armes bere,
Ferde of oon was y neuer ere.
But for hys name y comawnde þe,
That suffurde deþe vpon a tre:
Telle me, in what maner of wyse
I haue thys drede and þys fayntyse.
Other art þou þe deuyll of helle,
That art comyn me to qwelle?
Or what þou wylt, for charyte,
Euyll or gode, now telle hyt me.'

"Nay," sayde Harrowde, 'do wey þy fare;
For of 1 me schalt þou wyte no mare,
But thou telle me beforne,
What ys þy name and where þou were borne.
Aftarward may thou here,
What y am, that stondyth here.
Sethyn may þou wytt of þys knyȝt,
What he ys, anon ryght.
We 2 schall þe telle all þys þynge,
Wyth þat þou make to vs no lesynge.'

And he answeryd: 'ye schall not here
For drede of hym in no manere,
But for to wyt, for what þynge
I haue þys drede and þys qwakynge.
Y was borne in Ynglonde
In Wallyngforde, y vndurstonde.
My fadur was a doghty knyght:
Harrowde of Arderm, for soþe, he hyȝt.
When he went owt of þat cuntre
To seeke hys lordys soon so fre,
That maþchandyþe stale on wykkyd manere,
Sethyn more, then vii yere,
The erle of Leycestur kepyd me

\(^1\) of over the line in the same hand.
\(^2\) Wh blotted out before We.
And louyd me wyth herte fre.
When y was a yonge squyer,
Wyth hym y was in grete power.
Yf y dud any skathe
Or ony man wyth me were wrafe,
I schulde þen haue vpbrayde
And for my fadur be myssayde,
For y wolde not forthe fare
To seke my fadur, where he ware,
Yn any londe yf he were slane
Or he were in preson tane.
Therof was y repreuyd ay,
But y bethoght me on a day,
To seke my fadur y wolde fonde:
For nophynge wolde y wonde.
¶ To Wallyngforde y wente prekande:
My fadur armes there y fonde,
Hys hawberke and hys gode stede,
Hys schylde, hys swyrde and hys ower wede.
Y made myselfe a knyght than:
Ne tolde y arste neuer man:
Forthe y went on þys manere:
Y haue hym soght bothe ferre and nere.
Sethyn y haue redyn and gone
Yn straunge londys many oon,
In Lumbardy and in Spayne,
In Sesoyn and in Almayne:
3yt herde y neuer speke of no where,
But y haue soght my fadur þere.
¶ Sethyn y come to thyss londe,
I fonde an erle foste werrande:
He was stroyed þorow þe dewke Mylon,
All hys londe, castell and towne,
But thys castell besyde þe see,

1 MS. slayne.
2 MS. Sesyon.
3 of omitted in MS.
There de dwellyth and hys meyne.
I come to hym in hys mystere:
I haue hym holpe wyth my powere.
Then had he, that knyght free,
Thretty knyghtys in hys meyne:
Now hath he iii hundurde wyght
And other men well dyght.
Hys londe ys well wonne agayn
And hys enmyes take and many slayn.

Keeping the pass,
Here on þe hylle well ofte y stande
Agayne þe londe, þat passe þe londe.
I aske every man, that y fynde,
Of my fadur some tythyng,
But herde y neuer man speke wyth mowþe,
That oght of hym telle cowthe.
Therfore ofte was y wraþe
And many a man y haue done skajje.

Harrowde herkenyd hym ryt
And hys eyen he wepyd sore.
Quod Harrowde: ‘leue syr knyght,
Telle me þy name, for god almyþt.’
‘Asslake,’ he seyde, ‘ys my name.
Here y haue had full grete scheame.’

Harrowdes herte wolde nere breke:
Vnceþe a worde myght he speke.

‘Asslake, what haste thou done?
I am þy fadur, þou art my son.’

I am Harrowde, þat þou haste soght:
Iesu hath me hedur broght.
Y haue suffurde paynes stronge
To seke my lordys sone full longe.
Loo, he ys here, syr Raynbourne,
The nobull knyghtys sone, syr Gyown.

Wyth hym þou haste fognyth longe:
Yc be boþe wyght and stronge.
Falle down to hys fote in hye
And on thy kne pou crye hym mercy.
3yld e hym by swyrde in pys place
And do the all in hys grace.'

When he wyste, syr Asslake,
That hys fadur to hym spake
And Gyes sone was redy there,
That he faght so faste wyth ere :
He had grete yoye in pat stownde
And on hys kneys he felle to grownde.
He 3yldy to hym hys swyrde bryght
And bad hym do, as hyt was ryght :
'Smyte of my hedde at thy wylle.
Thys trespas ys bope grete and grylle.
Or ellys take homage here
To serve the, as my lorde dere.'

When Raynbrown harde, þere he stode,
That hyt was Harrowdys sone þe gode,
He toke hym vp be hys hande
And kyssyd hym sore wepande.
Seþyn he kyste hys fadur dere : 2
Ther yoye was gret on all manere.

Sythyn Asslake ladde þem well þare :
Before þe erle þey came full 3are.
He tolde þe erle every dele,
How he had fownde hys fadur well
And Gyes sone of Warwyke :
'In all þe worlde ys none hym lyke.'
The erle of hym was glad and blythe
And honowryd hym oftesythe
And profurde hym grete honowre,
Bope feyre castels and ryche towre.
But þerof wolde he ryght noght :
Into Ynglonde was all hys thoght.
They ne stynte ne þey ne blanne,

1 thyn originally, but n blotted out in MS.
2 ther (r not quite complete) blotted out before dere in MS.
Tyll they to the see came. A schyp they fownde all in hye:
Ouyr they passyd full hastelye.

They came to London, where they remained for three days. On the fourth they set off for Warwick, where they were joyfully received.

They honowred þem on all manere And made þem ryche and of grete powere And gaf þem all þer own lande And well more into ther hande; And þey hyt toke wyth game and glee

Harrawde and his son repaired then to Wallingford. Where they wended to Wallyngforde And Asslake, hys sone hende: There wolde they dwelle and be Wyth hys lady feyre and fre; For he had be in trauell ferre Loos and pryce to wynne in werre.

May God graunt us the bliss of heaven. God for hys names seyn 
Graunt vs all þe blysse of heynyn

And gyt vs grace, þat hyt so bee: Amen, amen, for charyte!
NOTES.

Line 10. The subject of the sentence *they* is omitted. Cf. ll. 65—67:

Sche had *maysturs* at hur honde,
The wysest men of that londe,
And (*viz. THEY*) taght hur astronomye.

783-4: Ordyr of knyght *þou dud me* take,
And (*viz. Y*) passyd the see for thy sake.

4749-50: Tyrrye seruyd *dewke Loyere*,
And (*viz. HE, dewke Loyere*) hym louyd.

10073-5: *An aungell* he seude to hym full euyn
Hym to cowmfort wyth mery steuynu,
And (*viz. HE, the angel*) seyde.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1250:

Woger him þouʒt, and (*viz. HE*) seyd þo.

Ib. 4523-4: Treuʒe bitven *hem* is plįt,
And after (*viz. ʃAI*) kist anon riʒt.

Ib. 9367-9: Æmerour sent after him þo
Wip þe fiscer and ʃeþer mo,
And (*viz. ʃAI*) brouʒt him, saunfayle.

Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 1038-9:

Boute ʒif þe lord *him* hider ladde,
Opeɾ (*viz. HE*) of him sum leue hadde.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 106:

. . . he sawe *his lorde Guy*
Vpon his stede swithe comyng
And in his honde his swerde keruyng,
And (*viz. HE, Guy*) was assailed with wolues.

Copland’s Guy, M iiiii:

. . . i se hym stand in awe,
And (*viz. HE*) putteth forth no prowde sawe.

Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1082:

There he sawe *the beste abyde,*
And (*viz. IT*) had slayn hys howndys two.

Generydes, ed. Aldis Wright, 2395-6:

And whan this stede to *Auerius* was brought,
And (*viz. HE*) wist, fro whenshe he came.
I thought it expedient to quote these examples, as some editors, in such cases, have unnecessarily inserted pronouns. But, e. g., there is no need to add anything in Havelok, 14-15:

Fil me a cuppe of ful god ale,
And wile driken, her y spelle,

where Skeat reads And y wile; or in King Horn, ed. Lumby, 1267-8

Pu me to kniȝt houe,
And kniȝthod haue proued,

where Mätzner (Sprachproben, I. 227) reads haue y proued.

39. Well he louyd feyre stedys. The French original:
Bons cheualers mult ama.

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 2:

Good kyghtis he loued, ywys.

The author of our version evidently mistook cheualers for chevaus.

58-59. A slight anacoluthon, the translator going on as if he had begun Sehe had a vyseage, &c. Cf. ii. 4290 and 7409.

60. ȝere = ere, O.E. ër. Cf. ȝer, 4570; ȝar, 10432; ȝore, 7914; ȝerre = O.E. æror, 8422; ȝerly = early, O.E. ærlieæ, 9274, 9293, 9438, 10089, 11255, 11277; ȝerle, 2401, 4957, 5849, 9276, 9525; ȝarly, 240; ȝorthe = earth, O.E. corðe, 2825, 5066, 7250, 7255, 8163, 9643, 10349; ȝerthe, 8702, 9641; ȝerthely = earthly, O.E. eorðlic, 9370, 9414; ȝerthelye, 9371. ȝerbes = herbs, O.F. erbes, herbes, Lat. herbas, 10614. ȝorke = York, O.E. Eoforwic, 6961, 6965. In those words the parasitical sound is, through the whole poem, uniformly represented by ȝ, never by y. But we find you, youre, youres. It is now generally asserted that ȝ in M.E. ȝede, ȝode is also parasitical, i.e. that it is derived from O.E. eode, not from geeode. But I do not see any reason why we should not derive it from geeode. That ge- did not become ȝ-, but ȝ, is owing to its being immediately followed by a vowel; cf. (Stratmann, s. v. ûyeten) the participles past ûyeten, ûyet, ûyet, ûyette = N.H.G. ge-gessen. Nor is there any difficulty in the meaning. Mr Price’s note in Warton’s History of E. Poetry (1840), II. 73, is not quite correct; for geeode often means the same as eode. Cf. Beowulf (ed. Grein), 2675-7:

ac se maga geonga under his mêges scyld
elne geeode, þa his āgen wæs
glédum forgrunden.

Ib, 1966-7:

hī siق drugon,
elne geeodon tō þes þe, &c.

and in a glossary of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, cessit geeode.

67. And taght. See note to l. 10.

68. I need hardly mention that arsmetryck does not mean ars metrica, but arithmetica. Cf. Tyrwhitt’s note to C. T., 1900. Of the 13 instances quoted in Mätzner’s Wörterbuch, s. v. arsmetike, only five want the second r. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 3:

And they hir lerned of astronomye,
Of arsmeotrik and of geometrye.
Mätzner refers only to the Provençal arismetica and the Spanish arismetica, aritmetica, but the word occurs in O.F. as well; for in the corresponding passage of the French original we find:

Qi la aprenoiuent de astronemie,
De arismitik, de geometrie;

and it is curious to observe that the Harl. MS. has:

De arismetrike e de jeometrie.

70. warre and wyse. Cf. l. 740, so warre a man and wyse; l. 1586, of batell bothe war and wyse; l. 7171, warre and wyse; l. 7648, warre and wyse; Chaucer’s C. T. 309:

A sergeant of the lawe war and wyse.

Generydes, ed. Wright, 1084:

For he was warre and wise, i yow ensure.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 248:

Had i bene so warre and so wyse.

The two adjectives sometimes change places; cf. l. 253, wyse and war; Loneliche’s Holy Grail, p. 104, l. 98:

Be hise clerkis, that waren bothe vis and war;

and Mätzner’s note to Sprachproben, I. 245, l. 2129.

73-74. The punctuation of our poem is often no easy task. I understood the passage to imply that Felice thought herself too good for any one of her wooers. But perhaps l. 73 is intended as a parenthesis. There is the same ambiguity in the French (Herbing, 64-67):

Contes et ducs la requeroient,
De maintes teres pour lui venoient,
Mes nul de eus aver ne vouleit,
Pour ceo que tant bele esteit.

76. The same corruption, l. 10675. Cf. the French (Cambridge MS.):

Felice fu la Bele apellee;

and the Caius MS., p. 4:

Felice la Bele hir name is.

77. Of all maydenys sche bare pe flowre. Cf. l. 814:

Of all the worlde to bere the flowre.

Guy, ed. Turubull, 7702:

In warld þai bere þe flour.

Copland’s Guy, Fi: And that thou bere the maystry
And floure of all cheualry.

Íb. G iiiii: And of knightes he bare the floure.

Cf. below, l. 4845, and Copland’s Guy, F iii:

He had the flower of chyualrye.

100. They, the plural, though hym precedes. Such slight inconsistencies in the use of the numbers occur pretty often through all the periods of the English language; cf. Anzeiger für deutsches Alterthum, I. 119. Similar cases are, ll. 3939-40, there was none so lytull . . ., but they; cf. 7103-4, 7867-70, 9856-8; ll. 4919-20, many a knyght, that were;
NOTES, LINES 108—169.

ll. 6632-3 and 6935-6, no man, but they; 6979-82, every knyght... pem. The reverse occurs l. 3490, where hys refers to all men in l. 3488.

108. I think there can be no doubt but wythowten fame is one of the many M.E. expletives denoting 'certainly.' I am, however, at a loss how to explain it. Perhaps fame stands for defame (cf. note to l. 8229), and we may compare wythowte blame (cf. note to l. 3069).

119. I question the correctness of on a day. The French work does not help.

De sa coupe le fist seruir,
En sa chaumbre le fist gisir.

Is on a day miswritten for every day?

122. for no neve, viz. cup-bearer, karu ouvre. The whole line is the translator's own.

132. ane is any, as l. 3, mane is many; cf. harde, 573; maistree, 656; boldele, 1972; compane, 2367; begle, 2872; maulelye, 3276; vylene, 4176, 7390; fyte, 4213; Tyrre, 4528; chenaire, 4845; Payne, 5571; vgle, 6834; sore, 7656; wytterle, 7736; Rosse, 8422; hongre, 9412; gylte, 9694; hastelye, hardlye, passim.

133. youfull. y for French j (or g) occurs in yoye, 366, 742, 776, 1274, 1350, 1355, 1558, &c.; youfull, 1294, 2183, 2848; yolye, 552, 1676, 8098; yolyee, 3801, 4834, 5376; yelowse, 801; yoyne, 10234; yugement, 672; harbenyoure, 750; conyure, 4465; soyorned, 9827, 11960.

163. god the see; cf. ll. 5697, 5795, 6035.

164. lorde = father; cf. ll. 170, 309, 8492.

169. hyght is called, but e.g. 140 hyzt was called; cf. Tyrwhitt's note to C. T. 1016. The history of this word is very curious. In O.E. we find hâtan, to bid, to call, to promise, with the preterit heht and hêt, and the participle past hâten. Hence, ie eom hâten, I am called; ie wes hâten, I was called. There is a single instance of hâten meaning to be called, in Cædmon's Genesis (ed. Grein), 344:

cwæð, þæt se hēhsta hâtan sceolde Satan siðæn,

but that part of the poem is very likely translated from the Old Saxon. Cf. 'Der Helian und die angel-sächsische Genesis,' von Eduard Sievers. Halle a/S., 1875. But hâtan has also preserved an organic passive form, hâte or hâtte = Gothic haitada, I am called and he is called; but also, being erroneously considered as a weak preterit, I was called (plural hâton). In M.E. all these forms continue to be used, and haten or hoten very often means 'to be called;' cf. An Old English Miscellany, ed. Morris, 89, 1-2:

Hwile wes seynte Peter icleped Symon:
Po queþ pre louerd him to: 'þu schalt hoten ston.'

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 93:
'Mi fader,' he sayd, 'hat Soward';

but also Layamon, 13852:
Pe Anglis is ihaten.

An Old E. Misc., 49, 436:
NOTES, LINES 169—237.

Dat hatte Kaluarie.
Cheuelere Assigne, ed. Gibbs, 232:

And þe þondur is my qwene, Betryce she hette.
The preterit of hoten is both het and heizt, hiȝt. Genesis and Exodus, ed. Morris, 2500:

And his moder het Iacobes.
Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8655:

Ich hadde a felawe, þat hiȝt Gij.
But besides these organic forms others are employed in M.E. (1.) Besides heizt, hiȝt, we find heiȝte, hipe, owing, it appears, to the analogy with het, hette; cf. Misc., 48, 377:

Pilates nom þo Jhesu Crist and hyne heyhte bete.
Chaucer's C. T., Prol., 616:

That was a pomely gray and hight Scot.
(2.) hette and hiȝte, being mistaken for organic weak preterits, gave rise not only to the participles past het, hiȝt, but also to the infinitives heten, hiȝten (cf. meten, mette, met; liȝten, liȝte, liȝt, &c.). But this confusion does not appear to have taken place till the 14th century. Cf. l. 2941 of our poem:

Y haue behet hyt to my leman.
Ib. 3103: Y haue hym behet my doghtur dere.
Cheuelere Assigne, 18:

And þat honged in his herte, i heete þe for sothe.
Cf. behetynge, l. 3138 of our poem. As to hiȝten cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8355:

þe soudan treweli hap me hiȝt,
His lond þif me he schold.
In the present tense it occurs very often in our poem; cf. 809, 5478, 5830, 5973, 6053, 8216, 8617, 8801, 10849, 11337, 11459. Other examples are collected by Mätzner in his note to Sprachproben, I. 377, l. 197; but he is wrong in identifying this hiȝten with O.E. hyhtan, sperare.

175. wythowten lett, without delay; the same expletive, 1664, 4394, 6350, 10132, 10902 = wythowte lettynge, 1009, 2907, 5898, 6742, 8015, 11570, 11698.


To a kniȝt, þat neuer his better nas.
Copland's Guy, Aa i:

And all is, certes, for Guy,
That his fellow sometyme was i.

227. drawe (cf. 2639, 2665, 3123) = drawe wyth horsys, 2545, 8212.
237. newe is a verb; begynne may be followed by an infinitive without to. Cf. l. 6176:

Then beganne hur sorowe to newe.
Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV. 237, ll. 253-6:

O tong, allass, so often herebiforme
Hastow made . . . .
.... many a maydes sorwes for to neve.

Ib. V. 182, 905:
And every day hir beaute neved.

In all these examples neve means ‘to become new.’

243-6. These four lines render two French, which I will quote from the Harleian MS.:

En veu chambre sen est ale,
La dedeins sen est ferme.

vysste may be a mistake for was, but I do not know what the translator meant by hys grete prisoune.

253. The leche was veyse and war. From ll. 249-52 we learn that the Earl sent Guy lechys felle, many physicians, none of whom knew the nature of Guy’s illness. In l. 265 we are told that the lecheys could not help him. Such being the case, I think it impossible that in l. 253 the singular leche should have been used by the translator, especially as he had before him (according to the Harleian MS.):

Puys li vnt demande,
On le mal li ad tant greue.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 361:

Hij asked him, where his iud stode;

the Caius MS., p. 16:

Than they asked, how it with him stode.

So we must alter leche to lechys, but we need not alter was to were; for was occurs as a plural, 1024, 3380, 4355, 6026, 6342, 6549, 6934.

298. Ther was wyth hur maydyns but oon. Although was may be the plural (cf. the preceding note), maydyns is hardly correct. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V. 156, ll. 39, 40:

For there is phisicien but oone,
That may me heale.

Ib. V. 162, l. 237:

For i ne knewe never god but oon.

So I think we must read maydyn.

313. rede, tell; cf. l. 10733:

As ye haue herde me rede or hys

rede has this meaning, especially when connected with singe. Cf. Alteenglische Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 3, ll. 3-4:

Ane partie ichulle eou rede
Of is lilf and of is childhede.

Ib. p. 19, ll. 531-2:

And ovre eldore also hadde
Of him isoungue and iradde.

Genesis and Exodus, 34:

QueSir so hic rede or singe.
Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV. 68, l. 516:

Of which he neyther rede kan nor synge.

Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 8:

\[
\text{pat herknef, what y schal rede.}
\]

Copland's Guy, X ii:

Now of duke Otton i shall you read.

But there can be no doubt about rede, to tell, and rede, to read, being the same word. M.H.G. lesen is also used in both senses. I am also quite sure that the meaning 'to read' is the older in English as well as in German; it is really the only one that occurs in O.E. rādan. It is now generally asserted that rādan is a bad spelling for *rēdan = Gothic rōðjan, Icel. rāða. But Ettmüller, who in his Lexicon Anglosaxonicum, pp. 250-1, originated this opinion, could not but confess: "Vox rēdan saepissime quidem, sed male, rādan scribitur." But the general spelling rādan is quite correct. This follows from the preterit of the verb in M.E. radde; for O.E. ē, when the umlaut of ō, never becomes a in M.E. preterits; cf. bleden, bledde; feden, fedde; speden, spedde. Thus O.E. rēdan is not connected with Gothic rōðjan, but with rēdan, Germ. raten. In O.E. we find (1) a strong verb rēdan, reord (rēd) consulere, suadere, iubere, regere, possidere; (2) a weak one rēdan, reddan, which adds to the meanings of the strong one those of 'divinare, explicare, legere.' The strong Icelandic verb rāða has all the meanings of the weak O.E. rādan. Cf. Hávamál, 144:

Veiztú, hvē rísta scal? veiztú, hvē rāða scal?
i. e. "doest thou know how to write (runic characters)? doest thou know how to read?"

346. wythoutyn stratfe, without dispute; cf. 8660, 9545; Copland's Guy, I iii:

To Heraude they smote, without stryfe.

I take this opportunity to point out a very common mistake. M.E. strif, N.E. strife is not O.E. strīð. Although the change of th to f is known from the Russian language, and is pretty common in the pronunciation of English children, and even occurs in such spellings as afurst (for afpurst, affurst; see Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I. 132, 2), or synye (for synpe, Cainus MS. of Guy, p. 255), yet M.E. strif cannot but be O.F. estrif. The preterit stroff does not exclude the possibility of striven being of French origin: see note to l. 4244.

349. kepe, care for; cf. ll. 5950, 6727, 8334.

356. youre, but l. 361 þou. The rules observed by the author of William of Palerne and some others (see Skeat's W. of P., xliii.), are often neglected in our poem, e. g. Guy, addressing the Earl, uses thou, l. 379; Guy to his father, l. 461, you; but l. 463, thy; Guy to Duke Segwin, l. 1699, thou; but l. 1701, yow; Segwin to Guy, ye, l. 1785; but thee, l. 1790; Guy to the Emperor, l. 2451, the; l. 2452, þyn; l. 2453-4, the; l. 2455, yow; l. 2457, þy; l. 2459, ye and youre; l. 2461, the; &c.
365. Gyeowre. Originally in French the nominative of the name was Gui (or Guis), the accusative Guion; but in the French Romance Gui is used also as an accusative, and, on the other hand, Guion also as a nominative. The English translators follow the French author's example.

367. speke wyth mowthe; the same rather pleonastic phrase, 7379, 7665, 11891; cf. see wyth eye, 540, 7388, 11592; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7178; Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 647; loke wyth eye, 7736, 7742; see wyth syght, 8666; wepe (grete) wyth eye, 1349, 3794, 4211, 6058, 6792, 6794, 11896; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1542, 1570, 4055, 5970, 7293, 8554, 9593, 10412.

368. yede hym; hym is what is called the 'ethec' dative; cf. Matzner's Gramm., II, pp. 69-70, 227. Cf. l. 398, hym yede; 1749, than hym spake the emperorer; 5245, tho hym spake the devke Loyere; hym thought, 4765, 6223; Thou pe ne holde hyt for no fabull, 10982; he hym wonde, 3872; we wyll hye vs, 762; cf. 1122, 1606, 2716, 3078, 3125, &c.; haste me, 4180, 4435; &c.

373. oon = on; the same spelling, 3734.

387—422. Neither the French original nor the Auchinleck and Caius MSS. have anything corresponding to this whole passage. The only copy of Copland's Guy that I could examine, wants the first twenty leaves.

419. weyzt; a better spelling occurs l. 5430:

To reste per horsys a lytull wyght;

and l. 11146: Abyde now a lytull wyght.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8261 (cf. 8346):

Ac lete me drink a litel wiT^t.

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 3:

Of hir beaute yet a litell wighte.

Ib. p. 182: And abyde a lytill wight.

wight is N.E. whit.

436. 3yt haste pou not worsen by schone. Cf. Sir Percevall of Galles, ed. Halliwell (Thornton Romances), 1589-96:

The(n) said Percevall the wighte:
"3if i be noghte 3itt knyghte,
Thou salle halde, that thou highte,
For to make me ane,"

Than salde the kyng full sone:
"Ther salle other dedis be done,
And thou salde rynne thi schone
Appone the sowdane."

Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1237-9:

To day was y maked knyght.
Othyr schalle he sle me sone
Or on hym y schalle rynne my schone.
Ipomysdon, ed. Weber (2, 316), 977-8:
That day he taught hym so to done,
That worthely he wanne his shone.

Le Bone Florence of Rome, ed. Ritson (3, 28), 655:
At the furste wynnyng of ther schone.

The Squyre of Lowe Degré, 171-74:
For, and ye my love should wynne,
With chyvalry ye must begunne,
And other dedes of armes done,
Through whiche ye may wynne your shone.

MS. Lincoln, A i. 17, f. 149 (quoted in Halliwell's Dictionary, s. v. 
shone):
And how that thir knyghtis has wone their schone.

"A young or new-made knight was say'd to win his spurs, when he first 
achiev'd some gallant action. To win his shoes is a phrase of similar 
import, but of less dignity;" Ritson, Metric. Rom., 3, 341. Cf. the 
Squyre of L. D., 258-61:
And, whan that ye, syr, thus have done,
Than are ye worthy to were your shone;
Than may ye say, syr, by good ryght,
That you ar proved a venturous knyght.

Cf. also the German phrase, sich die sporen verdienen, which now is used in a general sense.

455. sauns fayle; cf. 1421, 1671, 1708, 1829, 2097, 3240, 5200, 7631,
10327 = wythowten fayle, 593, 1190, 1630, 1720, 1783, 1802, 2221, 2313,
2485, 3360, 3558, 4736, 4930, 5200, &c.

465-6. preue of turnement; cf. 468 and Mützner's Gramm., II^2, 264.

471. pur charyte; cf. 1225, 2519, 2565, 4304, 4551, 4903, 5117, 5124,
5367, 6291, 7204, 7263, 9579, 9677, 10084, 10099, 10105 = for charyte,
5700, 6538, 6612, 6634, 9166, 11254, 11456, 11635, 11819, 11976. Cf. 
notes to l. 7154 and l. 11976.

491. wythowten ore, without using an oar.

503. At a burges hous of the towne = at the house of a burgess of the 
town; burges is flexionless in the genitive singular, because ending in s. 
Cf. hys hors fete, 4868; hys hors neck, 8013; for the holy crosse love,
6606; hyt was Arcules swyrde, 7977; the kynges Harkes lande, 8706. But 
the termination of the genitive singular is omitted also in some other 
cases: hys stede halse, 3894; for Mary sone, 2797; but (MS. be) Mary 
sone, 7853. The genitives of these words in O.E. are stédan, Marien, 
in early M.E. steden, Marian, hence at last stede, Mary[e]. We find, 
however, besides the emperowre sone, 574; the sowdowne sone, 7501; to 
Faber chamber, 7507; of hys swyrde dyn, 8863. But the frequent 
genitives fader, brother, &c., are, of course, different.—The construction 
is the same as e.g. in Chaucer's C. T., prol. 15, 16, from every schires 
ende of Engelond. Cf. l. 574, the emperowre sone of Almayn; 8448 and 
11939, Gyes sone of Warwyke; 9285, for godys love of myght. Compare 
also note to l. 687.

WARWICK.
525. proves = prove, prowess; cf. l. 1312.

550. wythout lesynge, without falsehood. Cf. 558, 738, 2582, 2908, 3316, 4320, 5282, 6971, 10352, 11464. In all these passages the author, or a person whom he introduces, asserts that he is telling the truth. In ll. 3186 and 7792, telle me wythoweti lesynge, somebody is desired to tell nothing but truth. Wythowet[?] lese (lees) = O.F. butan leise, has the same import, but does not occur so often; cf. ll. 3807, 10695, 10751.

559. Guy . . . and hys odur men, i.e. Guy and his men too. Cf. ll. 6637-8.

He dud deleyuer to hym hys stede
And also all hys odur wede.

10367-8:
The kyng Anlafe was well wool
And hys odur folke echoon alsoo.

11861-2:
Hys hawberke and hys gode stede,
Hys schylde, hys swyrde, and hys odur wede.

Myrc, Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, ll. 752-3, seynt Mig-hele and all odær apostles. But it is possible that there is a defect in this passage, angesles and seynt Peter and all odær having been omitted by the scribe.—It is known that the Romance languages use the Latin alter in a similar way after nos and vos (Diez, Gramm., III.2, 46-47). Some Teutonic languages admit a pleonastic other in comparative sentences. Cf. Prymskiða, 15:

 Já kvæð þat Heimdalr, hvitastr ása,
við hann vel fram, sem vanir ævir,
i.e. he knew future things as the vanir did; for Heimdalr was not one of the vanir. Cf. also Hartmann von Aue’s Iwein, 4815:

der lewe þi im lac
und anders sites niene pflac,
niwan als ein ander scháf.

See Reinhart Fuchs, ed. Grimm, cclvii, note; Grimm’s Deutsche Grammatik, IV. 456; Benecke’s note to Iwein, 687.

573. harde = hardy. See note to l. 132.

574. the emperoure sone of Almây = the Emperor of Germany’s son. See note to l. 503.

576. say = assay. Compounds of Romance origin, the first part of which is a preposition, or words derived from such, often mutilate or even entirely drop the preposition. We find say also 2655, but assay 1803, 2263 (O.F. assaier = essaier from Latin occugium). Cf. chesoure, 4314 = achesoun, anchesoun, enchesoun (O.F. acheson, Lat. occasio nem), corde, 2224, 3217 = acorde, 5369, 5303, 5399, 8273; cordement, 6304, 6312 = accordement, 2490, 5340; force, 872 = aforce, O.F. esforcer (cf. N.E. effort); noye, 7420 = anoye, 2766, 10886 (O.F. anoier from anoî, enoi = Lat. in odio); ryne = aryne (see note to 4244); sayle, 1436, 4421, 7988, 9405 = assayle; saute, 2316 = assaute, 642, 1012, 3782, assault, 1828, 5014; seye, 8673, 8717 = assye; store, 9792 = astore (O.F. estorer, instaurare; cf. N.E. store); swage, 5266 = asswage; tame, 10290 (see
the note) = *attame.* In some cases it is doubtful whether the preposition *a* or the indefinite article is intended: e.g. 2210, *a saucta or asawte?* 5874, *asaye or a saye?*—*E* is dropped in *scape*, 1132, 2234, 5956, 10798, 10903.—Even two letters may disappear, especially de- or *di*—*sume = sdefame, defame* (see note to 8229); *scoomyfye, 1063, 1988, 2960, 5150 = *discosmyfye, serve, 2582 = *serve*

strove, 2737, 2794, 3096, 4772, 5764, 6252, 6270, 8196, 8718, 9938, 9943, 10012, 10885, 11875. *En- (em-, in-)* is omitted in *couward*, 4511; *gynne, 5212, 8940, 11329, 11353 = *ingyne, 2305 (O.P. *engin, Lat. ingenium)*; *peyre, 7993, 10164 = *O.F. empeirer, cimpeiorare, N.E. impair; re-* *in store, 3842; cowyre, 4038.*

to *hys fote = to his feet.* In *M.E. fote* is used as a plural (1) after such prepositions as *at, on, to;* (2) when denoting a measure. In the first case *fote* stands for *foten, O.E. *fötum, dat. of *föt,* in the second for *O.E. fôta,* the genitive of *fêt,* which was governed by such adjectives as *keåh, bråd, wíd* (Koch’s Gramm., II. p. 185-6, § 285). Cf. at *hys fote, 2080; on fote, 2257, 6149, 7469, 9355, 10223, 11719; on *hys fote, 415, 8007; to *hys fote, 11913; fro the fote, 11430; suxty fote was he longe, 6955; he ys two fote and more hyer, 7585; he felle depe . . . thretty fote, 11432.*

600. *To Gye had grete envoye;* cf. 2971; *Guy, ed. Turnbull, 724, to Gij he hadde envie; 4778, to Gij he bar grent envie;* *Guy in the Caius MS., p. 181, to hym he had grent envoye;* *Copland’s Guy, II iii, to duke Segryne he had envoy;* ib. Aa iii, thou haste to him envoy. See also Mätzner’s note to *Sprachproben, I. 173, 69.* But sometimes other prepositions are employed: or, cf. 1437, of *hym Saddok had grent envoye;* 8517, and *odur lordys therof had envoye;* *Reinbrun, ed. Turnbull, 175, ope hadde *perof envie;* at, cf. *Guy in the Caius MS., p. 28, at Gye he had grene envoye;* wip, cf. *Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1641, wip he douke he hadde grent envie.*

612. *my neme;* 614, *my neene;* 7805, *my neme = O.E. *mín eâm,* my uncle. Cf. *my nye = O.E. *mín eåge, 3252, 5930; my nowne = mine own, 1142; by namnes = thine arms, 803; by nye = thine [e]ye, 5616; by nore = *þen ore, thy mercy, 8042; by nowne = thine own, 1807;* *Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9506, is he þi nem.* The indefinite article transfers likewise its *n* to the following word: we find often a *nother (nodur)*—cf. 838, 1945, 4157, 4617, 4869, &c.; cf. *Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3421, icham now a neld man (an eld, i.e. an old); ib. 9701, wip a nost store and stark (an ost, i.e. a host). We find even an *nodur, 2556; and an noke (an oak), 3004.* Note also *no nodur = non odur, 657, 690, 889, 956, 1200, 2558, 3124, 3541, 3689, 4610, &c.; and for þe nones (for þen ones), 2306, 2750, 3396, 3624, 8993, 9368, 10174, 11402.* Cf. *Guy, ed. Turnbull, 4948, atte neende = atten (at þen) ende;* 9360, *to þe neende;* *Reinbrun, ed. Turnb., 807, toward þe neuen.* A few such *n*’s have been retained in *N.E.;* *cf. yeven (but also *eft = O.E. efete,* nickname (M.E. *ckename), Ned (my Ned for mine Ed), Nol, Nan, Nell, &c.* Cf. note to 658.*
615. so mote y the. This explicative is of very frequent occurrence; cf. 754, 983, 4904, 5032, 5085, 5137, 5576, 5726, 5904, 6055, 6541, 6774, 7043, 7325, 9558, 9564, 9804. It does not mean ‘so may I thrive,’ although this is the general explanation, but ‘as I may thrive,’ so, in such cases, being used in a relative (not in a demonstrative) sense. Cf. 7839 and 8809, so mote pou the; 5094, also muste y thrive or the; 1089, so mote y thrive; 1412, so muste y thrive; 5017, so waste pou Pryne. I will collect here the principal protestations and obsccrations of this sort that occur in our poem: so have ye chaunce, 4190; so have ye blys, 9878; as have ye hele, 2250, 7753; also have ye hele, 8562; so have ye hele, 2390, 2484, 2698, 2768, 3031, 3135, 3173, 3461, 5188, 9440, 9570; so mote y goo, cf. note to l. 2572; so god me helpe, 1459, 1869; so helpe me god, 11120; also helpe me god, 8605; so helpe pe god and seynt Mary, 11805; so god me helpe out of my care, 11748; so helpe me Mahovnde, 10334; so cwr me helpe goddys myne, Termaguant and Apolynye, 3339-40; so almyghty god save the, 11113; also so god gene youw reste, 6687; so god me neude, 6864, 8681; so god me rede, 7187, 8936; so he (god) me spede, 9502; as god schylde me fro scheame, 4714; so god pe schylde fro synne and scheame, 1340; so god schylde hys body fro scheame, 3241; so god the stoke of thy sorowe, 8766; so god gene pe honowre, 9581; as he (god) may forgone pe by synne, 8108; as y am a trewe knight, 2806; as y am a knyght hende, 5536; as pou devylye loseste me, 7239.

633. the devke Louayne. MS. loyane. I did not think it necessary to insert of; cf. wyth pe devke Lorayne (MS. lowan), 4341; and into the devke Loreyne (MS. loyeren), 6387. These instances, it is true, may seem uncertain, but compare also Guy, ed. Turnbull, 767:

pe douk Louayn cam wip pis.

Ib. 1859:

'Sir,' pe douke Pawi sede.

Copland's Guy, II ii:

Hath besieged the duke Lauayne.

Ib. II iii:

Sadoek synde to the duke Lauayne (read -me).

650. ever amonge, every now and then, continually; cf. 8738, and slow hys men cwyry amonge; Gower's Confessio Amantis, I. 348:

But ever among they it assaile
Fro day to night;

and Shakspere, 2 Henry IV., V. iii. 23:

And lusty lads roam here and there
So merrily,

And ever among so merrily.

In the Bible Word-book, by I. Eastwood and W. Aldis Wright (s. v. Anon), among is said to be but another form of anon, and Dr A. Schmidt (Shakspere Lexicon, p. 36) thinks that ever among is perhaps corrupted from ever and anon. But I fail to see why among cannot be the preposition among, used adverbially (cf. note to 2301).

653-4. There seems to be some corruption in these lines.

658. That day and ylke the todor. Ylke cannot possibly be correct;
for neither *ylke* = O.E. *ylce*, same, nor = O.E. *āgāwyle*, each, is suitable, evidently an adverb being required here. Cf. the French original (Herbing, II. 300-2):

Que Gy avoit cel iour le pris
Et lendemain tot ensement;

and Guy, ed. Turnbull, 795:

And bat oper day ysame.

I think *ylke* is miswritten rather for *glyke*, alike, than for *eke*.

658. The todur = thet (i.e. that) odur; cf. 10358, 11714; the tother, 3055; the ton . . . the todur, 1066. We find even in the plural the todur knyghtys, 5579; all the todur, 11084. Cf. note to 612.

662. I think now that *stere* is not to be altered. Cf. King Horn (ed. Lumby), 1344:

He luneb him so dere,
And is him so stere;

and Copland’s Guy, Y i:

There found they the duke Loyer
With his baronage (-ake Copland) hardy and stere.

The adverb *stereliche* cited by Stratmann from Chaucer’s Troilus, 3526, is doubtful; Morris’s edition (IV., p. 252, I. 628) reading *strelieche*. The word has not yet been found in O.E. (*stêre, styrê?*), but Stratmann is certainly right in connecting it with O.H.G. *siuri* fortis, ferox, &c. He might have as well added Gothic *śtirę-s*, which, though it is not preserved, yet is to be inferred from the adverb *us-siuri-ba*, immoderate, and from the substantive *us-siur-ei*, intemperance. The exact meaning of the M.E. word is doubtful, but we may translate it by ‘strong, stout,’ in our passage, as Halliwell did (Dict. s. v.), till we come to know better.


‘Full well,’ he sayde, ‘he myght line,
Who so wyll him medecine give.’

The relative sentence stands for a conditional one. Cf. such Greek sentences as συμφορά, ὁς ἄν τῶν κακῶν γυναικῶς. See Mätzner’s Gramm., II. 29.

687. *On þe maydenys halfe Blanchflore.* An apposition belonging to a possessive genitive is generally placed after the noun governing the genitive, and takes no inflexion (cf. note to 7921): the devkys men Segoweine, 2427; my lordes sone þe emperouere, 2827; the erlys doghtur Rohantou, 4005; the erlys sone Awbye, 4339, 5352, 6054; the devkys cosyn Loyere, 4910; the devkes steward Oton, 5001; on þe devkys halfe Loyere, 5438; þe kyngys lorde Triamore, 7489; Arcules swyrde þe wyght, 7977; my lordes sone, syr Gowyne, 8604; my lordes ryuge, syr Gye, 10622; þe kyngys constabull Argus, 10899; the devkys dethe Oton, 11311; Gyes sone, the nobull knyght, 11564; the nobull knyzys sone, syr Gowyen, 11910; Harrowdys sone þe gode, 11930. Cf. Skeat’s Piers the
Plowman, in the Clarendon Press Series, xxi, note, and Skeat’s Chaucer, p. 204, note to l. 209. But there are a few exceptions to the rule; cf. 1956, the deokve Segwyns cosyn; and 8703, the kyngge Harkes lande.

688. Kynys doghtur and emperouere = a king and emperor’s daughter. Cf. 6993, and deowkys doghtur and emperouere, 7041; for Gyes sowle and for hys weyfe, 10775 = for Guy’s soul and for that of his wife; for goddyys loue and seynt Mary, 5889 = for the love of God and of St Mary. But we find also thorow goddyys helpe and syr Gyes, 5192; and for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake, 7715.

719. wythowtyn more. Halliwell’s Diction., p. 561, s. v. More has this item:

(4) Delay. (Lat.) That gan to hem clerly certifye, Withoute more, the childis dwellynge place.

He, no doubt, took this more to be Latin mora. But that is certainly wrong, as often mare and moo are used instead of more. Cf. 11583:

Then belyve wythowten mare
To þe castell can þey fare.

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 192:

And so he dyd: without mare
To London faste gan they all fare.

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 2682:

‘It is your loue,’ quod she without moo;
where I think it necessary to alter the Editor’s punctuation. Perhaps also in our poem, 8860-70:

He wolde breke hys neck in two
Wyth oon dynte wythowten moo,
moo is to be taken in the general sense, and does not mean ‘more dints.’ Wythowten more = without more ado, occurs besides, 4067, 5439, 6850, 8174, 9239, 9420, 11804.

778. On whome all klse poyne was lent. Cf. Triamouve, ed. Halliwell, 795:

Hur love was on hym lente.

Ib. 1581:

My love ys on yow lente.

Douglas’s Prolong of the xii buk of Eneados (Skeat’s Specimens of English Literature, p. 133), l. 200:

Mine hart is lente apon sa gudly wight.

Skeat explains lent by ‘inclined (lit. leant).’ But we find in a fragment of the Guy Romance (MS. Sloane, 1044, in the British Museum), edited by me in Sitzungsberichte der philos.-histor. Classe der kaiserialchen Akademie der Wissenschaften, vol. LXXIV. pp. 623-7 (Vienna, 1873), l. 19, 20:

‘My love,’ he seyde, ‘wel nowhere lende,
But on þe, Felice, þat art so hende.’

Lende = land, arrive, reside, stay, &c. Cf. 2958 of our poem:

To the cyte they be lente.
1402: Goode hyt ys, þat thou here lende.
Destruction of Troy, edd. Panton and Donaldson, 13856-7:
He fraynit at the fre, who his fader was,
In what lond he was lent and if he lyue hade.

Alliter. Poems, ed. Morris, B. 1083-4:
And alle hende, Þat honestly moȝt an hert glade,
Aboute my lady was lent, quen ho delyuer were.
Cheuclere Assigne, ed. Gibbs, 5:
For this i saye by a lorde, was lente in an yle.

779. on hys manere; cf. 1222, 1318, 1712, 2073, 2499, 2613, 7012.
Chaucer, ed. Morris, II., p. 296, l. 131:
Somwhat this lord hath rewthe in his manere.

Ib. p. 302, l. 172:
Arrayed eek ful freissh in his manere.

Ib. V. p. 168, l. 434:
And in hir maner made festys.

Ib. VI., p. 261, l. 41:
And thus she brydeleth him in her manere.

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 559:
With that the quene was wroth in hir maner.

Ib. 1379:
And Malichias was wroth in his maner.

Ib. 1471:
Than Anasare was wrothe in his maner.

Alteenglische Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 26, l. 736:
Swyþe wroth he was in is manere.

Ib. p. 36, l. 1044-5:
Þe Gyv for broþur heold iwis
Euerech swyn in heore manere.

Ib. p. 38, prose before 1122, huy ponkedun Jesus swipe muche in heore manere; ib. p. 43, l. 1287:
And in heore manere hereden him þo.

781. ‘For thy sake I have changed my mind,’ i.e. have not killed myself. The French poem has (Herbing, l. 441-2):
Venuz sui eea a vous mamie,
Car par vous ai certes ma vie.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 923:
Mi liif ichane for loue of þe;
and Copland's Guy, Fi:
For certayne sothe, my lyfe i haue.

784. And passyd, i.e. and y passed. See note to l. 10.
792. lowde or stille; cf. 3214, 8570; lowde and style; 2524, 2605, 2615, 3466, 5384, 5758, 5862, 8440, 8492, 10739; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3388, to acord lowde oþer stille; 4630, his best to don... lowde and stil;
Guy in the Caius MS., p. 36:
For to doo with me thi wille
Ecrly and late, lowde and stille.
Copland's Guy, M ii, he hath him yelded lowering and still; M iii:
   And ever more (supply be?) at your will
   And his lande lowering and still.

Ib. Z i, cherish him both lowering and still; Ce iii:
   'And now,' she sayd, 'lower and still
   I wil be at your will.'

Ib. Ee iii, served a lord lowering and still; Triamoure, ed. Halliwell, 197-8:
   Ye were evyr in my thought
   Bothe lowering and still.

Altengl. Leg., ed. Horstmann, p. 12, ll. 295-6:
   paunne it is good bope lowering and stille
   For to don al his wille.

Ib. p. 30, ll. 867-8:
   Mijhte don al is wille
   Bope lowering and eke stille.

Ib. p. 32, ll. 937-8:
   And parafort sixe bope lowering and stille
   To ech man al, bat he wille (MS. and Ed. wilnez).

See also Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I. p. 68, l. 490. The synonymous, and almost identical M.H.G. phrase, stille und über lüt, is as common.

803. by narnes = byn armes; see note to l. 612.

807. scheve is, without doubt, owing to the scribe only, who in the same way has spoiled the rhyme in l. 10590.

820. wyue is badly spelled for wyf, to improve the rhyme with on lyue (= alive) for the eye. But the author perhaps pronounced on lye. We find the same rhyme, but with correct spelling, ll. 10727-8, wyfe: on lyue; cf. 5869-70, caytyfe: on lyfe.

833. He ys went to hys cowncell does not make sense. I have, therefore, altered cowncell to oostell. Cf. the French (Herbing, l. 497):
   Pus a son hostel droit ala;
   which in Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 983, is rendered:
   Unto his in he gop snelle;
   but in Copland's version Fi:
   Home he wente to his hostele.

Cf. besides in Copland's Guy, H ii, came into Gyses hostell; R iii, to their hostell gan spele; T iii, Heraude to his ostle came.

843. And ye haue men of gret valoure. MS. me; but cf. the French (Herbing, 511-12):
   Si granz gent eyez de valur,
   Ieco vons ertz mult grant honur.

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 999, 1000:
   And, jif thou hast folk of gret myt,
   It is te gret worschip, ypliȝt.
And Copland’s Guy, F ii:

And well the more is your honour,
That ye have men in great valour.

The same clerical error occurs in l. 8950. Cf. also maytene instead of maytene in l. 7036.

855-6:  
Wyth howndys we wyll chaace dere
And wyth hawkes to the ryuere.

To the ryuere depends on a verb denoting movement that is omitted as it is often in the infinitive and participle past. See Abbott’s Shaksp. Gramm., § 405, and Mätzner’s Gramm. II., 50. Cf. 3024, he wolde to the ryuere; 5692, no forther he ne myght; 6732, into Ynglonde y wyll; 6832, at hys mouthste a stede myght yyne; 6918, he myght not on oux syde owte; 8864, the hed schulde of; 10260, porow . . . hyn schoulde; 11632, wolde away; 11710, to hyn he wolde; 11751, thy hed schall of. In all these instances the infinitive is omitted after auxiliary verbs, but we find even 7101, thedurwarde thoght hyn; 7672, in holy wezes was hyn entente; 11946, into Ynglonde was all hyn thought. The participle past is omitted in 5783, now ys Gye to Puyyte town, viz. gone or come. Quite an analogous passage occurs in Chaucer’s C. T. Prologue, 30:

And schortly, whan the sonne was to reste,

where Morris’s note (Clarendon Press Series) ‘to reste = at rest. Spenser has to friend = for friend,’ does not hit the point. There is nothing particular in the use of the preposition, nor does the passage get any light from Spenser’s to friend. There can be no doubt that the participle past goon is to be supplied. Cf. Layamon (III., 132), 28328, to reste cote pa sunne; St Gregory, ed. Horstmann (in Herrig’s Archiv für das studium der neueren sprachen, LV.), l. 273, to reste rist as cote pe mone = ed. Schulz, l. 273, to rist rist as cote pe mone; and Iwaine, ed. Ritson (Metric. Romanc. I. 151), l. 3612, until the sun was gon to rest. The last passage is quoted by J. Grimm in his Mythology, p. 702, while treating of the M.H.G. phrase, ze reste gön, which was used in the same sense, and which in N.H.G. was corrupted to zur rüste gehen.

857. counsell in this passage is, no doubt, owing to the scribe, not to the author. It is true, the author employed not only the older form in -ayle, but the younger in -all, too. We find the rhymes tell: counsell, 2359-60 and 10471-2; well: counsell, 5259-60; and counsell: wayle, 5637-8. But we find the older form much oftener used by the poet and retained by the scribe: counsayle: awayle, 1545-6; cooneyeyle: assayle, 2203-4; fayle: cooneyeyle, 2485-6; avayle: counsayle, 2789-90; vayle: counsayle, 3577-8; fayle: counsayle, 8559-60 and 9017-8; counsayle: awayle, 9189-90. Such being the case, I felt fully entitled to alter counsell to cooneyeyle, whenever it rhymed with a word ending in -ayle or -eyle. That has been done here, 1751, 3479 (; awayle), and 1707, 1719, 3557, 5205 (; fayle). I have besides restored tractyle: fayle, 5541-2, where the MS. has travell. This is the only instance of the scribe altering tractyle to travell in the rhyme. He retained it,
4735, 7173, 7184, 9731, 9762. There is no proof that the author
admitted trauell. He always rhymes batayle (466, 594, 1027, 1672, &c.),
and ventayle (8052, 8130, &c.).

872. hym force = hym aforce (see note to l. 576), to make every
effort, to endeavour to the utmost.

889-90. We have no nodur heyre, but thou instead of thee. Cf. St
Gregory, ed. Horstmann, 156 (= ed. Schulz, 39, 40). Lete neuere (Ne
lete pou Schulz) no boren lyf herof (perof Schulz) witen, bote we þroo.
Mätzner's Gramm., II², 9, has only O.E. and N.E. examples.

920. Boneuent instead of Boneucent. Cf. the French in the Corpus
Christi College, Cambridge, MS.:

Ke er teuer Boneuent.

But Herbing's text (l. 582) has Boneuent. The Auchinleck and the
Caius MSS. have Boneucent; Copland's version mentions no name.

924. He sye hym woundyd at þat justynge is not very clear. Guy
himself wounded Otun at that tournament, described in l. 565—568 ;
cf. especially l. 603. The French (Herbing, l. 588) has:

Pour cœu quen Bretaine li nafr.

954. For hym schall go no rawnsome; cf. 1746, for hym þer schall
go no rawnsome; 8944, for me schulde go no golde velde; Havelok,
44, for hem ne yede gold ne fe; ib. 1430, hunede go for him gold ne fe;
Isumbras in the Ashm. MS. 61, p. 15:

And þei, þat wolde not do so,
There schall nothinge fore þem (þe MS.) go,
Neþer gold ne fee.

Perhaps in Copland's Guy, F iii :

For no raunsome ne shall he go

is corrupted from:

For him ne shall no raunsome go.

Cf. Icelandic ganga used of money (= to be current), of laws (= to be
valid), etc.

960. Bothe in yron and in steede. The same or all but the same l.
1548, 1644, 2398, 2816, 3388, 4976, 6648, 8860, 9282.

968. hole and sondwe, cf. 1368, 4674, 5177.

974. be my crowne, cf. 1136, 1624, 3616, 4313, 4561, 4896, 5109,
11751. Cf. also 3009:

The sowdan sware be hys crowne.

Even here the crown of the head seems to be intended. Cf. be my
hedde, 1000 ; be my nolle, 5544 ; be my bwone, 2937.

983. yf y may and the like = 'as far as lies in my power;' cf.
2208, 4032, 7078, 9669; yf þat y may, 1809, 1870, 6326; and y maye,
9042; yf þat y myght, 3529, 4547; yf he myght, 7721; yf that he myght,
11425; yf they maye, 2426.

984. He schall forþynk. Forþynk would be O.E. forþynce, but we
find only ofþynce preserved: mé ofþynces sumes þinges, I am dis-
pleased with something. In M.E., in consequence of the impersonal verb ṭypecan = German denken, and the personal ṭypecan = German denken, being mixed together, we find:

1. forthenke as a personal verb; cf. l. 3107, of hys wordys he can forthenke. Cf. O.E. forþeacan, to mistrust.

2. forþeacan as an impersonal verb; cf. l. 5939, me forþought that full sore.

3. forþinke as an impersonal verb; cf. ll. 3977-8, me forþynkyth sore, that hyt schulde be delayed more; 5870, me forþynkyth, y am on lyfe; 8822, me forþynkyth, þat y have lyfe; 10794, þat hym forþynketh.

4. forþinke as a personal verb here, and l. 967, he schall forþynk, þat comyth to vs.

992. Than = than that; cf. 5895-6:

Hyt ys bettur to dye myselfe allone,
Then we togedur schulde be alone;

ll. 5954-6:

I had leuyr be hongyd for þe trespas . . . .,
Then he schulde scape so;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1158-9:

Leuer ous were heron be ded,
ðan thou wer ded in our ferred;

Meditations on the Supper (ed. Cowper), ll. 393-4:

ðarføre to dye raðer y chese,
ðen we þe soules yn helle schulde lese;

Shakspere's Winter's Tale, II, i, 149-50:

And I had rather glib myself than they
Should not produce fair issue.

Cf. Mätzner's Gram. III², p. 533; Abbott's Shaksp. Gramm., 390. Sometimes then (than) stands for then if; cf. ll. 6621-2:

Hyt were to the more honowre,
Then y were slayne in thy towre;

ll. 8947-8:

I sawe neuer there no lyght
No more, þen hyt had be nyght;

Syr Gawayne and the Green Knight, ll. 336-38:

No mare mate ne dismayd for hys mayn dintez,
þen any burne vpon bench hade broȝt hym to drynk
Of wyne.

For O.E. examples see Grén's Sprachschatz, II, 563; e.g. Beowulf, 1384-5:

sèrre bið ðeghwæm,
þæt hê his freǒnd wrece, þonne hê fela murne.

We find similar ellipses in the other Teutonic languages. Cf. M.H.G. der dich an den ruuwartagen deheiner arbeit muotet, danne du im sin vihe úz und in tribest, i.e. he who, on a holiday, expects more work from thee than that thou drivest his cattle out and in (Berthold's Predigten, quoted in M.H.G. Wörterbuch); Edda, Hýniskviða, 19:

Verc þieca þin verri myclo,
kiola valdi, enu þu kyr sitir;
i.e., thy works appear much worse, lord of the keels, than when thou sittest still.

992. ye ... shulde mysfalle. If this passage be correct, mysfalle is used as a personal verb = to meet with an accident. But ye may be a mistake for pe. Cf. Ayenbite of Inw., ed. Morris, 193, hit is vel vyzt, pet hit misuadle to him and to hare, pet dep harm under oper moder.

1008. wyterly (wyterly, —ye) is a very common expletive, cf. 1064, 1100, 1261, 1463, 1556, 1658, 1821, 1921, 2094, 2332, 2345, 2402, 2436, 2522, 2708, 2804, 2862, 2936, etc. It is derived from the adjective wytter, wiler = leel. vitr (gen. vitrs), wise, and means ‘certainly.’

1021. hedde I have altered to hevedde. It is true, the author pronounced also hedde, or rather heede, as he rhymes it with yede, l. 6117, and with leedd, or rather leede, l. 7807 (see the note). But his usual pronunciation appears to have been hevyd or heved, since he rhymes it 15 times with words in -eved, -eved. The scribe, however, has not once preserved the original spelling. It rhymes with levedde, as here in l. 4567, with reevedd, reeved, revedd, revedde, revedde, revedde, l. 1885, 2658, 2926, 3715, 5039, 6156, 6929, 7519, 8642, 9260, 11560, 11754, with berevedde, l. 3323. The younger form has often been introduced by scribes (or even printers) where the authors employed the older heved (O.E. heafod). Cf. Eglamour, written by the same scribe as our poem (Thornton Romances, ed. Halliwell, p. 152):

And with the stompe, that hym was leeyd,
He stroke the knyght in the heedd,

but the Lincoln MS. reads hevedde. The same occurs in l. 385 of the same poem. Cf. also Guy in the Caius MS., p. 182:

When i haue Smytten of thine heede
And kyng Triamoure his honour berevedde;

ib. p. 187:

Hys aventayle tho from hym he reevyd
And then he smote of hys heede;

Copland’s Guy, U i:

But Terry had her him bereaved
And therefore he smote of many an hed;

ib. Bb iii:

Guyes stede he would haue him bereaved
And with a staffe smote Guy on the head.

1049. Hym to venge he pochet were late. Late cannot possibly be right, as then l. 1049 would mean just the reverse of 1048, where in a stownde is — in a short time, rapidly; cf. 1057, 1945, 1966, 3401, 4448, 5062, 6123, 6913, etc. — in a lytull stownde, 1250, 1264, 3317, 3363, 3884, 4413, 4762, etc. I have, therefore, altered late to hate = hote, quickly, rapidly; cf. 5063, he revedd hym sone full hote; 5475, Guy hym turned sone hote; 6498, that he felyd hyt full hote; 6656, came full hote; 8304, felyd hyt full hote; 10266, a darte, that came hote. Cf. fote hote, 10926, that corresponds to O.F. chaut pas, and the Swiss fusswarmes. Italian tosto and French tôt are very likely derived from Latin tostus (from torreo), heated.
1051. hyt refers to the substantive smite, blow, which is to be supplied from the verb smate, l. 1050. Cf. 1103-4:

When Gye hym felyd smeten sore,
To ylde hyt hym he was yore;

ll. 2001-2:
He smote a knyght in that tyde:
Into the body hyt can glyde;

ll. 9901-2:
Thre dayes myȝt he nodur ete nor drynyke:
Hyt wolde not in hys body synke.

Similar cases occur in ll. 5625, 6114, 6498.

1104. yore. O.E. geave = N.H.G. gar cannot possibly have become yore in M.E. Though it occurs again in l. 5944, it is owing only to the scribe who, after having written sore instead of sere in ll. 1103 and 5943, wanted to improve the rhyme. The author uses yare or yare very often in the rhyme, but never with such a word as dore. Cf. yare: -are (O.E. ā), 865, 1405, 1561, 1753, 2300, 3612, 4721, 4726, 4864, 6181, 6383, 6732, 6790, 7567, 7898, 8547, 8749; yare: -are (O.E. ā), 2006, 2687, 4594, 5999, 6018, 6216, 6307, 6527, 7374, 7482, 8576, 8589, 8685, 10043, 11936.

1110. derey = O.F. derei, desrei, desroi, the reverse of arrei, array. It is originally 'disorder,' hence 'precipitation,' 'hurry'; cf. 1607; but besides 'disorder of the body, injury, hurt,' cf. l. 4336; 'disorder of the mind, discontent, grumbling,' 4198; 'excessive grief,' 4529.

1126. slayne rhyming with tane. Though there are a few rhymes -a: -aye (2557, 2993, 8071; very likely also, 6529, 6571; perhaps 4995), and though the author often uses slayne as the participle past (cf. 1045, 1112, 1206, 1420, 1499, 1856, etc.), yet I am convinced that slayne here must be altered to slane. We find this spelling pretty often; cf. tane: slane, 1662, 3454, 3662, 5210, 7472; slane: tane, 4089, 4993, 5663, 7135, 7163, 8889; slane: bane, 4101. Cf. also slone: gone, 1035, 2439, 6669, etc. I thought myself, therefore, entitled to read slane for slayne whenever this alteration made the rhyme perfect. Cf. ll. 1724, 2169, 2186, 2234, 3765, 5077, 6950, 7306, 7552, 9575, 11853.

1144-5. there as = (thither, or there) where; cf. 5362, 6874, 7967, 8131, 9092, 9458, 11652.

1149. colde = dead; cf. 3330, 4952, 6235; Ludus Coventriae, ed. Halliwell, p. 168, this daye tho kyngges xal be kold; and the German 'einen kalt machen' = to kill.

1155. sory wordys were me lent: wordys not 'words,' but 'fates'; cf. l. 7416, harde wordys ys me before. It ought to be wyrdys, from O.E. wyrd, M.E. wyrde, wirde, Southern wurde. In Piers the Plowman (ed. Skeat), Text C, xiii, 209, we find:

And out of wo into wele youre wyrdes shul chaunge,
but four MSS. read wordes.

1196. *smote*, lit. *smote*, means 'fell.' *Smite* is very often employed in an intransitive sense = to rush; cf. Morris and Skeat's Specimens of Early English, II, p. 6, l. 133:

A suein, þat het Taylefer, *smote* forþ biuore þer;

ib. p. 21, l. 74:
Treoflinge heo *smot* her and þer.

Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 173, l. 74. But it is doubtful whether *smite* has the same sense in such passages as þey *smote* þen togedur, l. 1467; or *smytet faste samen*, l. 1893. Cf. 1811, 2891, 4987, and Mätzner's note to *Sprachpr.* I, 163, l. 29.

1199, 1200. Of *hys felows* . . . *cowde he no* . . . *redde*, he did not know what to do with his fellows. In N.H.G. there is a very similar phrase, mit seinen geführten wuste er sich keinen rat. Cf. 1727-38, what ys yowre redde of oure knyghtys; 2361-3, what ys yowre redde . . . of oure lorde; 6626, what he myft do, he cowde no redde; 9030, and therfore y can no redde; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6526, of him no vorþ non opfer red; Havelok, ed. Skeat, 148, *ne non*, of his iuel þat coude red. Cf. note to l. 700.

1216. a *febull grace*, ill-luck, misfortune. Cf. Guy in the Caius MS., p. 257:

Now ys comyn hym *feble grace*.

*Grace* often means good or bad luck; cf. 3671, 4773, 4979, 8142; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8312:

And when Gij seye þat fair grace.


1228. on *all manere*, 'by all means, at any rate,' but generally of no great force. Cf. 2554, 3528, 4206, 4690, 4711, 5894, 6360, 6476, 7052, 7101, 7248, 7651, 7942, 8551, 8842, 9119, 9188, 9312, 9828, 9832, 11466, 11670, 11798, 11934, 11954, 11966; cf. *in all manere*, 9168.

1239. The verb is wanting in the MS. Though it is possible that *come* was simply omitted by the scribe either before or after *to me*, yet I thought it safer to alter *to me to come*; cf. ll. 4451-2:

Then came theyns fyfene
Bolle men and eke kene.

1247. To *an ermytage* cannot possibly be correct, as the next line means 'that had formerly been his friend.' Cf. the French (Herbing, ll. 911-12):

A un hermite sen est ale,
Ou il eert ainzais apoyncte,

which is rendered in Turnbull's Guy, ll. 1451-2:

To an *ermite* he is ygo,
Þat he was ere aqynted to;

and in Copland's Guy, G iii:

To an *hermite* then rode Guy,
That he knew before, truey.

1251. The *dewe Oton* is nominative. 'I am woe' is a very common construction in M.E., and occurs even in Shakspere (e.g. Tempest, V, i, 139, I am woe for't, sir; cf. Abbott's Sh. Gramm., § 230). Cf.
2027, 8050, 10367-8, 11046. The origin of this construction is well shown by such a passage as King Horn, 115-16:

Ofte hadde Horn beo wo,
Ae neure wurs, han him was þo.

Horn is the dative, as him proves; but where there was no such pronoun, the dative could not but be mistaken for a nominative. However, ‘wo is me’ did not get quite out of use. Cf. Mätzner’s Gramm., II, 229. E. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 239, l. 226:

So wo was him: his wyf loked so foule.

Cf. note to l. 3474.

1282. Sesyone MS. The name rhyming with Burgoyne, 1291, 4354, 7378, 7660, with Colyne, 1919, 2139, there can be no doubt of its correct form being Sesoyne. But it is always misspelled, generally Sesyone or Cesyone, once (l. 4354) syseayne. Cf. note to l. 1291.

1285. bordys; cf. ll. 1297-8, þe prys of justynge and of bordyse; and l. 5723, to justes and to bordys (MS. bordes, but the word rhymes with pryce); Guy, ed. Turnbull, 42-3:

Al him preysed þer yfere
Of bordis and turnament ywis;

and ib., 883-4:

þer nas noþer turnament no bordis,
Pat Gij þeroft no wan þe priis;

William of Palerne (ed. Skeat), 1477:

For he was atte a bordes, þer bachiliers pleide.

Cf. O.F. bohordeis, behordeis, jousting, tournament. Stratmann cites the word only from William of P., and it is entirely omitted by Mätzner. Halliwell in his Dictionary, p. 197, quotes ll. 1285-6 of our poem, explaining ‘bordys’ by ‘tournaments’; but bordys is, without doubt, a singular.

1291. Now ys he went to Sesyone. Even if we had not the French original, ll. 1282 and 1290 would prove that fro Sesoyne is the reading wanted. But cf.:

Puis est ale de Sesoiynge,
Si est venus en Borgoine.

1293. To dewke Myllon, that was þan = to the then duke Myllon. Cf. St Dunstan (ed. Furnivall), 31-2:

þo he was of manes wit, to his vnele he gan go,
Þe archebispoch of Canterbury, seint Aldelm, þat was þe,

and the passages quoted by Mätzner in the note to Sprachyroben, I, 172, l. 32; Thomas à Becket (ed. Black, p. 101), ll. 1985-6:

And he madeke Robert of Broke, his clerk, that was the, Wardeyn therof;

ib. (p. 124), l. 2449:

The pope Honori, that was tho;

Robert Mannyng de Brunne, ed. Hearne, p. 213:

Our queene, þat was þen, dame Helianore;

Barbour’s Bruce, ed. Skeat, xiii, 3:

The steward Valter, that than wes.
Mr Skeat’s comma before Valier I think to be wrong. It is at bottom the same construction as in N.E., *my wife that is to be*; or Latin, *vestra, quae dicitur, vita mors est.*

1301-3. ‘There was neither lord nor knight nor squire to whom he did not give arms,’ but in M.E. a principal sentence is used instead of a relative one, and the negative is omitted. Cf. ll. 5812-13:

Ther ys no man, þat comeþ hym nere,
He wyll hym slee day or nyght,

i. e. ‘that he will not slay.’ But sometimes even in secondary clauses the negative is wanting. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1264:

*Nas þer non, þat him agros;*

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 12:

Under heuen noo thinge is,
Were it good or yuel, ywis,
That y for the doo it wolde,

but Turnbull’s text (l. 217) reads *nolde* instead of *wolde.* Cf. besides St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 492:

*Nis per non so derne dede, þat sum tyme hit may be seijen;*

Schulz, ll. 709-10: *per nis non so dern dede,*

þat sum tyme it schal be sene;

Green Knight (ed. Morris), l. 726:

*For werre wrathed hym not so much, that wynter was wors;*

Chaucer’s Troilus (Morris, IV, 126), I, 456-7:

*Ek of the day ther passed nought an houre,*

*That to himself a thousand tyme he seyde.*

In all such cases we may say that *bute* is omitted, but really the omission of the negative seems to be owing to a confusion of two constructions.

1343. *also smerte,* as quickly as possible, very quickly; cf. 9623, *also skete;* 9661, *also tyte;* 4310, *as rathe;* 4312, *so moche;* 11457, 11589, *so dere;* 11786, 11920, *so faste.*

1363. I thought it necessary to read *late* in order to make the rhyme perfect. *Late* is very often used by Midland or Northern authors.

1372. *fonde* can be: (1) O.E. *fandian, fondian* = to try, as in ll. 452, 788, 828, 1429, etc.; (2) O.E. *fundian* = to tend, to go, to hasten, as in ll. 3564, 4486, 5115; (3) a form of O.E. *fíndan* = to find. But the first two verbs make no sense here. *Fonde,* derived from *fínde,* is generally the preterit, but this, too, is out of question here. On comparing, however, ll. 9712-13:

But in wo traulde aye
To seke Guy, *ys he wyȝt be fownde,*

we may conclude that *be* is to be inserted and *fonde* to be taken as the participle past, which, however, is generally spelled *fownde.*

1378. Read *verre* here as well as ll. 2748 and 8425. I was uncertain
whether the MS. had verre or veire. The letter following the first e looked more like r than i. Thinking, however, of the etymology of the word (from Latin varius, O.F. vair), I thought myself entitled to read veire. But now I think that verre is also a correct form, O.F. ver occurring beside vair (cf. Burguy, and Halliwell s. v. verre).

1421. hym defendavent = in self-defence; cf. 2572 and me defendavent, ll. 2554, 6586; Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6482:
It was me defendant anou3;

Myre, Instructions for Parish Priests, ed. Peacock, p. 23, ll. 737-8, also all, that layen hond on prest or clerk in violence or harme, but hit (supply be?) him (MS. hi, Peacock, hin) self defendant. The French participle has retained its full force.

1426. I have taken the form required by the rhyme from l. 1511.

1427. Burguyne, i. e. Burgoyne, Burgundy, cannot be correct; cf. ll. 1292-3 and the French (but the corresponding passage is wanting in Mr Herbing’s text after l. 1078):
E de Sessoine le due Reigner
E de Leoregne le due Loher.

1451. The MS. has:
I love the in my dere herte,
the French (Herbing, l. 1100):
Tant vous tienc en mon coer cher.

But I do not think that the translator was so bad a French scholar as to refer cher to coer instead of to vous tienc. Nor do I remember to have met in M.E. with a phrase corresponding to the Greek φιλαν ἥρως. On the other hand, love dere = to love dearly, is common enough in our poem and elsewhere. Cf. ll. 118, 2568, 2643, 11343.

1462. wrath, originally 'to make angry,' often means 'to trouble, to annoy, to injure'; cf. ll. 3252 and 5763; Green Knight, 726, for verre wrathed hym not so much. Perhaps wrathε in l. 1123 similarly means 'annoyed, injured.'

1468. Neither toschyder nor the simple verb schyder is known from any other passage. Halliwell quotes a substantive schider from Arthour and Merlin, p. 224:
And hewn on with gret powers,
On schider so doth this carpenters,
but I cannot help conjecturing that schider, which Halliwell thinks to mean 'a shiver,' is a mistake for schides (cf. Halliwell s. v. schide). In our passage Halliwell explains to schyder by 'to shiver,' and Stratmann refers to N.H.G. scheitern, which, by the bye, does not yet occur in M.H.G. If other instances of this word do not turn up, one might be inclined to think toschyder to be miswritten for toschyver. The rhyme would not be much worse than sweythe: of lyue, 2239, or swythe: wyfe, l. 4377.

1474. hyt omitted; cf. l. 7305, therfore folgye schethought than.
WARWICK.
1477. *pere hyt laye*; cf. 4663 and l. 6958, *pere he lay*; Havelok, 568-9:  

*pat hise cromme he per erakede*

Ageyn a gret stone, *per it lay*;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, 229:

To sen hire broþur, *per he lay*;

cf. id. ed. Schulz, 192:

Biforn hir broþer, *per he lay*;

Shakspere's 1 Henry IV, i, 1, 96-8:

O that it could be proved  
That some night-tripping fairy had exchanged
In cradle-clothes our children *where they lay*.

M.E. poetry abounds with expletives of this sort; cf. note to l. 1535.

1493. Perhaps *stronge* is a clerical error for *strange*, i.e. strange, foreign. Cf. note to l. 8935.


1497-8. *telle All þat case, how hyt fell, a pretty frequent prolepsis (cf. ʒen, 'Oðeonseð, þýr ʒetor ʒexwe, ʒen);* cf. Il. 1664 (see the note), 3331, 3764, 4185, 5736, 7323, 7719, 8165, 8271 (see note), 8782, 11852.

1535. *there he stode;* the same expletive, 6189, 6589, 10863, 11929; cf. l. 10682, *as sche standys;* Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8330:

Ichaue swiche þrist, þer y stond;

ib. 8434:  

And smote Gij, *per he stode;*

ib. 8905:

Bifor þemperour, *þer y stode;*

ib. 9020:

þe douk Berard, *þer he stode;*

ib. 9065:

Among þe barouns, *þer þai stode;*

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 176:

And smote the geaunte, *þer he stode;*

ib. p. 255:

Guy smote then with herte good
To Colbrond, *þer he stode;*

Hav., 1818, 1897; Generydes, ed. Wright, 545, 1574; Grail, ed. Furn., 148, 38, etc. Cf. *þere he sat, Guy, ed. Turnb., 3575; Beðwulf, 286;*  

weard maþeolode, *þer on wiege sat,*

and note to l. 1476. Compare also Grimm's Andreas und Elene, xxxv.

inwy, p. 45, pet vor a lite wynynge by ywep ham to zenne; ib. 46, as sel hit yue vor godes loue; p. 265, ghyrep my red and ywep youre. Cf. also icinge (== O.E. gilsung, see Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, II, p. 72, l. 1), ib. p. 16. In all these cases y was dropped before i (y), but cf. the which was emer of Tundale, Tund., ed. Turnbull, p. 224 (= yemer; cf. ib. 239, y was thi yemer evon and moron).

1549. v hundurd men on ende, full 500 men. Cf. the provincial on-end or an-end, which generally means 'without intermission,' but cf. Charles Kingsley's Alton Locke, ch. xii: All so flat as a barn's floor, for vorty mile on-end.

1561-64. Perhaps a few lines are wanting. Cf. the French:

Gui se est mult tort aprestes,
Dreit a Louein sen est ale,
Od li cinquante chualers,
Ke mult sunt naiannz e fiers,
De tote France les plus prisys.

1581. be thys day; cf. 2937, 3555, 3982, 4031, 5255, 5365, 5829, 7039, 7764, 9121, 9418, 9582, 11257.

1591. The pronoun he is omitted, perhaps on'y by a mistake of the scribe.

1607. derye, see note to l. 1110.

1617. streken, moved; cf. 11135 and note. This is the original signification of strike, O.E. strican, ire, meare.

1627. The second hys must be wrong; cf. 4391, 5047, 7253, 7973, 9609, 10181, and the French:

Tret ad puis le brand de ascer.

A similar mistake occurs in l. 8094.

1647. strokys ryde, MS. The French:

La vouissez tant coups doner,
Tant chungalers as autres juster.

I know, it is true, two passages in which an adjective ryde seems to be used in a sense required here. I mean Barbour's Bruce, ed. Skeat, xii, 557:

And mony a riall rymyll ryde

and Gawan and Gol., II, 15, with routis full ride. Mätzner, Sprachproben, I, 376, note to l. 151, is inclined to refer this ryde to Icel. reiSr. But as Icel. reisa is M.E. reise, Icel. greiSa M.E. graythe, so Icel. reiSr would have become M.E. reith, or rather, the older form being reiSr, mereith (cf. Icel. rá = M.E. wro, nook, corner). I think l. 1647 of our poem discloses its origin. If I am not mistaken, it is owing to a mutilation, standing for enryde. The original simple M.E. word ryde = O.E. geryde, opportunnus, levis, aequus, I know only from The Wright's Chaste Wife, ed. Furnivall, II, 524-5:

He herd noyse, that was nott ryde,
Of persons two or thre.

The compound enryde, on the other hand, is very common. It occurs
in our poem as an attribute of stroke or strokys, ll. 3774, 5171, 9640, 11324; besides 1904, 2266 (sperys), 2913 (no substantive); 3225 (oost); 3862, 6828 (body); 4536 (horseys); 5653 (watur); 5688 (land); 6919 (toyle); 9620 (mayle). It means 'severe,' 'enormous,' 'huge,' 'very numerous.' The simple word not being in general use, and the compound with un having no negative sense, it is not to be wondered at the original compound sometimes losing its prefix un-. But, nevertheless, I do not think it probable that ryde here is owing to the author himself, as he never uses it again. I take this opportunity to point out two passages in Copland's Guy in which vnryde must be restored. The one is Ee iii:

Ameraunt drue out a swearde rnsyde,
That bote but on the one syde;

the other II ii:
Through all his armour share Guyon
Into the body a wounde exntyde,
That the red blood gan out glyde.

1655. in a throwe = in a stowende; see note to l. 1049. Cf. 7059; a throwe (a throwe), 1673, 4262, 5885, 10407 = a lytull throwe, 5136, 11147, 11794. But l. 11737, thyss throwe = this time. O.E. þrág.

1667. Does reáde mean 'rode' (O.E. ridon)? Perhaps felows reáde is a clerical error for felowreáde, company, companions?

1684. sekrylye, surely, a very common expletive; cf. 2346, 3498, 3858, 3866, 4121, 4233, 4340, 4532, 4714, 4774, 5242, 5294, 5568; 5746, 5956, etc., etc.

1704. that he hath far and nere seems to stand úrò kowov.

1722. wyth þe deuke farde, had come to the Duke. The French (Herbing, l. 1274):
Que G. od le due esteit;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 1849:
Pat Gij to þe donke yeomen is.

Wyth = 'to,' 'towards,' 'against,' occurs governed by verbs denoting movement, l. 2525, We schall anon wyth hym vende; 2585-6, I schall vende to my cuntre An oost to gedur and vende wyth the; Copland's Guy, L i:
When they came the cittle neare,
With him rode syr Gay(e)re
Wyth fyue thousande knightes bohle;

Havelok, 2535, ferde with him strong and stark.

1723-4. The French (Herbing, l. 1275-6):
Et ses hommes ad occis,
Et son seneschal estelt pris.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., l. 1849-50:
And pat he hath his men ouercome,
Yslawe and his steward nome.

As the text stands, l. 1723 must depend on had harde, l. 1721, which would be rather an awkward construction.

1747. Broke may I rejoice in. It is the subjunctive of broke, O.E. brucan, to enjoy, possess. N.E. brook has a modified sense. Broke governs
\textit{nydur my chyllyr nor my wyfe: my lyfe} means ‘through all my life.’

1753. The Emperor, having first answered to Otoun, then addresses Duke Raynere. Cf. the French:

\begin{quote}
Li emperere li respondi:
\textit{‘Mult ad bon conseil ici.}  
Sire dux Reiner, uns en irrez,
\textit{Sire conestable, e uus si frez;}  
Od uus li duc de Pauie  
Od sa bone cheualerie.’
\end{quote}

Cf. the notes to l. 2355 and 5591.

1759-60. \textit{ye} seems to refer to all the three knights, \textit{the} only to Duke Raynere.

1770. \textit{scheldys}, men with shields, warriors; cf. 3260, and such M.H.G. passages as Rabenschlacht, 562:

\begin{quote}
Näch Rüdegêr dem milden  
zogt her Blœidelin  
mit ahzehn tüsent scilden.
\end{quote}

tolde in number; cf. 1887, \textit{an huundreth knyghtys tolde;} 8432, \textit{x myle tolde fro Oxonforde;} O.E. \textit{geteald or geteald}, to which \textit{rime} or \textit{rimes} is often added (Grein’s \textit{Sprachschatz}, II, 463): e.g. Andreas, 883-5, \textit{we gesegon \ldots eöiołc standan tweJfe getealde tireddige} heeled.

1785. And \textit{ye}, viz. \textit{schall have}, l. 1781. M.E. writers often pass abruptly from indirect to direct speech; cf. 2329, 2721, 3170, 3841, 4546, 4637, 4740, 4845, 5704, 5747, 6267, 6380, 6995, 7416, 7563, 7629, 7832, 8522, 10764, 10903, 10970, 11016, 11621, 11658, 11925, 11940.

1791-4. Cf. the French (Herbing, ll. 1331-4):

\begin{quote}
\textit{Onesques (read Ouëques) eus combateroms,}  
\textit{Si dieus plest, bien les vüenceroms.’}  
Issi le font, cum lout dit:  
Assailliz les ont sauz respit.
\end{quote}

Though the translator makes rather free with the French, yet the latter confirms, at least, the alteration of \textit{ye} to \textit{we} made in the text.

1799. \textit{to the churche.} Does that mean that Harrawde mounted the steeple of the church in order to reconnoitre? Cf. 4963-4. There is nothing like this passage in the French.

1800-10. \textit{Payuaye}, l. 1804, seems incorrect instead of \textit{Payynge}, which would rhyme better with \textit{velonye}, l. 1805, than \textit{me} does. \textit{me} again can rhyme with \textit{contre}, l. 1807, which form is often employed in our poem than \textit{contray}. L. 1810 is, I think, spurious, and was added after the confusion had taken place (cf. notes to l. 7837 and ll. 9203-7). Nor is l. 1802 genuine either, l. 1801 rhyming with 1803, if \textit{assay} be replaced by \textit{assayle}. Thus we get:

1800 Oton was the fursto man,  
That he sawe in batayle  
\textit{[Forsothe wythowten fayle].}  
Harrawde, he poght furste to assayle  
The felle dewke Oton of Payyne.
1805 'Thynkyst thou not of thy velonye,  
That thou duddyst my lorde and me  
In Lumbarde, thy nowne contre?  
We schall be venged wele to day  
Wyth godys grace, ye fat y may
1810 [Wyth my handys y schall assay].'
Now they, etc.


1846. Now he hap of hys felows lorne. I am not quite certain how to understand this line. Of hys felows might mean 'some of his fellows'; see the note to l. 1961, and cf. Layamon (ed. Madden, III, 81), 27136-7, for a che dey he losede of his leodfolke. But from ll. 1856-8 we learn that Ilarrawde had been separated from his fellows. Can lese of mean that? Or is or to be omitted? I do not know the corresponding line of the French work (Mr Herbing's text being very incomplete here), but the Caius MS. (the Auchinleck MS. wants a leaf here) has, p. 64:
There is Heraude mysebefalle,  
Loste he hath his men ale.

1849. Though in some M.E. works pe occurs often instead of pew, it does not occur again in our poem (cf. notes to ll. 3803 and 10021). I therefore attribute it here to a mistake of the scribe (cf. they : wey, 10093-4; joye : they, 11223-4).

1862. shewyd hys reson := spoke, said; cf. 3652, 5794, 6730; compare also 2784.

1876. They fught togedur gode spede. The preposition a (for such it is = on) is sometimes omitted. Cf. Athelston (Reliquiae antiquae, edd. Thos. Wright and J. O. Halliwell), II, 93:
He took hym a lettre ful good spede ;
ib. p. 102:
To Grausende he come good spede ;
Alis., 3441 (quoted by Mätzner, Gramm., II2, 182) :
He is coming god spid.
But as a rule the preposition is kept; cf. a gode spede, ll. 3873, 4542, 4905, 6505, 6674; a grete pase, 1998; a gode pase, 4439, 6341, 6529, 8048, 8320.

1882. The French original has no corresponding line, but the insertion of he pou I think justifies itself.

1902. wythowte delay, cf. 5830, 5900, 9122.

1918. y would be very queer. Cf. the French:
'Seignurs,' fait il, 'ore me escoutez ;
Ces grant compaines uenir uez,
and the Caius MS., p. 66:
This se knyghtes bee comyng, as yee may see.
Cf. notes to ll. 8386 and 8422.

1925-6. I do not know any exactly parallel passage, but cf. such O.E. sentences as pe ðerum rihthes wy rude ðor ðse on boclande ðse
on folclande (Koch, Gramm., II, 457; Mätzner, Gramm., III, 373); and Chaucer’s Troilus, 4, 492-5 (ed. Morris, IV, 128):

But how it was, certain, kan i not seye,
If that his lady understande not this,
Or feyned hir, she ynsote, on of the tweye.

— To after must does not occur again in our poem, but we find a great many instances of to being governed by some other auxiliary verbs which are generally used without it. It is found after will, ll. 2546, 6272 (see note), 6294, 7076 (for to), 9384, perhaps 10021; before will, 10718; after shall, 2612, 10205; after may and dar, 9963; after wyll and may, dar and can, 9938. Generally the infinitive with to is preceded by another without it. In this case we find the same use of to in Shakspere; see Abbott, 350. But cf. ll. 6272 and 10205. See also the notes to ll. 2353 and 3530-1.

1935. Helpe is the subjunctive = ‘may god help’; cf. ll. 3257-8. The sentence would be clearer if the translator had kept the negative of the original:

Ne li ait deus omnipotent,
Ke a nul jour nus faudra,
Thant com defendre se pora.

1944. bere, strike; cf. 2228, 3382, 4066, 4928, 5518.

1948. wele ye wole; cf. 4493, 8074, 9491; ye wol[e] as an expletive, 998, 1952, 2494, 2829, 2842, 4138, 4464, 5319, etc., etc.

1961. Of pe Almayns = some of the Germans. This partitive use of of is pretty common in M.E. Cf. Mätzner’s Gramm., II, 274. Even the subject may be expressed in this way. Cf. Kindheit Jesu, ed. Horstmann, 187-8:

Of pe braunches, pat þou birst, iwis
Schallen beon set in paradys.

1963-8. The passage apparently implies that Guy, when he saw so many of Raynere and Waldynere’s men killed within a short time, called upon these to surrender. But instead of the genitive which should depend on men in l. 1965, we find by prolepsis (see note to ll. 1497-8) an accusative in the principal sentence.


1995. þey cannot possibly mean the enemy, but must refer to oure men, l. 194, i.e., Guy and his men. The sense required by the context is got by inserting be. Cf. the Caius MS., 68:

For, and Guy bee dede or neme,
All we bee thanne overcome;

and Copland’s Guy, K ii:

And if syr Guy be taken or slayne,
I tell you forsooth certayne,
For euer is your pryece go.
1997. The scribe's mistake is easily accounted for. After wendyl his eyes got into the next line, and so he began to write a grete pase. But having got as far as grete, he saw his mistake, and got back into the right line, but forgot to expunge a grete.

2002. hyt; cf. note to 1. 1051.

2022. of that tythyngye = of that thing, of it. Tythyngye often means, not the account of an event, but the event itself. Cf. ll. 2155, 7412, 10318; and perhaps 3810, 7333. Compare also M.H.G. mare, rede; Greek εικος, λόγος, etc.

2025-6: That was to Gye a trewe frende
Ontetakyn Harrarde be hende.

We should expect the trewest frende. But it is very likely an inaccuracy of the author himself.

2043. be tale generally means 'in number' = tolde (see the note to 1. 1770); cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7549:

Of thritti kinges bi tale;

Copland's Guy, K ii:
Ye see comming in a dale
Many a thousande Lumarde by tale;

Havelok, 2026: Hi were bi tale sixti and ten;
Gen. and Ex., 1673: For's geden seuen ger bi tale.

But in our passage be tale seems to mean 'the whole number,' 'all.'

2091. Put a comma after save, for he means Duke Segwin. The object hyt is omitted; cf. 4092 and note to 1. 1474.

2098. yf = give. See note to 1. 1538.

2144. morsel, a common corruption of morsel. See Stratmann and mosselmele — piecemeal in St Kath., ed. Furnivall, 251.

2187. the comyn belle must be a bell that summons the whole host. In the French we find trumpets used to the same purpose:

Ses greilles ad fet puis soner.

2210. a sawte or asawte? See note to 1. 576.

2220. wele of tolde, esteemed.

2224. corde, accord. See note to 1. 576.

2234. And some scoped is parenthetical, were, 2233, belonging also to slane; cf. notes to ll. 4738 and 5106.

2243-4: 'Great loss was there, but the Duke had the greater.'

2268. The same fault occurs in l. 10631. Although I think my correction self-evident, yet I may as well confirm it by citing the corresponding French line and its translation in the Caius MS., p. 75:

Bien quidens, kil seist afole (killed);
That allmoste he weneith dede bee.

2297. Though yow undoubtedly occurs several times as a nominative in our poem (see the note to l. 4192), yet here and in l. 2432 it is certainly used as hym in l. 429 (cf. note to l. 385).
2301. *amonge*, from time to time, in the mean time, at the same time; cf. ll. 3154, 3354, 3790, 9906, 10674. O.E. on *gemang* is similarly used in (Cædmon’s) Genesis, 809:

cymeð hægles scûr heofone getenge,
有趣的 the forst on *gemang*, se byð fyrum ceald,
hwilum of heofunum hâte scineð,
blúcð þeós beorhte sunne,

where *on gemang* is synonymous with *hwilum*; cf. Owl and N. 6, *sum while* softe and lud *among*. See also note to l. 650.

2302. *abblasters*. Mätzner’s *Wörterbuch*, p. 102, does not mention this form of the word which now is spelled *arblast* or *arbalist*. Halliwell’s Dictionary, p. 5, has *abblastre*, but with the meaning ‘arbalister.’ But the name of the weapon sometimes occurs with *r* at the end; cf. *alblastres* = arbalists in Mätzner and in Copland’s Guy, L iii:

They shoten with noble *albastres*;

and hence also *albastrere* = ‘arbalister.’

2303. *harowes for arrowes*, arrows. Frequently as *h* is prefixed to vowels at the beginning of words in many M.E. works, this is the only instance in our poem.

2311. *syght* (instead of *syghed* that the MS. has) is required by the rhyme. We find this form in the MS. in l. 293 (rhyming with *dyght*).

2316. *sawte*; see note to l. 576.

2324-7. *chace pe dore*. . . . , *both at hartys and at hyndys*. Note the change of construction.

2329. I think that the present tense is best explained by supposing a transition from indirect to direct speech. See note to l. 1785.

2353. An anacoluthon. *To dubbe* does not run parallel with *To chere*, but with *have*. *To* is used as in the passages mentioned in the note to l. 1925, and *to dubbe* follows as if preceded by *y wylle gyne* the instead of by *thou shalt have*.

2355. Segwin suddenly turns to another audience; cf. note to l. 1753.


2391-2. *Or here*: be *mystere*?

2408. *bedene*. This, although pretty common, yet mysterious word occurs besides in ll. 8720, 8748, and 11637. Neither Professor Marsh’s derivation from the Dutch *bij dien*, nor Stratmann’s = *bi ene* is very plausible. There is no telling how such a Dutch phrase could get into M.E. with so modified a meaning, nor is there any analogous instance of an inserted *d*. Such being the case, I venture to offer a new etymology, though I am far from thinking it certain. *Bedene, bidene* may be *mid ene*, literally ‘with once’; cf. *for one*, for once; at *ene*, at once, in Stratmann. Cf. also M.H.G. *mitein* and *mit eine* together. This etymology would account for the two principal meanings of the word: (1) at the same time, together, altogether; (2) without delay, immediately (cf.
N.E. at once). In those few passages, cited by Mätzner in his Wörterbuch, p. 220, without an explanation, it seems to mean ‘altogether,’ ‘entire.’ Now, it is true, the change of m to b is not usual in English. But it is no more so in other languages, and yet it must be acknowledged in a few instances. So we find in M.H.G. betalle, bitalle for metalle, mitalle, i.e. mit alle, totally, entirely; in Icel. marwendill for marmendill; in Italian novero for nobero, Lat. numerus. Cf. even Dickens’s nom de plume, the origin of which was thus told by the author himself: ’Boz was the nickname of a pet child, a younger brother, whom I had dubbed Moses, in honour of the “Vicar of Wakefield,” which being facetiously pronounced through the nose became Bosses, and being shortened became Boz;’ and Barney’s pronunciation in Oliver Twist, especially: Dobody but Biss Dadsy = nobody but Miss Nancy. The way in which Moses became Bosses is far from correctly stated, though Dickens gave the same explanation in Oliver Twist: “‘Dot a shoul,’ replied Barney; whose words, whether they came from the heart or not, made their way through the nose.” Quite the reverse is the case: n and m, when prevented from making their way through the nose, become d and b; and, on the other hand, b becomes m by making its way through the nose, as in somersault or somerset = O.F. souvresault.

2419-20. Here the Emperor alone is supposed to be speaking.

2421. He must refer to Tyrry. But this interruption of the Emperor’s words is very odd. The French has:

Teri, ca vien, beaus amis.
Dune ne veit (sic!) tu par en sum cel mont
Tant cheualers? etc.

Neither this nor the other English versions suggest any plausible emendation.

2457-9. See the note to ll. 2377-9.

2496. sotelle. See ‘A Bill of Dinner Fare. For a Feast at Oxford’ in Reliquiae antiquae, I, 88. There we find: ‘Primus Cursus: a sattellee’; cf. also the Index to The Babees Book, ed. Furnivall, s. v. sotelle.

2497 8. We get a perfect rhyme by restoring herouns: braouns (or herons: brauns). Bra-own was originally bisyllable; Morris in Chaucer, Clar. Press., Gloss., s. v. braun, cites even braun; cf. O.F. braon, braion, Prov. brazon, braidon, derived from O.H.G. präto, or rather its older form bráđo; cf. N.H.G. braten.

2507. The rhyme compels us to read prysons (or prisouns) here as well as in l. 2536. Cf. also the Caius MS. of Guy, p. 71:

With them they lede theire prisoners,
Dukes, erles and also barouns;
whereas the Auchinleck MS. has kept the correct rhyme (ed. Turnbull, 2031-2):

Wir hem pai habben her prisouns,
Doukes, erls and barouns.
"Prisoun" = prisoner occurs very often in M.E.; cf. O.F. prisoun, It. prigione, Span. pris.ion.

2525. wyth hym = towards him, to him. See note to l. 1722.

2534. grete I have restored for wepe in the MS. It began early to get out of use in the South of England, but is retained to this day in the North and in Scotland. I thought myself entitled to restore it for wepe whenever by my doing so the rhyme became perfect. In Robert Mannyng's Handlyng Synne, l. 5721:

  Whan he hadde ful long grete,
the last word has in the MS. wepe written above as a gloss (cf. Morris, Spec., II, p. 391). The scribe of our MS. (or a predecessor of his) was not so accurate. He simply substituted wepe for grete. Hence we find in l. 3794 wepte (for grete) rhyming with mette, ll. 6058 and 7258, wepe (for grete) rhyming with sweete. But in l. 9852 grete (rhyming with fete) escaped the scribe's alteration.

2546. to honge depends on y wyll, l. 2543; see the note to II. 1925-6.

2554. me defendawnt; see note to l. 1421.

2572. so mote y goo, cf. 7819, 11760; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5627:

  Ich auȝt þe loue, so moti gon;
  þat hors no tit þe, so mot y go;
Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, 1033:

Of þe me wondrep, so mot y go;
Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 255:

  Was neuer non better, so must i go;
corrupt in Copland's Guy, S i:

  He shall it wit, so might i go.
Cf. also Flor. & Bl., ed. Lumby, 729:

  Quaþ þe admiral: 'so ihe mote go,
  þe schulle deie togadere bo.'
Cf. so mot þou go, Guy, ed. Turnb., 232 and 3556.

2582. servyed, deserved; see note to l. 576.

2586. wyth the, against thee; cf. note to l. 1722.

2601. wyth couenande. On comparing l. 4308, wyth that couenande y schall þe pleyght; l. 5389, wyth that couenande kyssse me here; and l. 11565, on that couenande y schall the ȝelde, I find it very probable that that is to be inserted here.

2612. to serve depends on schall he; see note to II. 1925-6.

2613. he refers to Tyrry, but in l. 2614 to the Emperor.

2641. Both Guy and Segveyne separated from them, l. 2639, by a principal sentence.

2645. This line does not depend on l. 2646, but the principal sentence (he sayde) is omitted; cf. II. 10624-5.

2647-9. There seems to be some mistake. I do not know the corresponding French passage, but in the Auchinleck MS., II. 2363-5, we read:
'Otus,' qua⁠ Gij, 'þou schalt daye,  
When þou of tresoun clepes ons baye,  
Boðe Segyn and eke me.'

I think the lines of our poem ran perhaps originally thus:  
'þou lyest, dewke Otoun of Payuye,  
When þou spekyst of soche felouye  
Ageyne, etc.

2655. saye is not N.E. say, but essay, assay; see note to 1. 576.

2661. They were departyd, etc. This seems to be unnecessary according to the account of the quarrel given in our poem. But in the French original Guy did not challenge Otoun, but struck or offered to strike him; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2367:

Him he smot wiþ his fest  
Amide þe těp riž al in ernest,  
Ac þe baruns bitvene hem goþ, etc.;

cf. Copland's Guy, N i:

And right with that syr Guy there  
Would haue smitten him under the care,  
But knightes, etc.

2671. No daughter of Segwin's has been mentioned (only a sister in l. 2145); on the contrary, he is a bachelor, and marries the Emperor's daughter. Cf. the French:

Atant es uus li due Reiner:  
Al due Seguin na demander  
Érnenburgh, sa sorur.

2674. bryght in bowre. Bûr is the Old Teutonic name for γυνακώνις. In bowre is often used as an expletive in M.E.; cf. 2674, 3836, 4060, 4753, 5372, 5627, 7834; Guy, ed. Turn., 7024, of leuedis briʒt in bour; ib. 7075, and leuedis briʒe in bour; ib. 7116, fair Feliis so briʒt in bour. Even this use is Old Teutonic; cf. (Cædmon's) Genesis, 2385-7:

þæt gehýrde heofona waldend,  
þæt on bûre uhóf brýd Abrahames  
hhtleåsne hleahtor;

Hildebrandslied, 20-1:

er forlêt in lante luttila sitten  
prût in pûre;

GnÞrúarkviða, II, i:

mær var ek meyja (móþr mik feöldi)  
bótir þi þârî (= M.E. bryght in bowre).

2682. for hys nameys seyna; cf. 11973, and Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2165-6:

God for his name seune  
He bring you to gode heene

=Caius MS., p. 84: God for his names seven  
Bringe you sone to good hauen.

I do not know what seven names are meant. Cf. 4462, for his holy name.
2691. hardilye, 'certainly,' but originally 'one may do (or say) so hardly.' Cf. 9155, 9566, 9701; often in Chaucer: e. g., C. T. Prol. 156:

For, hardly, she was not undergrewe.

2703. bad, offered. It would be O.E. *bædd*, from *beódan*, German *bieten*. But this word gets confounded in M.E. with *biddan*, German *bieten*. Cf. N.E. *forbid* = Germ. *verbieten* = O.E. *forbeóddan*. Compare also Inf. *bede*, ll. 9919, 11021 (= O.E. *beóddan*), Preterit *bædde*, 4214, 4485 (= O.E. *bed*, from *biddan*), pl. *bydde*, 4481 (the vowel is owing to the influence of the present *bidd*). Past P. *bedyn*, 6992 (= O.E. *beden*, from *biddan*).

2726. Constantyne, the nobull londe. Constantiopile was first corrupted to Constantyne the nobel; cf. ll. 8396, 9184. Then the nobel could be omitted; hence we find simply Constantyne or Costantyne, 2739, 2761, 5361, 6956, 8748.

2727. Syzane. The Corpus Christi C. MS. of the French poem has *ioine*, but the Harleian *coine*, and the latter is also the reading of the Aueclinleek MS. (Turnb., l. 2439) and the Caius MS., p. 83. The rhyme *coyne* = *payne* is not to be objected to; cf. *goye* = *they*, 11223-4. *Coyne* is *Icoine* = *Iconium*.

2731. MS. Sarasyns, which does not rhyme. The *Sarasyns*, i. e. Mahometans, were considered as pagans through the Middle Ages, their principal deities being called: *Mahovnde, Termogant*, and *Apollyne* (cf. ll. 2938, 3339, 3436, 3653). *Hepynnes* is used of a Mahometan country in l. 7867.

2737. stroyed = destroyed. See note to l. 576.

2753-5. *pe marshandys ... hym ... hym*. This change can be explained. The merchants spoke through one among them, and to this man *hym* refers. But the translator should have either followed entirely the original:

Quant li mariners unt tut conte,

Gui les ad a deu comande,

or introduced the singular in l. 2753, too, as is done in Copland’s Guy, N ii:

When Guy had heard the maryner,

He thanked him with lovely chere.

2758. *yf* = *yf*, give. See note to l. 1538.

2772. *rynge* seems to be used here in a collective sense.

2782-3. *sende after him wyth an erle*; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9367-8:

Pemperour sent after him to

Wip he fischer and oter mo.

2810. But the montaunce of a myle = the time in which a mile can be passed over. Cf. ll. 2412 and 6514; Triamounre, 1324-6:

He had not redyn, but a while,

Not the montauncs of a myle,

Two knyghte sawe he hove and abyde;
Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 177:
   He was slayne within a myle;
Flor. and Blanch., ed. Lumby, 513-14:
   Here kessinge flesi e mile,
   And þat hem þȝte litel while;
Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 112, 68:
   They seten stille wel aforlong way;
cf. ib. II, 131, 279:
   This Johan lith stille aforlong whyle or two,
where other MSS. have way for whyle;
ib. III, 115, 275-6:
   I schal not faile, seurly, of my day,
   Nought for a thousand frankes, a myle way;
ib. V, 285, 307-8:
   Ne nat a word was spoken in the place
   The mountaunce of a furlong wey of space;
ib. V, 207, 331:
   And yf i slepe a furlonge wey or tweye.
Cf. also the passage quoted from the Caius MS. in the note to ll. 9651-2. The very reverse of this use is that of the German stunde, hour, which often means the space one is able to pass through in one hour.

2824. Read þe instead of he, which is a misprint.
2827. 'my lord the Emperor's son.' See note to l. 687.
2828. Thys endurs day, 'the other day'; generally this ender day. See Stratmann. But I do not think that Stratmann's derivation of ender from Icel. endr, 'in times of yore,' is right. I am rather of Prof. Mätzner's opinion, who, Sprachproben, I, 112, note to l. 366 (cf. his Gramm., III, 179), connects it with Icel. annarr, other. Cf. andys day in Halliwell's Dict., s. v. andyrs, where also an instance of endres is given.

2833. Turrye, corruption of Turkye; cf. 2849, 2990.
2850. of all þe crye, of all the host. Crye often means proclamation, command; cf. ll. 6071, 7494; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 194:
   Kyng Athelstone made a crye;
Triamoure, 936:
   Ye wot wele, yowre crye was so.
Hence it may be used as N.E. command, and N.H.G. commando, to denote the whole body of those who are under some person's command; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6593:
   Wip alle þat crie of þat cuntre.

2862. I thought it necessary to read But a instead of And no; cf. ll. 2972, 3030, 3220, 3168, and especially 4064:
   He was a traytowre, verelye.
The French has:
   Cheualer cte pruz e hardiz,
   Mes fel c traitre cte tut dis;
NOTES, LINES 2864—2906.

2864. MS. hyt for hym. But tyne, 'lose,' 'destroy' (cf. note to l. 6666), is a transitive verb. The same fault occurs in l. 8032. The emendation is confirmed by l. 2256:

Hys hors he made hym for to tyne.

2872. hogle = bigly; as to the second e cf. note to l. 132; as to the first, Generydes, ed. A. Wright, l. 2075:

Full begely shapen bothe in lengeth and brede.

2884. he my liocle, by ray hood; cf. 11. 5198, G183, 9053; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 248:

He ys not wyse, be myn hood.

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 48, 1151:

I comende hire wysdom, by myn hode;

ib. V, 291, 507: That is a trewe tale, by myn hode;

Octavyan, ed. Halliwell, 580:

Y swere yow, lordynge, be my hode;

Of a mayden off Antioche, in the Vernon MS., xci:

And þen heo seide, beo my hode:

'Non ben þese ensamples goode,'

Cf. also Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV, 71, 589:

'Wel borded,' quod the duk, 'by my hatte,'

2893-4. The subject occurs twice as þey and they. In MSS, several instances of double pronouns appear, and it is often difficult to decide whose fault it is, whether the scribe's or the author's; cf. note to l. 9191, and ll. 9189-91, 10117-18, but in l. 10520 the first me is, no doubt, owing only to a mistake of the scribe; cf. besides Guy, ed. Turnb., 5503-5:

Iuel þou dost, mi gode ler.

When þou for swiche a man

Swiche sorwe schalowe make;

Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 1446:

That he in prison depe he shuld be cast;

ib. l. 1318:

And þem avisod þem in euery thing;

Havelok, 1863-4:

Fro fer he stoden: him with flintes

And gleuys schoten him fro ferne.

2906. of of oon = off of one; cf. 2919, 10353. The first of is the adverb, the second the preposition. The two words belonging to the same verb, but separated by other words, occur also in ll. 3715-16, 11065. As to in . . . in (or inne) see the note to l. 10383; cf. besides Reintroun, ed. Turnbull, 742:

On þat place was a paleis on;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 695:

On his tables his pouht was on,
where the editor's explanation 'on am ende adv. = one allein' is certainly wrong.

2913. vnyrde, very many; cf. note to l. 1647.
2933. trovthe, religion; cf. bi mi lay, Guy, ed. Turnb., 8264; by the laye, Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 178.
2937. by my browe; cf. note to l. 374.
2941. behet, an inorganic participle past; see note to l. 169.
2954. per ma fay; cf. be my fay, 2988, 3216, 8818; par ma faye, 8774; par faye, 10300.
2971. To Gye; cf. note to l. 600.

Alisander, ed. Weber, 2157-8:

Arehes he hutte; now he is dud:

His stede is gray, without layn;

Myrc's Instructions, ed. Peacock, 810:

And hye pertio, wythouhte leyne.

ib. l. 1510: per seue hym penance, without layn.

Mr Peacock is wrong in explaining layn by 'reward.' For other instances consult Halliwell's Dict., s. v. laine. The verb layne, leyne, conceal, occurs 7054, 8218, 8350, 8353. There seems to be little doubt that it is not O.E. lygnian as Stratmann supposes, but Icel. leyna. The substantive seems to be derived from the verb, if it be not a corruption of Icel. leyn. It, certainly, cannot be Icel. laun.

3004. an noke = a noke = an oke. See note to l. 612.
3006. theryne, among them.

3019. Yare (cf. note to 1104) as an adjective means 'ready,' 'quick,' 'active,' etc., and, therefore, makes no sense here. The French runs as follows:

Kant il le sauer a por veirs,
Le cor en auern tristes e neirs.

Therefore I suppose we must read sare, which means also 'sorry': e. g. Layamon (ed. Madden, I, 28, 2), 638, pe king wes on mode sar (later copy, was sor in mode).

3024. he wolde to the ryuere. See note to l. 855-6.

3054. wythowten nay, 'there is no denying it'; cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 252:
at the daye,
Which ys set, without naye;
ib. p. 261:
That he shuld hym the soth seye,
What was hys name, withoute naye;
Copland’s Guy, M i:
And shall pray ann, withouten nay;
Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 401-2:
And þat name, wytonen no,
Hyt bereþ þut into þis day;
Myrc’s Instructions, 231, 323, 510, 594, 821. Cf. Mätzner’s note to
Sprachproben, I, 360, l. 2. We find in the same sense wythowten noo.
Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2377-8:
And ðif þer dorþ, wytonen no,
Hond ober fot he schal forgo;
Orfeo, ed. Laing, ll. 11, 12:
For Winchester was cleped þo
Traciens, wytonen no;
Copland’s Guy, K k i:
With him x thousand knightes and mo
Well armed, withouten no.
Cf. also Chaucer’s it is no nay.
3055. wyth the beste. See the note to l. 1496.
3069. wythowte blame = i ne seie hit for no blame, King Horn, 1265,
or i telle hyt for no blame, Myrc’s Instructions, 566. Guy, ed. Turnb.,
1540 is different:
A kniþ he was wytonen blame;
but cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 190:
They crystyned hym, withoute blame;
ib. 261:
Tell me now, without blame.
3070. heyle (also 10626) = hele, O.E. helan, Germ. hehlen, celare;
cf. feyre, l. 10512 = fare. But whayle = O.E. hál, l. 5199, owes its
diphthong to the influence of Icel. heill.
3083-4-6. I read hym for them (þem). The scribe seems to have
wanted to make the Steward propose a punishment not only for Guy,
but for the Princess too. But cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2859-61:
3if þou him finde in þat stede,
Into þi prisoun þou him lede
And in þi court þou deme him do;
and Copland’s Guy, O iii:
I reede thee, take that theofe Guyon
And cast him deepe in thy pryson
And doe him hang vpon a tree.
3097. Do way = let be, l. 4023 = let that alone, don’t! Cf. 5780,
5917, 5993. It is also used with an object: do voy þy fare, 11821 =
let be þy fare (4671, 6157, 6217, 7219, 11513, 11747) = don’t behave so.
Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9844:
‘Do way, leue sir,’ seyd Gij;
WARWICK.
ib. 10072: 'Do way,' seyd Gij, 'þerof speke nouȝt,'
where No way is a misprint; Kyng Alisaunder (ed. Weber, I, 312), 7646:

'Do way,' quath the qwene Cundace;
Wright, Spec. of Lyric Poetry, p. 80:
Moder, do vey thy wepinge;
Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 43, 487:

'Do way thy lewedness,' sayd Almachius tho.
Originally it means 'put away,' 'take away'; cf. ib. 101:

'Do wey your handes, for your curtesye.
Way stands for army, as N.H.G. weg does for M.H.G. enwec; cf. Vox and Wolf (Reliquiae ant., II, p. 273), 1. 53:

'Go weï,' quod the kok, 'wo the bigo';
and, on the other hand, Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9640:

Do oway, sir Tirri; Þerof speke nouȝt.
3107. he can forthenke. See note to l. 984.
3108. We must choose between forthenke in the preceding line and vrenke in this. As the dialect of the author was evidently more Northern than that of the scribe (cf. the notes to ll. 1104, 1126, 2534, 4555, 11181) we cannot but decide in favour of vrenke.
3121. be hys ryght hande; cf. 11707, by my honde.
3170. Note the sudden transition from indirect to direct speech.
See the note to l. 1785.
3187. some (of Scandinavian origin = Danish som, not Icel. sem) occurs besides in ll. 3190 (how some euyr), 4093, 6740, 7892 (what some euyr). It has quite the force of the vernacular so. Cf. 8452, in what londe so that they were.
3194. ys, 'am,' only here in our poem; but we find ys = are (third person pl.), l. 3488:

All men, that in hys lande ys,
1. 7416: Harde wordys ys me beforne,
and l. 10734: Ther lyfes þus þere endyd ys;
cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5095:

Hou hij fram þe est aschaped is.
Compare also Peacock, Leading Characteristics of Northumbrian Dialects, pp. 8, 9.
3204. fantasies does not make sense. Cf. the French:

E ke ieo uns seruele od feintise.
The form fantyse, that I have chosen in order to alter as little as possible, occurs also in l. 3992:

Of hys fantyse and hys thoght.
But cf. also l. 4345:

Y louyd hur wythywte fayntyse.
The word is derived from O.F. feindre, N.E. feign, Lat. fingere, = Lat.
cunctitia, as it were. It generally means dissimulation, deceit. But as se feindre de quelque chose is 'to hesitate,' the participle feint = M.E. and N.E. faint, is 'hesitating,' 'cowardly,' 'weak,' 'negligent'; hence faintise is also hesitation, cowardice, weakness, etc. Cf. l. 11816 and N.E. faintness.

3220. I think it impossible that the author should have failed to find a perfect rhyme here. I have spelled the word restored as we find it in l. 8925, but cf. dessewyd, l. 1226.

3232. The rhyme hedur: togedur occurs in ll. 3245, 7843; thedur: togedur in ll. 5297, 6339.

3238. aueitere. The same form in the rhyme Richard (Weber, Rom. 2, 86), l. 2188:

The bowmen and eke the arblasters
Armed them all at aventers.

We find -ere in this word especially when auent- is contracted to aunt-.

3252. be my nye. See note to l. 612.

3254. wythowct fabull = thou be ne holde byt for no fable, l. 10982. Cf. also 4880, 10906; Guy, ed. Turnb., 4886:

Of his stede he feld him, riptoute fable;

Copland's Guy, M iii:

Syr emperour, i say withouten fable;
ib. P ii:
And syr Guy sayd, without fable;
ib. P iii:
New made knight, without fable;
ib. U iii; Arthur, ed. Furn., 43; Myrc, 578, etc.

3256. The predicate of the sentence is incomplete. Cf. the French:

Faites dunc crier par la cite,
Ke tuz seient par matin arme,
Chescun, ke arme porter porra,
En nun de coward ki remaindra.

3260. scheldys. See the note to l. 1770.

3273. wythowct feye, perhaps, 'I do not feign it'? Is feye = feyntysse (see note to l. 3201)? Is it a corruption of O.F. feinte, or formed in analogy to bleue (vituperare and vituperatio), and the like (cf. note to l. 6570). I do not think that feye here can be the same as occurs in Copland's Guy, R iii:

And for fayne playd before Guyon,
and ib. C c i: He went and met Guy for fayne
(O.E. fegen, N.E. fain, used as a substantive). Or is feye a clerical error for leyne? See note to l. 2994.

3276. manlye, i.e. manlye, manlily. Such adverbs do not seem to have been much in use in M.E., but cf. comlyly, jolile, luftyly, sellyly, semlyly, in the Green Knight.

3288. The beste . . . tolde, thought (considered as) the best.

3322. carpe, to speak in M.E.; cf. 1091. The word is hardly the Latin carpere as has been suggested, but cf. Icel. karp, to brag; karp,
bragging. Here it is used humorously in the sense of ‘to fight’; cf. speke, l. 6048.

3329. paynyms thyckfolde, numerous pagans. Thickefold is wanting in Stratmann. Halliwell’s Dictionary has ‘Thickefald, very frequent,’ but without any quotation. It is \(=\) thicke. M.E. thicke originally means ‘thick,’ ‘crowded’; cf. ll. 5447-8:

The Lumbardes starte vp full holde
As thycke, as schepe do in folde;

hence ‘numerous,’ ‘many’; cf. Havelok, 1172:

\(\text{\textit{pere were}}\text{\textit{n}}\text{\textit{enys}}\text{\textit{ke}}\text{\textit{told}}\);

Destruction of Troy, edd. Panton and Donaldson, 11829-31:

\(\text{\textit{Han}}\text{\textit{the Grekes hom graithet to a gret sacrific...}}\)

In honour of Appolyne angardly thicke

(cf. ib. 4683, the folk were . . . angary \textit{many}). Very often thicke in this sense governs a genitive partitive; cf. l. 3295 of our poem:

Many and \textit{thyck} of grete stones;

ll. 4419-20:

Then sye y come many and \textit{thycke}
Of Lorens and of Lumbardes wycke,

but here the first \textit{of} is wanting in the MS.; cf. also Becket (ed. Black), 2458:

And of simple men ek of the land so thicke thider drowe,

where Möttner’s punctuation in \textit{Sprachproben}, I, 192, is wrong, so \textit{thicke} corresponding with \textit{mewi on} and \textit{ynowe} in the preceding lines.

3332. We get a perfect rhyme by changing the preterit into the present tense. The latter is not impossible, though the preterit see precedes; cf. especially l. 192:

\(\text{\textit{That he ne}}\text{\textit{wyate, what he do may}}\).

3339. MS. \textit{god}. As O.E. \textit{god} in the sense of ‘idol’ is used as a nenter with the plural \textit{godu}, one might be inclined to take \textit{god} = \textit{goede}; cf. \textit{scipe} = O.E. \textit{scipes}, Layamon, 6182 (\textit{\textit{pa fonde he i wyl fold} priti scipe gode}, where the later copy has \textit{scipes}), \textit{zate} = O.E. \textit{geatu}, Old Engl. Hom., ed. Morris, I, 127; cf. \textit{ holc} = O.E. \textit{holu}, \textit{lime} = O.E. \textit{limu}, \textit{weyne} = O.E. \textit{wæpan}, ib, I, p. xxxi, and II, p. xiv. But I do not think that such plurals were in use so late as our poem—as plurals that is; for a great many M.E. and N.E. singulars are really such O.E. plurals as I have pointed out in ‘\textit{Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum und deutsche literatur},’ II, pp. 11, 12. In our poem in all other passages we find \textit{goddys} as plural; cf. ll. 3417, 3423, 3429, 3436. Perhaps the scribe thought of the Christian God before getting to l. 3340, and forgot to correct his fault afterwards.

3344. \textit{be my corse}, by my body; cf. 1094, 1106.

3380. I think nobody will have a mind to defend wyth hym, Gyown. There seems to be little doubt that the scribe was going to write wyth
hym, but seeing that in this case the rhyme was lost, added Gyown,
forgetting, however, to strike out hym. Cf. l. 2866:
And so dud all, that were wyth Gye.

3385. Many and byck of; see the note to l. 3329.

3416. The passage is not clear. Cf. the French:
Sire soldain, alez uus ent.
Dunt ne ueez occire voz gent?

Does redde mean ‘red with blood’? Or is there any corruption here?

3422. Whome = home; cf. 6674, 7352, 8383, 9882, 9900, 10206; cf.
also Skeat’s Specimens of Engl. Lit., xvi, 305, bringe whome no
thing, but that, which is holsome, and Skeat’s note. Cf. besides whayle
(O.E. hâl), l. 5199, wonne (O.E. án), l. 7927 (see the note), and N.E.
whole, whore.

3430. The deuyll yow honge be the hals; cf. l. 4507, pe deuyll yow
honge; l. 8099, now pe deuell . . . pe honge; l. 8624, the devell pe
honge, pat ys in helle; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5315, now pe devul honf you
ichon.

3433-4 seem to mean ‘you promised to serve me again, as you
did before, if you should be able to do so.’ The French has nothing
that corresponds with these two lines:
‘Serui uus ai mult e fait honur;
Mal le me avez meri hui cest iur.
Le gueredon ia uus rendrai;
De un gros pel uus seruiral.’
Puis prent un pel, etc.

3443. We get again a perfect rhyme by restoring the older form
rabyte which the scribe kept in l. 10955. Cf. O.F. (a)rabit, i.e.
Arabian horse (M.H.G. râvit).

3474. I think it is not necessary to conjecture saluage or the like
for rage. It is true, there is no O.F. adjective rage, but we may have
here the same construction as in y am wo (see note to l. 1251). Cf.
I am sorrow for thee, Shaksp., Cymb., V, v, 297.

3490. hys, as if every man preceded in l. 3488 (instead of all men).
See the note to l. 100.

3496. MS. Harrowde of marchyse. The French has:
E Heraud de Arderne le marchis.
So one might be inclined to suppose that Arderne pe must be inserted
after of. But the line would be too long then. I have, therefore,
corrected the passage after l. 5252. Cf. two similar mistakes in Copland's Guy, U iii:

Guy and Heraude of the marches,

and Z iii:

Where is Heraud of the marches, where of in both cases must be omitted.

3500. bad cannot but be a mistake for byd; cf. l. 3503. Perhaps it arose from the scribe taking sende in l. 3499 as a preterit.

3512. trewage, tribute; cf. 3660, 10017; Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 270:

Y aske 3ow my trywege;

ib. 288:

And take trywage of all Rome.

Cf. Stratmann, s. v. truage. O.F. truage, no doubt, stands for treúage; cf. treûi, treût, treûd = tributum.

3513. pe emperoure in Ernys. Cf. the French:

Respont li emperere Hernis.

The same odd in occurs in l. 3833. In l. 3949 the name is corrupted to Armysc.

3531-2. And y to fynde, and I shall find; a zeugma. Instead of the auxiliary verb of the first clause (let) another is to be supplied in the second. As to cf. note to ll. 1925-6.

3577. vayle = avayle. See note to l. 576.

3596. In the French original the Emperor answers in eight lines; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3439-42:

Seyd þemperour: 'bat schaltow nouȝt:
Þider to go haue þou no pouȝt.
Ieh it dede mine men to fond,
To whom ich miȝt trust in mi lond';

and Copland's Version, Q iii:

The emperour thanked fayre Guy
And seyd: 'gentle knight, gramersey.
For certes,' he seyd, 'i will not now
To the soudan sende you
For halfe my lande, by this day,
For i sayd it but for to assay
To weete, for me who would moste do,
And whome i might best trust to,
And now i wote well Guy by thee,
That would it do for loue of mee.'

3598. be my swyre; cf. 6489, be thy swyre; Guy, in the Caius MS, p. 183:

Certes, yf thow aryght so clepyde were,
Hit were more knowen, be my swere.

3604. The i is indicated by a dot over o; cf. 8826, 10376. But it is doubtful whether the last character is un or w.

3621. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 3471-2:

pe serele of gold, þerou was wrouȝt,
For half a cite no worþ it bouȝt;

Copland's Version, Q iii:
A syrcle of gold thereon stooed,
The emijerour had none so good.

As our text is, there is nothing that a serkyll depends on. One might be inclined to think that the original reading was Wyth a serkyll (depending on helme, l. 3619, l. 3620 being parenthetical). Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 9874-5:

> An helme he hadde of michel mi^t
> Wyth a cercle (MS. ccele) of gold, j^at schon bri3t.

Cf. the corresponding lines of our poem, 10171-2.

3628. also, also; cf. 3893, 6810.
3644. The other versions have nothing like this line; but the emendation sonne for somer seems to me to be self-evident.
3678. wJiyt is a misprint for what.
3695-6: I schall neuyr ete bredde
To day, or pat pou be dedde.

Cf. 5121, 9687; Tryamoure, 103-4:

> Y trove, y schall never ete bred, 
> Tyll thou be broght to the dedd.

3727. them ageyne, 'against them'; cf. l. 6320.
3754. oon = ou; cf. note to l. 389.
3739. wythouten drede, 'without doubt,' 'certainly'; cf. l. 11102, wythowte dredys; l. 10532, dreedes; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 121:

> With faire wordes, without drede;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 33, 155; IV, 54, 81, out(e) of drede; IV, 53, 52; V, 163, 280; 187, 1072, without drede; III, 39, 329, withouten eny drede; V, 178, 763; 193, 1271, dred(e)les.
3766. wyth þem, 'by them'; cf. 8889, wyth hym ... slane, and Mätzner's Gramm., II, 444.
3786. Therof thoght he no symne; cf. Morris and Skeat, Specimens, II, vi11a, 222:

> His felau tholht therof ferly.

> Thoght he in such cases stands for thoght hym; cf. the note to l. 984.

3794. grette, but MS. wepte. See the note to l. 2534.
3803. I think pe is the article (not = þey: see note to l. 1849), and rynge used as an intransitive verb, cf. l. 6547, and Copland's Guy, R ii:

> And all the belles of the cittie
> Rong with great solemnitie.

3833. The French has:

> Fait il emperere Heruis;

Cf. note to l. 3513.
3842. store = restore; cf. Destruction of Troy, 727, storet thee to strenght, and note to l. 576.
3869. store, stir; cf. 6100, pou store no mare. See Stratmann, s. v. storien, and Halliwell, s. v. stoor. But I very much doubt whether
this really is a verb different from O.E. *styrian*, M.E. *sturien*, *stirien*, N.E. *stir*. O.E. *y* appears in M.E. as *o* not only after *w* (e.g. *worce*, *worde*, *wordys*; see note to l. 1155), but also in *donyed* = O.E. *dunede*, l. 11780; cf. even *moche* = O.E. *nicel*

3872. *he hym wende*, he went, *hym* being the ethical dative; cf. 4743, 6334, 9565, 11382, 11692; O.E. and O.L.G. *windan*, to go, to move. See also note to 385.

3880. *aspyed*, espied; cf. ll. 11053, 11077. Stratmann, s. v. *spien*, is inclined to compare *aspien* with O.H.G. *arspehon*. But a cannot possibly be anything but a corruption of *e*; cf. *aspye*, spy, as a substantive (Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 416); *assaye*, to essay; *ascape*, to escape; *aspeyall*, especial (see Halliwell), etc.

3894. *hys stede halse*. See note to l. 503.

3925-7 seem very strange. But this is owing only to the author’s deviating from the original in l. 3849. Guy’s adventure of rescuing the lion happened while he was accompanying the Emperor on a progress through his realm. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 3715-16:

*The emperor aros amorwe þo,*
*To sen þe centre þai ben ygo;*

and Copland’s version, K ii:

*The emperor sayd, that he would wende*
*With Guy to see his landes so hende.*

3940. *they* after a singular *none*; cf. note to 100.

3959. *byschoppe* is strange after *byschoppes* in l. 3947. I think we must read *archebyschoppe*. Cf. the French:

*Li arcueskes sunt anant nenu*
*Al espouser tut reestu.*

The plural may be a mistake of the scribe. Cf. Guy, ed Turnbull, 3793:

*þe ercebishop come forth.*

*Revyscht in our text is = O.F. revestu*, clothed. See Halliwell, s. v. *revescyd.*

3961. *rynge* (after *rynghys* in the preceding line = *ancels* in the French) cannot be defended by a reference to l. 2772.

3974. *wyte*, blame; cf. 5626, 8102, 8188; O.E. *witan*, Germ. (ver) *weisen* with *s* instead of *ss* (M.H.G. *verweizen*).

3988. By using *hedde* for *hadde* we get a perfect rhyme here as well as in l. 4288.

3992. *fantyse*, deceit; see note to l. 3204.

3996. *vythowte doute* = ‘there’s no doubt about it’; cf. 7878, 9252, 9551.

4006. *vythowte defauete* = ‘there is no default (error) in what I say,’ and the like; cf. 5662, 7650, 8536.

4019-21. There is a confusion of two constructions: (1) you will have twenty such earldoms as Roholde’s; (2) you will be much richer than Rohole.
4025. seyst, ‘seest,’ of course; cf. l. 6109.
4037. The form were (MS. were) occurs, e.g., in ll. 3549, 4223, 4593, 5675, 8113.
4038. couyrle, recovered. See note to l. 576.
4059. seler would be a cellar, a place very ill-chosen for the Steward’s purpose. The French has:

Li senescal en une chambre entra.


On a soleer as Bevis looked out
At a window all about.

4062. As that, ‘where.’ As often has the force of there as; cf. l. 10662:

Before þat lady, as sche standys,
cf. also Koch’s Gramm., II, p. 422-3, § 499. But as in any relative sense may be followed by that. So we find in l. 6652 and fande, as þat he wolde wede, ‘as if’; ll. 8003-4, schelde me fro schame thys day, as þat pow of all beste may, ‘as.’

4092. I think we need not suspect that two lines are lost here telling what Guy did not wish, as what is meant, may easily be supplied from the context. Cf. note to l. 2091.

4117. As he and hys precede in ll. 4113-5-6, and he follows in l. 4120, I think þer is owing only to a mistake of the scribe. The instances mentioned in the note to l. 100 are different.

4128. The maiden whom Guy meets saw the Steward piercing the lion with a spear (ll. 4069—4074), and it is she that tells Guy who the culprit was (ll. 4135-6). In her mouth, therefore, the question as to who had slain the lion is absurd. The French has:

‘Sire,’ fait ele, ‘bealz duz amis,
Est vostre leon ou mort ou uifs?’

The last line is rendered in the Auchinleck MS., l. 3960:

Is þi lyoun ded ou liues þete?

in Copland’s Version, S ii:

Where is now your fayre lyon?

Are we to impute the absurdity to the author, or to a scribe? I think to a scribe, though I am unable to correct the passage with any certainty.

4147. be drave is certainly not to be compared with Shaksper’s Why are you drawn, Temp., II, i, 308, but it is synonymous with be hanged. See note to l. 227.

4148. Though Guy, forgetful of Felice, declares in l. 4098 that he loves nothing more than his lion, yet he cannot possibly call that beast his lemman. Cf. the French:

‘Fel,’ fait Guy, ‘tu me trahis:
Pour quei me as mon leon occis?’
4175. nor a strange man seems to depend on warande.
4192. yow as nominative appears also in ll. 6352, 7053, 7217, 7218, 9847.
4193. y thynke, noght = N.E. I think not = F. je crois que non, N.H.G. ich denke, nein. The negative does not belong to thynke, but to a verb to be supplied from the context. Hence my punctuation.
4198. make devoye, 'make disorder,' 'be indignant.' See note to l. 1100. The whole line is parenthetical, the sentences headed by that depending on sayne in l. 4197.
4205. Empere owes its origin, no doubt, only to the scribe's forgetting to draw the stroke through the tail of p in order to make it per. The same fault appears in l. 9660 and elsewhere, e. g. Ludus Coventriae, ed. Halliwell, p. 282:
Bothe kyng and cayser and grett empere.
But the feminine has really lost one r; cf. N.E. empress, M.E. emperice (e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 281, 185; Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, a 441; William of Pal., ed. Skeat, 5343, 5400), O.F. emperëis and empereris, Lat. imperatricem.
4214. badde, offered. See note to l. 2703.
4216. slove, an inorganic participle, the vowel being borrowed from the preterit.
4225. ryueys, maydenys. This and similar passages show that in Havelok, l. 35, we must read:
Wyues, maydnes, prestes and clerkes.
The MS. has wydues. Cf. ib. 2, wiues, maydnes, and alle men; Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 289, 439, of mayden or of wyf; ib. 291, 484, of goode wynnen, maydnes and wyres; ib. 1. 499, wher this be wyf or mayde.
4244. reuyn = aruyen, l. 8478; cf. revyn, ll. 8427, 8459; gryuen, 8476. The participle past is formed after the strong conjugation, but we find a weak preterit in l. 9914, ryued. There occur besides in our poem the infinitive ryue, l. 8608, and the participle present, ryuande, l. 8705. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 192:
They went to have ryuen ther at her wyll;
Destruction of Troy, ed. Panton and Donaldson, l. 1947:
Arove pere full raly, rest in a haunyn;
ib. l. 3247: There were all the rote and restid a whiley.
There can be no doubt but ryue, aryue, is O.F. ariver, Mediaeval Lat. adripare, but, although of Romance origin, it sometimes follows the strong conjugation. Therefore, the strong preterit of striue, strof (N.E. strove), does not prove that strike does not come from the French (Oliphant, Standard English, p. 225). Cf. also fon, fun, from fine, O.F. finair, Lat. finir, in Allit. Poems, ed. Morris, a 1030:
Twelue forlonge space, er euer hit fon;
ib. 6, 269: Fon neuer in forty dayez;
Cott. MS. Vesp., A iii, fol. 20a (quoted by Morris in Gloss. to Allit. P., s. v. *fou*):

Bot ai þe quils he ne *fou*
To behald þe leve maidan.

All these verbs follow the same class of the strong conjugation, and it may be worth while to add that the only two foreign verbs that are strong in German, *pfeifen*, M.H.G. *pifene* and *preisen*, M.H.G. (still weak) *prisen*, belong to the exactly corresponding class.

4264. The French has only:

Oir les oisels chanter.

But the emendation *flowers* for *fowles* is self-evident. Cf. King Orfeo, ed. Laing, ll. 25—30:

phis ich quen, dame Heurodis,
Iok to maidens of priis
And went in an vndrentide
To play bi an orchard side,
To se þe *flowers* sprede and *spring*
And to here þe *foules* sing;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 277, ll. 37-8:

that i here the *foules* synge
And that the *flowers* gynnen for to *sprynge*.

4288. See note to l. 3988. We could not by any means read *blade*; cf. note to l. 313.

4290. See note to ll. 58-9.

4314. *chesowene* = enchesowne (see note to l. 576), O.F. *acheson*, Lat. *occasionem*. Here it means *state*, *condition*.

4318. *For you will learn nothing from me to-day.*

4330. *trocpepleght*; cf. 4822, 8831; Shakspere, Wint., V, iii, 151, *who . . . is troth-plight to your daughter*; Henry V, II, i, 21, *you were troth-plight to her*. Shakspere employs it = *betrothed*, *affianced*, but originally it means *bound by one’s word* in a general sense.

4336. *deraye*. See note to l. 1110.

4341. MS. *dewke lowan*. Cf. the French:

Od le duc de *Loheregne* esteie.

See the note to l. 633.

MANNER (but cf. Good-natured Man, II, another-guess lover). M.H.G. instances of manager hande leie, manager hande wise, and the like, are collected by M. Haupt in his note to Engelhard, by K. of Würzburg, and by K. Müllenhoff to Denkmäler, XLVIII, 1, 4.

4350. ye me dyght, 'I went,' literally 'I prepared myself.' The reflexive pronoun may be omitted; cf. ll. 5571, to Payne now let us dyght; l. 11209, Harrowde vpon hys fete hym dyght; l. 11441, to the paleys he hym dyght; l. 11546, syr Raynbourn can to hym dyght. Cf. also note to l. 10697.

4369. MS. There he slewe. The emendation is indispensable; cf. also Copland's Guy, S iii:

Sarasyns i slue there many one.

4376. Ozelde. I did not care to correct the spelling of the name. But it ought to be Ozell[e]. Cf. l. 5683.

4403. kep'te, received, encountered.

4410. Full of sorowe was my rede. Redde, red, O.E. rød, is originally 'counsel,' 'advice,' but sometimes it means 'lot,' 'condition,' 'state'; cf. l. 5750, sory ys my rede; l. 8614 and 8986, sorrowfull ys my rede; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 265:

But yet full sorrowfull was her rede;

 Destruction of Troy, 2925-6:

Yong men and yepe, yeurns in hert
Rauishe how radly and paire rede turnys.
Cf. Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I, 118, l. 131. In ll. 4709 and 5651 of our poem it means 'intention,' 'purpose.'

4420. As Lumbardes is preceded by of, Lorens cannot well be without it. Cf. the French:

Puis vi venir de totes partz
Les Loberengs e les Lumbards.

As to many and thycke see note to l. 3329.

4448. And. MS. A. In some MSS. this is a very common form, but it would be the only instance in our work. I, therefore, think it is owing only to a mistake. The reverse of this mistake occurs in l. 6352.

4449. The mention of Tyrry's tying his horse to a tree is very odd here. Cf. the French:

En ceste place me dormeie,
Ma amie devant moi seeit,
Mun chiual a un raim ile esteit.

The author might easily have avoided the υστερον πρότερον by translating (= ll. 4449-50):

My lemmen sate before me,
My hors was tyed tyll a tre.

4459. Of the dethe gene y noght, 'I make no account of death'; cf. l. 7691, of my lyfe gene y noght; l. 9144, of no tresure yf y noght; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 109, perof no yf he vijt nogt; cf. Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I, 198, l. 150. Cf. also Guy, ed. Turnb., 9325:
Perof jine y nouzt a chirston,
i.e. 'cherry-stone'; and Piers the Pl., ed. Skeat, B. IV, 36:
Pei ne gyueth nouzt of god one gowe wynge.
Cf. note to l. 8143. Compare also the German 'darauf' (or 'dafür')
'gebe ich nichts.'
4468. berc is 'bear,' not 'bury,' as is shown by to; but cf. l. 4550.
4480. scarsyns is a misprint for sarsyns.
4481. bydde, offered, but l. 4485 badde in the same sense; cf. N.E.
baule and bid. See note to l. 2703.
4486. He refers to stede, of course; was, as long as I owned it.
Tryste may be either = trysty, trusty (l. 11104; cf. note to l. 132), or,
with a silent e, = tryst; cf. Reinbroun, ed. Turnb., 985:
His hors was wel swijete trist,
and Stratmann, s. v. trüst.—In all fowndinge, 'in all going,' 'hastening'
(see note to l. 1372).
4501. Before that dore short for before pe dore of þat logge.
4511. cownturd = encownturd. See note to l. 576.
4529. deraye, 'grief.' See note to l. 1110.
4555. owre = o'er. I thought myself entitled to spell the word
thus in order to get a perfect rhyme, as this seems to be one of the
many cases of the scribe removing a northern form. Cf. note to l.
3108.
4570. þer = er, 'sooner.' See note to l. 60.
4602. os = as, i.e. 'as if.' The same spelling appears in ll. 8220,
8590, 9098, 9622, 10299. Cf. also Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell (written
by the same scribe), ll. 1008, 1064, 1159, 1323, 1367.
4625. they, Guy's men. I am inclined to think two lines omitted
between ll. 4624 and 5, in which the concern of Guy's men on account
of his not returning was mentioned. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 4435-8:
Yeomen he is to þe cite,
His men al sor þi þinde þe;
And, when þij her lord seye come,
Blipe þai were alle and some.
4626. all in fer, i.e. 'all together,' is rather superfluous, whereas
hole and fere makes good sense, and is, moreover, a favourite phrase of
our author's. Cf. ll. 21, 1265, 4650, 11965, but especially 6715-16:
All they made gode chere,
When þey sawe Gye hole and fere.
I have restored the same phrase in l. 6219 (MS. clere for fere), and l.
11590 (MS. sere for fere).
4631. I am unable to make out what this line means. Cf. the
French:
Atant ooi Gui demener,
Plurer, plaindre e gnumentir.
Nor do I know how to correct this passage neither.
4640. Sende aftar hur yu must be a short expression for 'send for her and let her come in,' unless there be a mistake, the scribe originally going to write yu hye; cf. l. 4629.

4647. plyght, drew, took. This verb does not occur in the present tense; for it cannot be the preterit of *plücke* as often is asserted. It must rather be referred to an infinitive *plyche* = O.E. *pliccan* = Germ. *pflücken*. plyghte means also 'pulled,' 'tore'; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 170, 15, and sodeynly *he plyght his hors aboute*; ib. 230, 790, *al sodeinly thre leves have i plyght out of this booke*; ib. IV, 198, 1120, *he seyd hir thus and out the letre plyghte*; Alis. (Weber, 1, 241), 5831, and *plighten hym in with yrnen hoke*. I do not find this verb in Stratmann, but two passages in which it occurs are cited by Stratmann, s.v. *plihten = plaiten.


4673. Perhaps we must read lechys; cf. ll. 4629 and 4681, and Copland's Guy, T iii:

> The lechys have undertak
> Whole and sound him to make.

4703. specyalle, friendship; cf. 5304. Special or -el, particular friend:

e. g. Richard (Weber, 2, 92), 2351-2:

> Let him yele my tresor every dele,
> If he will be my specyalle;

Alis. (Weber, 1, 136), 3287-8:

> And, without more tale,
> Makith heem al be his specyalle;

read tales: *speciatales?* St Dunstan, ed. Furn., 194:

> He let offsende his freond, jat specials to him were.

Cf. also *that y lote so specyallyge* and the like, 5978, 6212, 7046, 7348.

4708. One of those quaint figurative superlatives of M.E. poetry.

Cf. 6524, *a better man dranke never wyne*; 7576, *a fowler dranke neyer wyne*; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6422, *better man drank never win.

4709—4712. Cf. the French:

> Guarri me auez, sire, de mort:
> Mult par auzelor, certes, grant tort,
> Si ne ans amasse, com seingnur.

*Had* in l. 4709 has the force of 'would have had.' 'You would have
had a bad purpose (cf. note to l. 4410) to save me,' etc.—Instead of
serue in l. 4712 we must read the same tense as in louyd, l. 4711, since
these two words stand for the one French amasse.

4716. other = others. It may be a dialectical peculiarity, not a
mistake. But I do not remember any other instance.

4738. What he hyght was parenthetical, was in l. 4737 belonging also
to of what lande. Cf. note to l. 2234.

4750. And hym louyd, viz. Duke Loyere. See the note to l. 10.
1. 4751 shows that l. 4750 has not the same subject as l. 4749.

4758. had hur away, carried her away. Cf. Chaucer’s C. T. Prol.,
548, where the correct reading seems to be:

At wrastlynge he wolde hauve awey the ram.
Some MSS. hauve alwey, the Harleian 7334, here awey, which is a gloss
of hauve awey.

4765. hym thoght; cf. note to l. 385.

4775. whytetore, white-haired; cf. 8565, 8671, and the passage
quoted in note to l. 7409. The word is wanting in Stratmann as well
as in Halliwell.

4776. lassylth, lessens, gets less, decreases; cf. lessyd, l. 8302.

4791. Strike out the foot-note; for grete, as Prof. J. E. B. Mayor,
of St John’s, Cambridge, was good enough to remind me, is a substan-
tive here = ‘weeping,’ ‘sorrow.’ See Halliwell and Stratmann.
Stratmann refers to Goth. grēts and Icel. grátr, but grete is Icel. græti,
and only grot Icel. grátr.

4802. emperere (from the O.F. nominative emperere, Prov. emperaire,
Lat. imperátor, whereas emperouere is derived from the O.F. accusative
emperőr, Prov. emperador, Lat. imperatórem) occurs in the rhyme, ll.
8848, 9578, and must be restored for empere in ll. 4205 and 9960. Cf.
also the note to l. 8908.

4809. Gorgomoyse here and l. 5412, but Gormoyse, ll. 4340, 4744,
4771, 4780, 4958, 5352, etc.

4845. the flowre. See note to l. 77.

4860. afayle. Mätzner’s Wörterbuch has no other instance of this
word.

4866. w’ and p’ could be easily mistaken for each other. Cf. also
l. 5164.

4868. hys hors fete. See note to l. 503.

4921-4. We have here a construction similar to such Latin ones as:
Ne quis a nobis hoc ita dixit forte miretur: ne nos quidem huic unì studio
penitus unquam dediti fuimus. As in this and similar instances scito
must be supplied, so before, l. 4923, ‘had sene,’ or the like, is omitted.
Quite the same case occurs in ll. 10119-21.

4928. bare, struck. See note to l. 1944.

4963. churche zarde. See note to l. 1799.
4979. *be before grace* I think must be omitted. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 49, 734:

But out of prison am ystert *by grace*;

Morris and Skeat, Specimens, II, x, 547-8:

Ay til he *thurgh grace* may com
Til baptem and til cristendom.

Cf. also note to l. 1216.

5015. *nye wende*, near Duke Loyere's army, it seems.

5035. MS. *schylde*. In the French:

Del healme un des quarters trenchaz:
Sur le espaule le coup chai,

the weapon is not mentioned, but there can be no doubt that the sword is meant.

5054. *helmes* cannot be right, as only Harrawde's helmet is meant.

5056. *ranne on blode*, ran with blood, was bloody; cf. Harrowing of Hell, ed. Mall, 55:

He beten me, *pat i ran on blode*;

St Margaret, ed. Cockayne, p. 28, l. 137:

Olibrius sat and bihuld, hou hure lymes yrne ablode;

Havelok, 431-2:

And of pe leue holi rode,

*pat [read *par*?] god himselue ran on blode.*

Sir Tristrem, p. 176 (quoted by Madden in gl., s. v. *runne*):

His heued 7-an on Mod.

5066. *zorthe*, earth. See note to l. 60.


Suche gladande glory con to me glace.

It is O.F. *glacier* (from Lat. *glacies*), originally 'to be like ice,' then 'to slide,' 'to glide.'

5077. *Me had leuer = y had leuer*, 4566, 4898, 5954, 7037, 8807 (cf. 7067).

5106. *some fładde* is parenthetical as and *some scaped* in l. 2234.

5115-16. *founde* is O.F. *fundian*, to go (see note to l. 1372), as shown by *forthe*, not *fandian*, to try. l. 5116 depends on *to loke* (or the like; cf. ll. 5128, 6009), that is to be supplied from the context. Cf. ll. 5120, 11148, 11420, and such Greek constructions as *ήλωσον, εί τινά μνε κληρόνα παρρός ινίσσοις,*

5199. *whayle* (O.F. *hál*), healed. As to *wh* for *h*, see note to l. 3422, as to *ay* for *ā*, *ō*, see note to l. 3070.

5205. *pe better = eo melius*, *pe* being O.E. *𝑝Ѧ*, M.H.G. *diu*; cf. l. 6952.

5214. *we gete the worre*; cf. l. 4992, *the worse had the Lumbardes.*

Cf. Gower, Prol. 83-4:

It is to wonder of thilke werre,
Of which none wote, who *hath the werre,*
and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 350, l. 84. Cf. also *pe warse went on hys syde*, l. 11073.

5229-30. *mountenans* is a corruption of *mountance* (cf. ll. 2412, 2810, 6310, 6514). But cf. *mountance* in the passage quoted from the Caius MS, in the note to ll. 9651-2.—*Rone* cannot well be *ron, ron song*. I know very well that passage in Snorri's Edda where King *Froði* does not allow his maids Fenja and Menja to rest or to sleep longer than the cuckoo was silent or one could recite a song: *þá gaf hann þeim eigi lengri heild eða svefu, en gaukrinn þagþi eða hlíð mátti guðþa* (Norron *Fornkvæði*, ed. Bugge, 325). But on consulting the French original we find:

E, com il serrunt a une journee
Esloigne de lur contree,
Tuz les traitres dune prendrez;

which is rendered in the Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnb.), 5139-40:

And, when þai ben farn her jurne
And far fram her cuntre, etc.

and in Copland's *Guy*, X iii:

And, when they be a dayes jorney
Out of your (*sic!*) cittie, etc.

I have, therefore, little doubt that *rone* stands for *iorne* (i. e. *jorne*), which the scribe replaced by *rone*, as if it were the participle past (*i-orne*) of *yrne*, runn, and that *gone* in l. 5229 originally preceded *fro* *pe cyte*. So I propose to read:

When they be gone fro *pe cyte*
But *pe* mountans of a jorne,

*jorne* in the original sense of 'a day's journey'; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 84, 1880:

Out of his toun a jornnee largely
(cf. Tyrwhitt's note to C. T., 2740); *Genes. and Exodus*, 3995-6:

For *s* nam *s* is folc sifn *faran*
Fele *jurnes* into Pharan;

ib. 1291-2:

*Fro* Bersabe *jurnes* two
Was *sat* land, *sat* he bed him to.

5241. I have thought it indispensable to read *Tyrrye* for *syr Gye* in MS. Tyrry, not Guy, is the obstacle to Otoun's views to Ozelle. Cf. l. 5248, and the French:

Le conte Terri, le facez juger,
Li e sun pierre a mort liurer.

5263-4. I cannot conceive how the singular pronouns could be accounted for.

5273. Perhaps *messengere* is a mistake for *message*.

5304. specyalttee, friendship. See note to l. 4703.

5308. *aitone*. Cf. *made at oon*, 5459, 6389; *be at oon*, 6292, 6360; *be at one*, 6358. Hence N.E. to *atone, atonement*. See *Bible Word-Book*, edd. J. Eastwood and W. A. Wright, s. v. at one. Cf. also *knytt in oon*, l. 10738, and the common *anon* (O.E. on án). *To be at two* is 'to quar-

*WARWICK.*
rel'; cf. Parish, Sussex Dialect, s. v. two. Even to be at sixes and sevens may be compared in some way.

5325. In order to get a rhyme I have restored the name as it is spelled in ll. 5449; cf. 5443, 6252, 6710, 7346. I have done the same in l. 6387; cf. also ll. 4341 and 5343.

5327. tolde (fixed, determined on) belongs to the tyme. The predicate often separates an adjective from its substantive. Cf. l. 1239, thewys come systene; 2583, we felows ben togedur plyght; 3641, an egull of golde peril on was bryght.

5334. MS. of evidently for on. Just the reverse occurs in l. 6453.

5343. Cf. the French:

De Lohergyn le dux Loher.

A similar corruption of Lorayne appears in l. 6387. Cf. note to l. 5325.

5361. To Costantyne, i. e. Constantinople. See note to l. 2726. There was, however, no such thing related before, nor is it consistent with what was told. But this error is very likely to be owing to the author himself. The French has:

Kant sa fille forconsella
E hors de sa chambre le amena;
Puis ad mene estrange gent,
Ke le duc het mortelemen.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnb., 4237-8:

Now he bringe yncope folk miche
Opon his loud so dedliche,

and Copland's version, Y i:

Ouer that he hath brought on our lord
Straunge men to make discorde,
That bene his deadly enimies.

It seems clear that our author did not understand the third line of the French text, or had a corrupt reading before him. He translated as if there were à before estrange gent, at the same time using Costantyne instead of straunge folke. But if we insert ys in l. 5362 we get as good a rendering of the last French line as it was possible after the mistake in the preceding one.

5367. I now think besecheyd may be right, after all. Though I do not remember any other M.E. instance of the preterit of beseche being regularly formed (cf. besoot in the rhyme 4030), yet it really may have been used. And the preterit is not objectionable in itself as referring to the time before Loyere sent the Bishop to Gormoyse. The other M.E. versions have the perfect tense here: Auchin., 1. 3239, ichau pe douke bisoult; Copland, Y i, i and other frinles no have preyed.

5412. Gorgomoyse. See note to l. 4809.

5416. whyght for wyght; cf. where = were, l. 11540; where = were, war, l. 11871; whende, Guy, ed. Turnb., 4049; wha = we, ib. 9832. Cf. N.E. wlu (note to l. 449), wlu, whelk, wlu, perhaps also N.E. whoop (Anzeiger für deutsches Alterthum und deutsche Litteratur, II, p. 19).
 reviewers  
  "wecle way." It is very common in medieval English poetry to denote lamenting as singing. Cf. Beowulf, 783-7:
  
  Nóðdeneum stód
  atelíc ęgęs ānuma gehwylecum,
  þāra þe of wealle wip gehyrdom,
  gryrelecōs galan godes andsacan,
  sigelēasne song;

1. 5969 of our poem all in mornynge was hyr songe; 7176, y moy in sorowe
  synge; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 178, ever his song is: 'wo and wi'; 7149 and
  7301, 'allas,allas,' it was his song; 7165, 8605, and 10410, 'allas'; it
  was his song; 7486, y sing: 'allas'; Isumbras (Caius MS., p. 105), hys
  song was: 'weylaway'; Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 105, 212, Absolon may
  wayle and synge: 'allas'; ib. 212, 216, many a night they songen:
  'weylaway'; ib. 246, 13, they schalde synge, if that they were hent; ib.
  l. 18, he made the people pitously to synge: ib. III, 110, 118, i may synge
  'allas and waylaway,' etc., etc. Cf. R. Heinzel, Stil der altgerm. poesie,
  p. 23.

5430. wyght. See note to l. 419.

5437-8. Delete the comma at the end of l. 5438, and put one after
  l. 5437.

5462. that = 'to whom' as a dative. Cf. Havelok, 727:
  
  His, þat Hauelok was þe name;
  ib. 2028-29:
  And on, þe myaster of hem alle,
  þat was þe name Gifin Galle.

5478. as y the behlyght, as I promise (assure) you. Cf. note to l.
  169 and Mätzner's note to Sprachproben, I, 377, l. 197. M.E. authors
  generally address a plurality of readers (or rather, hearers; cf. ll. 10725
  and 10749): see Mätzner's Gramm. II, 10, and in our poem, ll. 19, y
  weyll yow telle; 4519, as y yow say; 6084, as y yow telle; 10787, y schalle
  yow telle. But sometimes, as here, thou is used; cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris,
  IV, 108, l. 6:
  
  The double sorowe of Troylus to tellen...
  My purpos is, er that i parte fro the;
  Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 102, 28, i telle the; 112, 352, i telle it the;
  127, 318, i the plyphght; Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 28, y the plyphte (but
  the is wanting in the Auchinleck MS., l. 715).

5512. schake, move quickly. Cf. Morte Arthure, ed. Brock, 1212-13:
  
  He somond than the schippemene sharplye therafyre
  To schake forthe with the schyre mene to schifte the gudez;
  ib. 1992, to schake in a sheltrone; Destruction of Troy, 2921, to schake
  over lande; ib. 3178, shake in our way; see also Mätzner's note to
  Sprachproben, I, 299, 84. This is the usual meaning of O.E. secgan
  moveri cum impetu, ruere, volare, effugere; see Grein's Sprachschatz,
  where only one instance with the meaning movere is quoted. In O.L.G.
  the verb occurs only once: Heliand, ed. Schmeller, 83, 4 (= Ieyne,
  2708), hé ellior skók, he went to another place. But Icel. skaka is a
  transitive verb.
5521. *in manere, 'in some sort';* cf. Shaksp., II Rich. III, i, 11-12, You have *in manere* with your sinful hours Made a divorce betwixt his queen and him. Compare also in *a manere*, e. g. Shaksp., John, V, vii, 89, it is *in a manere* done already, and 1 Sam. xxi 5 (see Bible Word-Book, p. 309). *-carue* (O.E. *cearfe;* strong preterit of O.E. *ceorfan*, M.E. *kerue, carue*) is quite clear in the MS., but in Halliwell's Dictionary, p. 852, it is by a mistake quoted as *tarne.*

5527. The following lines show that *spere* cannot be the weapon intended by the author. Cf. the French:

Mes un autre le ad encontre,
Qui un brand thun mult trenchant.

—*wele grouve* is 'well ground.' It is the only omission of the kind in our poem. But *d* is often omitted after *l* and *n*, e. g. in Havelok; see Skeat's proface, p. xxxvii.

5541. *travell* MS. instead of *trayycle*; cf. note to l. 857.
5544. *be my nolle*. Cf. note to l. 974. *Noll* is now obsolete. In Shakspere's time it seems to have been used only contemptuously, much as *noddle* at present. Cf. Midsummer Night's Dream, III, ii, 17, *an ass's note* *l. fixed on his head.* But originally it was a good word for 'vertex,' 'occupita.' So we read in Ælfrie's Glossary: *'Caput heáfdod, Capita má (heáfdó some MSS. add).* *Vertex hnoll.* *Cerebrum brægen,* etc. In M.E. it also means head; cf. Arthur, ed. Furnivall, l. 211:

*Þu art wood on þe nolle.*

In Webster—Mahn, s. v. *noll*, though O.E. *hnoll* is mentioned, yet it is suggested that *noll* probably is contracted from *noddle*. But if these two words be identical, it would be much safer to suppose that *noddle* was corrupted from *noll* by popular etymology connecting it with *to nod*; cf. *causewy = cawsaye*, l. 9990, *sparrow-grass, craw-fish, beef-eaters, etc.* Koch., III, 1, 161-2 (cf. also note to l. 8411). In O.H.G. *knoll* is culmen, cacumen, vertex, sinciput, in M.H.G. *nol* cacumen.

5571. *Payue = Payuy, Payuye*; cf. l. 5630 and note to l. 132. *—dght.* See note to l. 4350.
5579. *The todur*; see note to l. 658.
5591. Having first addressed Otoun, Loyere turns to Harrawde, l. 5589, but returns to Otoun, l. 5591. Cf. note to l. 1753.
5625. *hyt, the marriage*; cf. note to l. 1051.
5651. *redde, intention, purpose*; cf. note to l. 4410.
5662. *wythewote defawte*; cf. note to l. 4006.
5664. *wythewe othe.* See note to l. 10862.
5672. *þem after emperowre = the Emperor and his men*; cf. notes to ll. 6094, 6267, 8697, 10915.
5692. *ne myght, viz. go,* See note to ll. 855-6.
5717. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 5621-6:
When þe lord herd þat,
þat it was Gij, þat to him spac,
'Sir,' he seyd, 'welcome þe be:
In þour owen herberwe þe.
Ful welcome artow to me,
And ful wel y knowe þe';

and Copland's Guy contains six similar lines. But our author may have intentionally shortened the narrative. The abrupt transition from Guy's words to those of Amys is not without a parallel. Cf. 5957, 6053, 6381, 6493, 7021, 10559.

5722. MS. to my lande. But cf. the French:

Puis me eneastes en plusurs terres,

and Copland's Guy, Z iii:

And me led in dyuers lande.

5723. bordys, MS. bordes; cf. note to l. 1285.

5742. tane, appointed. Cf. Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1017-18:
The emperowre, wythowte fayle,
Take the day of batayle;

ib. 1024: When pese was cryed and day tane,

ib. 1156, y have taken a day; 1366, sche hath taken a day; 1585, but takyn they have another day. Cf. note to l. 10166.

5750. redde. See note to l. 4410.

5780. Do wey. See note to l. 3097.

5782. bad, prayed.

5785. Now ys Guy to Pauye towne, viz. gone or come. See note to ll. 855-6.

5796. of poste depends on ryche.

5805. dromaunde, man-of-war, is owing either to a corrupt reading in the French MS, from which our author translated, or, what I think more probable, to a mistake of his, arising perhaps from his defective knowledge of natural history. The French (according to the MS. of Corpus Christi College, Cambridge) has:

Sus ciel ni ad un plus ignel,
Ne est lepard, ne est cheuerel,
Ne dromedarie la tant alast,
Ke cest destrier tost nel passast.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5719-22:

In alle þe world is so swift a best,
Libard no ro, in no forest;
No dromedarie no is þer non
So swipe goand, so is he on.

5813. He wyll hym see, ‘but he will slay him.’ See note to ll. 1301-3.

5841. in londe, used here as often with no great force. Cf. l. 8885 and Kindheit Jesu (Altengl. Legenden, ed. Horstmann), 482-3: þou dest folie,
Pat þou neit lere þine sone in londe;
NOTES, LINES 5854—5860.

ib. 1828: Hov Iesus linede child in londe;
Beowulf, 2309-10: was se fruma egeslic leðum on londe;
ib. 2836: háru, þet on lande lyt manna þåh;

etc. Similarly in O.L.G. Heliand, 25, 24 (= Heyne, 855-56):

\[ \text{wissun that thōh managa līdi after them landa,} \]

Chancer in his parodical Sir Topaz uses \textit{in toune} in the same way; ed. Morris, III, 133, 80-2:

\[ \text{For in this world no womman is Worthy to be my make In toune,} \]

Cf. also in \textit{pe toune} in l. 8489 of our poem.

5854. Cf. the French:

\[ \text{Li dux demande: 'quei as nun?' 'Sire,' fait il, 'homo me apelle Jun,'} \]

But cf. also ll. 7789-90 of our poem, and the corresponding French lines:

\[ \text{'Amis,' fait il, 'com as nun?' 'Sire,' fait il, 'iem me apelle Jun.'} \]

But in the latter passage the pseudonym John was, without doubt, suppressed by a scribe, not by the author (see the note). Hence we may suppose that the same took place in l. 5854, in which case my conjecture in the foot-note would not restore the author's words, but an alteration of them by a scribe. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 5773-4:

\[ \text{pe douk oxęp, what his name be,} \]
\[ \text{'Yon men elepet me in mi cuntre.'} \]

5859-60. The narrative is interrupted by the narrator asking for something to drink also in ll. 6687-8 and 7117-18. Perhaps the same is meant when in l. 7550 it says \textit{Let vs be mery, y you pray}. Such requests of the narrator to his audience, though in all the passages of our poem not occurring in the French original, were not unusual in M.E. romances. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 61:

\[ \text{Betwene theim two they teld the tale. Now giue vs drinke wyne or ale;} \]

but these two lines are wanting in the Auchinleck MS. (l. 1832); Havelok, 13-16:

\[ \text{At the beginning of vre tale} \]
\[ \text{Fil me a cup of ful god ale,} \]
\[ \text{And wile drinken, her y spelle,} \]
\[ \text{Pat Crist vs shilde ale fro helle;} \]

Sir Bevis in Ellis, Spec. of Early E. Metr. R., ed. Halliwell, p. 246:

\[ \text{For the time, that god made, Fill the cup and make us glad;} \]

Eglamour (in Thorton Romances, ed. Halliwell), 343-5:

\[ \text{Make we mery, so hane we blys,} \]
\[ \text{Thys ys the furste fytt of thys,} \]
\[ \text{That we have undurthane,} \]
and similarly the second and third fyttes are concluded (ll. 634-6 and 904-6). But all these lines are wanting in the Lincoln MS. In M.H.G. poems we find similar interruotions of the narrative; e. g. in Laurin, 1216-18:

Wie kàumen si von dannen?
Das emmac niemer ergàn,
Der lesrer mua ein trinken hàn.

5870. me forthynkyth. See note to l. 984.
5889. For godlys love and seynt Mary, i. e. Mary's. See note to l. 688.
5896. Then = then that. Cf. note to l. 992.
5916. Halfen dele; cf. 7173, halfen dele my trauayle; 10040, of my londe the halfen dele; 10868-9, þe halfen dell of all my londys. O.E. healfe dàl or þone healfan dàl.
5928. longe or none. Cf. l. 3342, abyde tyll none, though the expletive use of noon is not so clear there; Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 180:
To morrow shall we wete, er it be none;
Athelston (Reliquiae Antiquae, II, 90):
To morwen, or it be none;
ib.:
Longe, or it were none;
ib. 95:
He swoor opis be sunne and mone,
 Pey scholen be drawen and hongyd or none,
where the MS. has be opis (not be opys as printed).
5930. me forthoght. See note to l. 984.
5950. to kepe, to pay regard to, not to slight. The reverse is my preson to breke, l. 11538.
5956. Then = then that. Cf. note to l. 992.
5969. hur songe. See note to l. 5424.
5985. anyþynge used adverbially; cf. 6309,8898. Cf. the adverbial use of oght (note to l. 7799) and nothing (still N.E.).
5988. MS. Of me to haue. I prefer the emendation given in the text to another that might be suggested, viz.:
Than beganne þat maye to crye
Of hur to have some mercye,
so that the direct speech would begin in l. 5989. But we should then miss the person who is entreated to have mercy on Ozelle. The French has:
'Sire Gui, fait ele, 'pur deu mcrci I De iceo lour al tiers, etc.
5992. me, but MS. hym. Cf., however, ll. 5632-34 and the French:
Mas vne rien purpense ai,
Ke iceel iour me occierai.
5995. errande often means 'purpose,' 'wish,' 'object.' Cf. Destruction of Troy, 481:
Shentyng for shame to shew þere ernd;
ib. 522: And vnder shadow of shame shewid forth hir ernnd:
Cobsam's Chaste Wife, 329:
For o ernnd we come bothe.

6038. Nor man bye, i.e. 'nor any man being present.'
6048. fonde is here 'to try,' O.E. fundian, fondian. See note to l. 1372.—Speke is used similarly to carpe in l. 3320; cf. the passage quoted from the Caius MS. in the note to II. 9043-4.
6058. grete, MS. wepe. See the note to l. 2534.
6094. 'They had the maiden in their power.' ey refers to Otoun and his men, though only Otoun is mentioned before; cf. note to l. 5672. I do not see any reason to suppose a clerical error here. But then the author evidently misunderstood the French before him. Guy armed himself:

Kar armes out a son talent,
Que la pucele li out baillees :
Al duc esteient presentees,
Puis monta le bon destrer,

which lines are accurately rendered in the Auch. MS., 6003-7:
Gij armed him wel richeliche
Al to his wille stalworlliche
Wip armes, pe maiden him had bitou^t,
Pat were pe douke to present brou^t.
His gode stede he bistrod, etc.

The mistake of our author perhaps arose from the verb bailler meaning both 'to bring,' 'to procure' and 'to possess,' 'to have in one's power.'

6100. store; see note to l. 3869.
6114. hyt; see note to l. 1051.
6137. He is Barrarde, as shown by Guy hyt felde in the next line.
6138. hyt, the thrust; cf. l. 6498 and note to l. 1051. felde, required here by the rhyme, though not occurring again in the poem, is yet confirmed by the frequent preterits sende, wende.

6176. neve. See the note to l. 237.
6184. A zeugma, eyle belonging to gode only in the sense of 'to befall.' Quite a parallel passage occurs in Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 909:

Me eyleyth nothyng, but gode.

6212. specyallye. See note to l. 4703.
6219. clere makes no sense here. Guy, ed Turnbull, 6130:

Hole and sounde icham hider brou^t.

Our author, no doubt, used the synonymous phrase hole and fere. See note to l. 4626.
6223. hym pogh. Cf. l. 4765 and note to l. 385.
6235. colde, dead. Cf. note to l. 1149.
6267. pem all, Otoun's men. Cf. note to l. 5672.
6271. The corresponding French passage is not put in Tyrry's mouth, but related by the author:
NOTES, LINES 6295—6417. 409

Gui de ceo ne se obliad mie,
Asembez ad chinnaleries.
Al duc ad fayt damage grant:
De sei uenger faite bien semblant.

After not we must insert but; cf. ll. 5273-4:
He wolde not for all Lombardye,
But hey were dedde full hastelye;

ll. 8195-6:
Y wolde not for þys cyte wyth þe gylte towre,
But þy myght stroye kyng Tryamowre.

Only in our passage the infinitive with to (cf. note to ll. 1924-5) is used instead of a subordinate clause.

6295. all, þat euer þat. Cf. even Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 2246:
And, who that euer that was wele payde or wroth.

6309. onyþyng. See note to l. 5985.

6334. wyndyst, goest. See note to l. 3872.

6381 is spoken by Aubry. See the note to l. 5717.

6387. dewke Loreyne, MS. dewke loyeren. Cf. the French:
Quant sunt a Lohereng uenuz,
A grant loie i sunt receuz,

and the notes to ll. 633 and 5325.

6447. Be þen = be þat (ll. 581, 5627, 6647); cf. Mätzner's Gramm., II, 514. It is used also in a relative sense, cf. Generydes, ed. Wright, 635:

Theder they came, be thanne it was nyght;
Bythen you've com back 'twill be coager-time (luncheon-time), Parish, Sussex Dialect, p. 23.
6453. of, MS. on. Cf. l. 6528 and note to l. 5334. The French has: A terre se mist del destrier.

6485. I have changed fadur (i.e. Fadur) to fader to rhyme with here. Cf. doghtere: manere, II. 7011-12.

6489. be thy swyre. Cf. be my swyre, l. 3598.

6498. hote. See note to l. 1049.

6524. Cf. note to l. 4708.

6579. mynte, to aim a blow, to strike. Cf. l. 6882. It is still dialectical in the sense of 'to aim,' 'to hint,' etc. O.E. myntan, to intend, to purpose. Cf. N.H.G. es auf etwas münzen = 'to mint at something.' Schmeller, Bayer. Wörterbuch, I, 1633 (II 1, 605), seems to be right in distinguishing it from 'münzen' = 'to mint' (from Latin moneta), and referring it to O.E. munan. The M.E. substantive mynt, mynte, 'blow,' seems to be a late derivation from the verb. It is not found in Stratmann or Halliwell, but cf. l. 6839, Destruction of Troy, 8263:

Euell masit of the mynt and the mayn stroke;
Green Knight, 2345, with a mynt one; ib. 2350, pat oper munt; ib. 2352, two bare myntes.

6612. harbaroeste must be the preterit (cf. note to l. 4657). Cf. l. 6616 and the French:

Ke en nostre meison par charite
De bon quer eussez herbergez.

6622. Then = then if. See note to l. 992.

6625. þem, if correct, must refer to the Earl's son and the three knights mentioned in l. 6603. But cf. l. 6628 and the French:

El cor ad dolur mult grant,
Kant neit gisir sun fiz mort.

6626. he cowde no redde. See note to l. 1199, 1200.

6633. they after no man. See note to l. 100.

6638. all hys odur wede. See note to l. 559.

6652. as þat = as if. See note to l. 4062.

6656. hote. See note to l. 1049.

6666. tynte seems to mean 'threw,' 'smote'; cf. l. 6884. But I do not know any parallel passage. Cf. note to l. 2864:

6674. whome. See note to l. 3422.

6682. MS. þurste. By reading þyrste we get a perfect rhyme. þrist is cited in Stratmann from Orm, Prick of Conscience, Lydgate, and the Coventry Plays; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8252:

For þrist mi hert wil tospring;
ib. 8330: Iehaua swiche þrist, þer y stond.

6687-8. See note to l. 5859-60.

6697. Perhaps I was wrong in inserting hys. Turned them vsage may be as correct as N.E. to turn head; cf. Shaksp., a IV Henry, III, ii, 102; V Henry, II, iv, 69.
6699, 6700. Do these lines really mean 'they carried home many wounds and many dead men'? I rather think there is an anacoluthon. l. 6700 goes on as if preceded by Many were wounded.

6727. Of the tresure kepte, cared about; cf. ll. 5950, 8334.

6732. Into Ynglonde y wylle. See note to l. 856.

6737. MS. them. But we get a perfect rhyme by reading thame, which form occurs in l. 7623 rhyming with schame.

6740. some. See note to l. 3187.

6750. not = ne wot, do not know, O.E. nāt; cf. M.H.G. neiz = ne weiz.

6761. We expect a subordinate sentence; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6689.

Also sone so it wite our fon. Then for when occurs also l. 11085. Cf. when for then, Generydes, ed. Wright, 1093; thanne for whanne, ib. 652; that for what, ib. 666, 869.

6770. Me þar not drede, I need not dread. þar = O.E. þærf; German darf, is in M.E. used both as a personal and impersonal verb. Cf. Mätzner, Gramm., I², 417-18; II², 206-7; Koch, II, 29, § 29. Cf. also l. 6830:

Of no wepon he þar not dowte;

St Gregory, ed. Horstmann, l. 29:

'A, sone,' he seide, 'dar þe nouht wepe,'

where MS. and Horstmann read darpe.

6783. I doubt whether the line is correct.

6812. passyd so, escaped all dangers in this way.

6824. wyþ þe meste, very big; cf. note to l. 1496.

6830. þar. See note to l. 6770.

6831. Hys breste (ys) brode, and (he hath) black skynne. See note to l. 58-9.

6832. myght ymne, viz. go, get. See note to ll. 855-6.

6834. vyle = ugly. See note to l. 132.

6839. mynte. See note to l. 6579.

6840. But repeated from l. 6838. Cf. note to ll. 10211-12.

6846. so god me mende. Cf. l. 8681 and note to l. 615.

6882. mynte. See note to l. 6579.

6922. þe = Lat. eo. See note to l. 5205.

6936. they after no man. See note to l. 100.

6947. myght no more, had no more strength. Cf. Koch's Gramm., II, 25, § 25; Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 837:

Then myght Iames no more.

6954. mett = O.E. met, measured.

6959-72 refer to the King only owing to a mistake of the translator. The Freuch has:
NOTES, LINES 6974—7112.

A Walingforde sen est ale,
Ses homes del honur i ad troue,
Qui pur li grant ioie firent:
Maint iur de li noueles nen oirent.

6974. Odur bote was ther none, 'there was no other help' (cf. bote, e. g. l. 2258), makes but poor sense. But it is easy to remove the fault. Cf. the French:

Kar son prier mort esteit,
Autre eir de li ne aueit;

cf. ll. 889-90, 7013-14, and 7062.

6992. bedpi, offered. See note to l. 2703.
6993. Kyngys doghtur and emperowre. See note to l. 688.
6994-5. them all after hur is not strange, the preceding singular referring to an individual case; cf. note to l. 8886.

7020. maydijn gone, 'continue single.' The same phrase in M.H.G. (see Grimm's Grammatik, IV, 593). Cf. the beginning of one of those stanzas wrongly attributed to 'Der von Kürenberc' (Minnesangs Frühling, edd. Lachmann and Haupt, p. 10):

Aller wibe wünne diu gēt noch megetūn

König Rother, 2231-2:

Ich wil och immr magit gān,
Mer newerde der helit lossam.

7036. MS. maytene for mayntene. Cf. note to l. 843.
7041. Dewkys doghtur and emperowre. See note to l. 688.
7046. so speycallye. See note to l. 4703.
7053. yow nominative here. See note to l. 4192.
7057-8. hur after the relative that, an anacoluthon that may be met with in all languages. E. g. omnes tunc fere, qui nec extra urbem hanc vixerant, nec cos barbaries domestica infuscaverat, recte loquebantur. Cf. ll. 7089-90.

7068. vythowten mare, without anything else.
7076. for to forsake. See note to ll. 1925-6.
7081. thy is an erratum for thys.
7089-90. hur after that; see note to ll. 7057-8.

7100. stode, 'lasted.' Cf. Sal. and Sat. (Grein, Bibliothek, II, 368), l. 474:

and Æghwyle him þissa earfocā ece standēc.

Cf. N.E. of long (old) standing, Icel. stunda, and such M.H.G. phrases as lange stān, ez stuent drie jār, etc. Sitten is used in much the same sense; cf. Havelok, 2344:

Pe feste fourti dawes sat.

7112. I cannot conceive why only Felice's happiness should be mentioned. Cf. the French:

Ensemble furent cinquante iours:
Plus ne durerent lurs amurs.
7117-18. See note to ll. 5859-60.

7140. MS. That y travelede fore. Despite the note to l. 1785, I think it impossible that l. 7140 alone should contain direct speech. Cf. the French:

Pur vne femme, que il tant amat,
Pur qui tant mas endurez ad.

7151. soght, came. Cf. Satan (Cædmon, ed. Thorpe, p. 281; Grein, Bibliothek, I, 136), 266-7:

Ne molt ic þám sáwlum, þe þær sicað up
eádige of eorðan, ábre gehrínan;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 81 (A B C) k:

thou art the same,
To whom i seche for my medicine;

Isumbras, in the Caius MS., fol. 102 b:

When he to þe erþe sowyte

Tryamoure, 1182: Then the emperowre thedur soght;

Cheuelere Assigne, 52:

Sythen seche to þe courte;

ib. 60-1:

At a chambre dore, as she forthe sowyte,
Seuenne whelpes she sawe;

Destruction of Troy, 963-4:

Jason with joy and his joly fellowes
Soghten euen to the sete of Chetes þe kynge;

ib. 1353:

Thai soght into the cite vpon sere haluys;

cf. even Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8617:

Swiche sorwe ich am in sowyt.

Originally sécan, sechon with an accusative was ‘to visit’; cf. notes to ll. 7676 and 8394.

7154. for seynt Charite; cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 51:

I the besche for sainte Charite;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 9805:

Bid him for seynt Charite;

ib. 9841-3:

Take þe batayle now on hond
And sune ouz þe rízt of Iuglond,
For seynt Charite;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 53, 863:

And sle me first, for seynte Charite,

ib. 272, 419:

Now, Thomas, help, for seynte Charite;

Shaksp., Hamlet, IV, v, 58:

By Gis and by St. Charity.

Cf. also the notes to l. 471 and 11976.

7173. Halfen dele my traunylye (cf. note to l. 5916). Of is here omitted as very often in similar cases, e.g. treasure plente; cf. ll. 479, 1772, 2748, 5960, etc. Cf. also mete and drynke my fylle, l. 7889, and of water my fylle, 8110 (cf. 9142). See also the notes to ll. 7483 and 10329.
7174. There is no other instance of such a rhyme in our poem as *trauayle* : *fayled* would be.—see refers to Guy and Felice. In the French Guy thinks only of himself:

*La glorie del ciel, pur veirs, anerei,*
*Ensemble od deu saint serrie.*

7176. *in sorowe syng.* See note to l. 5424.

7187. *so god me redde,* cf. 8936. *rede* = *rede,* O.E. râdan, advise, take care of. Cf. also note to l. 615.

7217. *may yow.* See note to l. 4192. *Parelle* is, no doubt, owing only to the scribe. Our author rhymes *exsyle* : *paryle* in ll. 7321-2; 9717-18, and as here *paryle* : *exsyle,* ll. 9483-4.

7223. *That* by no means refers to *vow,* but to Guy's sin mentioned especially in ll. 7163-4. It is strange that Guy in the Auchinleck MS. contains two lines (7244-5) from which ll. 7223-4 of our poem differ only by *And* in l. 7224:

\[
\text{pat ich hane wiþ mi bodi wrougt,}
\text{Wiþ mi bodi it schal be bout.}
\]

7225. *for lefe nor lothe.* Cf. Havelok, 2379:

\[
\text{Ne leten he nouth for lef ne loth,}
\]

ib, 2775-6:

\[
\text{pat he ne sholden for lef ne loth}
\text{Neuere more ageyn him go.}
\]

See Skeat's glossary to Hav., s.v. *lef,* and Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben,* I, 299, l. 62.

7258. *grete,* MS. *wepe.* See note to l. 2534.

7261. For ll. 7261—8024 we have another copy of the same version in the Cairns MS., p. 149-175. As this MS. will be printed at length in another volume, I have used it here and in the foot-notes only in correcting or, at least, pointing out obvious faults of our text.

7291. *seche.* The same fault, if fault it be, occurs in Cursor Mundi, 11804, where the Göttingen MS. has,

\[
\text{Hu had he hert to seke þair blode,}
\]

but the other MSS. printed have *seed* or *schede.*

7299. *anodur* seems to be 'on other.'

7305. *hyt* as accusative omitted. See note to l. 1474.

7323-4. *pe, how . . . thy.* Cf. note to ll. 1497-8.

7348. *specyallye.* See note to l. 4703.

7352. *whome.* See note to l. 3422.


7402. This passage is corrupt, or the translator did not understand his original. Cf. the French:

\[
\text{Ke en Antioche sen irra,}
\text{A vne iorne par de ca}
\]

A une fontaine sus un pin

\[
\text{La vit seer un pelerin.}
\]
The Caius MS., p. 154, has:

To Antyoche, the riche cytee.
As he wente in that contrey,
Halfe the day in that jorney,
Vndyr a bussh ther he fonde
A pore pylgryme syttande.

7403-4. The double *there* is odd. The instance in l. 7704 is a little different, nor itself free from suspicion. Cf. also ll. 4275, 4527.

7406. Cf. the Caius MS., 154:

He had gret sorrow and pyne.

7409. An anacoluthon; cf. note to ll. 58-9. l. 7409 runs as if preceded by *Hys eyen were grete and hys vysage stronge.*—I do not know the corresponding passage of the French poem, but the reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by Guy, ed. Turnbull, 7436:

Wip whithope heued and berd yblowe.

7412. *tythynge* *‘thing’.* Cf. note to l. 2022.

7416. See note to l. 1155.

7420. *noyed.* See note to l. 576.

7432. *hyght* may be the preterit here; cf. the Caius MS., p. 155:

Erle Ionas some tyme i hyght,

and *had* in l. 7433.

7447. *A grete batayle was there oon.* Cf. Mätzner’s *Wörterbuch*, p. 78, Gramm. III, 197; and besides Stations of Rome, ed. Furnivall, 480:

*An holy doctor he was on;*

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 2702:

*A fair gift is his now on;*

Guy in the Caius MS., p. 178:

*A glad man shuld i be one.*

7464. *belapped,* surrounded. See Mätzner’s *Wörterbuch*.

7483. *Mete and drynke we had smalle,* but l. 8724:

*Of mete and drynke they had small.*

Cf. note to l. 7173.

7494. *crye.* See note to l. 2850.

7501. *The sowdon sone.* See note to l. 503, but cf. also l. 7538.

7502. Cf. the French:

*Sadoynge de Perse est apelle;*

the Caius MS., p. 157:

*Sadyne* of Percy he hyght.

The Auchinleck MS. has *Sadok,* Copland’s version, Dd iiiii, the same corruption as our MS.

7507. *To Faber chaumber.* See note to l. 503.

7511. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French:

*A un eschek, ke Fabur li dist.*

7512. The Caius MS. has everywhere *Sadoyne* or *Sadony* and never
the article before it; cf. ll. 7518, 7589, 7597; cf. also ll. 7523, 7531, 7546, 7562, 7946.

7549-50. See note to ll. 5859-60. But these two lines are wanting in the Caius MS., p. 159.

7576. See note to l. 4708.

7580. Halliwell in his Dictionary, p. 838, s. v. *swick* suggests 'den' as the meaning of *swyke* in this passage. A similar signification ('den or cave?') he is inclined to attribute to *swyke* in Ywaine and Gawain, l. 677 (ib., s. v. *swike*). This passage runs as follows (Ritson, Metr. Rom., I, 29):

Under that than was a *swyke*,
That made syr Ywain to myslike.

Ritson, III, 421, s. v. explains *swyke* as 'sike, hole, ditch.' But Stratmann, no doubt, is right in interpreting it as 'decipula,' 'trap.' Stratmann quotes the word from two more passages (Wright's Vol. of Vocab., I, 221, and Richard, 4081). The signification 'trap' suits here very well. The giant is said to be as fierce as a lion when caught in a trap. The trap is called *his swyke*, because it was laid for the lion. The French has nothing that corresponds with this line:

*Plus ert neir, ke un tison;*
*De reguardure sembla dragun.*

Espec out les espaules, etc.

The Caius MS., p. 160, reads:

He was blak, as any piche:
Men saw neuer none suche,

which looks like a corruption.

7593. *Syr Tryamour had drede stronge* in the Caius MS. This line escaped the corrector's notice; cf. foot-note in p. 213.

7596. *becalle*, call out, challenge.

7597. The whole line runs in the Caius MS., p. 161, thus:

*And seyd, that Sadony was neuer dede.*

7599-600 are wanting both in the French and in the Caius MS. Perhaps they are spurious. Cf. ll. 7591-2.

7601-4. The French:

*Vn an li est done de respit*
*E quarante iurs, sauz contredit;*
*Kar ceo ert custume el rengne*
*E en la curt ert aguarde;*

cf. the Caius MS., p. 161:

*And an hole yere of trewes tane*
*And fourty dayes, till it be gane,*
*Suche is the law of that cuntre,*
*
*Euer was and euer shall bee.*

In the first line of the Caius MS. *was* is to be added, but the words in Italics give more correct readings than our text: most of them are confirmed by the French.
NOTES, LINES 7609—7715. 417

7609-10. The French:
E par tote Saragoce fist sercher,
Si cheualer puis trouer;
ciaf. the Caius MS., p. 161:
And dud crye thorough that londe,
Yf he eny man fonde.

Funde in our text cannot possibly be a correct participle, and he is shown by the French to be the right pronoun.

7639-40. Yf = Lat. si in such clauses as:
O, mihi prffiteritos referat si lupiter annos;
of. 1. 9237, and Mätzner's Gramm., III2, 432, where, however, no M.E. instance is to be found. And it must be owned that the elliptical sentence in l. 7639 is owing to a scribe, not to the author. For when we compare the French:

Si ieo Gui auer pusse,
De ucintre la bataille asseur fusse,
V Heraud de Ardenne li hardi:
Sur tuz les autres desir Gui,

with the Caius MS., p. 162:

Yf i myght haue sir Gye,
I were seker of the mastrye,
Other sir Herrawd, the knytt herdye:
Before all other i desyre syr Gye,

there can be no doubt that in our text four lines have been reduced to two.

7656. sore = sory. See note to l. 132.

7658. Cf. the Caius MS., 163:
And forth to Fraunce and to Spayne.

7672. In holy weyes was hye entente, viz. to go. See note to l. 855-6.

7676. soght, visited. O.E. sècan, Icel. sekja very often have this meaning; cf. German 'ansuchen,' 'besuchen,' M.H.G. suochen especially in a hostile sense. Cf. l. 8430, and notes to ll. 8394 and 7151.

7681-2. Cf. the French:

Hui cest iour i ad un an,
Ke suffert ai cest haan;

and the Caius MS., p. 163:

Hit is twelmonythis and more,
Sythen that i fro the kynge gan fare.

This is correct in itself, but seems to be altered from about the same reading that I have restored in the text.

7691. yene ye noght. See note to l. 4459.

7695-6. Cf. the French:

Bien sai, si il viure poeient,
La crestiente enhauciereient.

7709. wenyst = wenydest. See note to l. 4657.

7715. for syr Gye and Harrowdes sake. See note to l. 683.

WARWICK. 27
NOTES, LINES 7719—7831.

7719-20. saw Gye, that he. See note to ll. 1497-8.

7729. Cf. the Caius MS.:
Hys beryd was long and thike of here.

7730. steype = stepe (cf. note to l. 3070) seems to mean 'with fixed eyes.' It cannot mean here 'with bright eyes;' though stepe eyen seem to be often, if not always, 'bright eyes.' Cf. Cockayne, St. Marharete, p. 108, St. Juliana, p. vi; Morris's Selections from Chaucer (Clarendon Press), note to Prol., 201; Skeat's Specimens of E. Literature, note to xiv, 1014, etc.

7736. wytterle. See note to l. 132.

7738. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French:
Ja ne serrieriez mes si hardy,
Ke bataille prissez uers li.

7742. wraethe is confirmed by the French:
E souent par mal reguarte.

7753. Cf. the French:
'Amis,' fait Gui, 'ore en aloms.'

7785. my neme. See note to l. 612.

7808. The Caius MS., p. 168, reads:
And with myyt and strenghe away hit leede.

Here leede is the infinitive depending on saw. But in our text ledde is the preterit, and the subject he must be supplied from the preceding hym. See note to l. 10. The French seems to confirm the reading of the Caius MS.:

La teste vi ke il li trencha,
E ensemble od li lenporta,
trencha and enporta being parallel as smyte and leede.

7825-6. servest and parteyste are preterits as shown by the French auez servi, estes departi, and by hast servyde, departidyst in the Caius MS., p. 168. See note to l. 4657.

7831. Cf. also the French:
Verriement servir un seigneur,
Ke mult me list in grant honur.

7837. The French runs as follows:
‘De la terre men alai e del pais,
Ensemble od se vois, com penant,
Sa merci tuz iurs attendant.
Quant serrai a li acorde,
Si men repairerai el reigne.’
‘Amis Jun,’ dist li rei,
‘Vouz tu combatre pur moi?’

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 169:
‘Tho went i fro my contree,
Tyll it myght after better be.
Thus will i walke in this estate,
Tyll his wrath be abate.
When he and i accordyd be,
Then will i wende to my contree.’

Now quod the kyng so free:
‘Will thow this bateyle take for me?’

A similar omission takes place in the Caius MS. in the passage quoted in the note to l. 8930. As to the adding of l. 7839, cf. the notes to ll. 1800-10 and 9203-7.

7853. but, MS. be. Was this perhaps a dialectical corruption? Cf. Generydes, ed. A. Wright, 1396, 1419, 3040.—Mary sone; see note to l. 503.

7892. some. See note to l. 3187.

7904. in present = for a present in the Caius MS., p. 171, i. e. ‘as a present.’ Cf. 10618.

7905. Why is Jerusalem mentioned here? The Caius MS., p. 171, has essentially the same text:

In fer lond was hit wrought
And to the kyng for a present brought.
When hit com to Jerusalem,
Hit shone, as the somn beame.

But cf. the French:

Vn hauberk out, ke ert faiye,
Ke al rei Charles fu presente,
Kant en Jerusalem esteit.
En sun tresor, ou mis laueit,
Vn larun dilek le embla, etc.

Now it is very easy to propose:

And to kyng Charles in present broght,
When he came to Jerusalem.

It would then follow that this fault occurred already in that MS, of which the Caius and University MSS. are direct or indirect copies. Or had our author a corrupt French text before him?

7911. tresorye, treasury, but does it perhaps mean ‘value’ here? Or is the line corrupt? Cf. the Caius MS., p. 171:
Hit was take for tresore
At that ned to sir Gye.

Is for to be altered to fro? The French runs as follows:
Li ancestres Triamor le achatereit
E en grant cherte le guarderent:
En cest bosoing lunt aGui balle.

7914. 3ore = ore, Caius MS. See note to l. 60.

7921. Alysaunder is kyng, the apposition being without inflexion.
Cf. l. 8714, admyrals Presane, and note to l. 687.

7923. The Caius MS., p. 172, is even more corrupt here than our text:

He slow the kyng Priamoure thcrfore
And wanne there much more.

The French has:
Ke ert al rei Alisandre le pruz,
Kant il oecist le rei Porrux.

Besides Porus we find Pore in M.E. Cf. Alisaunder (ed. Weber, Rom. i, p. 232), ll. 2516-17:

That noither of thee ne of Pore
Ne helden tale lesse ne more.

7927. wonne = Caius MS. one. Halliwell (Dict.) cites won from a Chaucer MS.:

To make too joys insted of won gревance;
Guy, in the Caius MS., 212 (= l. 9036 of our text):
Treuer fellow and (read þen) he was won;

Tryamoure, ll. 1112-13:
Y trowe, god hath me sent wonne,
That shalle Moradas bryng to noght.

I will repeat here a few other instances which I have collected in the Zeitschrift für die österreichischen Gymnasien, 1875, p. 136: Visions of Tundale, ed. Turnbull, l. 248, the angell . . . chasyl won; l. 2329, won of hoom; ib. p. 106, in won entent. Hence the pronunciation of N.E. one. Another word that often takes a parasitic w is ord in the phrase ord and ende. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 224, 730:
That al the story written word and ende;

ib. V, 69, 1683:
And of this broche he told hym word and ende.

Skeat in his Selections from Chaucer (Clarendon Press), p. 55, l. 3911, has accepted for the former passage Hickes's emendation ord. But I am rather of Tyrwhitt's opinion, who in his note to C. T., l. 14639, says: 'But all the MSS. that I have examined, read word, and therefore I have left it in the text, as possible the old Saxon phrase, in Chaucer's time, might have been corrupted.' Word = ord occurs too often to be taken for a mere clerical error. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 484:
I schall him telle word and ende;

ib. 3365-6:
To him þou þi sond seude,
Alle þi wille word and ende;
Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 32 (= Turnbull, 850, ord and ende):
And telle hir worded and ende;
Richard (ed. Weber, Rom. 2, 277), 7107-8:
The messangers gunne to wende
And tolde the sawdon wurde and ende.
Cf. also wother = other: e. g. hur wodur chylde, quoted by Halliwell, s. v. wodur; wother occurs as a rule in William Roye’s Dialogue between a Christian Father and his Stubborn Son (ed. Adolf Wolf, Vienna, 1874, in Sitzungsberichte der hist.-phil. Classe, etc. for March), e. g. p. 423, 424, 425. Compare also in Halliwell, wolde (M.E. = olde) and wocks ( = oaks), wother (= other), woth (oath), wots ( = oats), in modern dialects.

7927-8 seem corrupt. Cf. the French:
Dunt il maint Gregeis occist,
Ainz ke il le espee perdist,
and the Caius MS., p. 172:
Therwith the Grekis many one,
Or he lesee, had he slone.
By adding hyt before or after lesee from our text, we get an almost literal rendering of the French.

7951-2. Very probably the transition from direct to indirect speech here is owing only to a scriber altering bad to seyde. Cf. the French:
Le sarazin fait venir auant,
Celui de Ethiopie, Amorant;
and the Caius MS., p. 173:
He bad bryng forth that geaunte,
Of Ynde a paynym, Amaraunte.

7993. peyred = empeyred, impaired; cf. O.F. empeirer, Lat. impiorare. See l. 10164 and note to l. 576.

7993-4. Confusion of two constructions: (1) his shield was never damaged till on that occasion; (2) his shield was nowhere damaged but there. But this confusion is owing to a scriber, as we learn by a comparison of the French:
Ke unkes ne fu mes atame
En bataille, ou eust ete,
with the Caius MS., p. 174:
That was neuer blemished ere
In no bateyle, where it were.

8004. As pat. See note to l. 4062.
8013. hys hors neck. See note to l. 503.
8025. From this line to l. 8540 the Caius MS. contains again another version of the romance (cf. note to l. 7261).

8028. stadde = bestadde (l. 8930), bestead. It is used especially by Northern and Scotch writers. See Mätzner’s notes to Sprachproben, I, 364, 200 and 382, 528.
8032. The French has no corresponding line, but cf. l. 8018. The same fault occurs in l. 2864.

8042. *thy more = thyn ore*, thy mercy; cf. l. 8230, *by goddys ore*, and note to l. 612.

8054. *lyke no man = like no man’s*. It is the same shortness as in the well-known Greek Κόμα Χαρίτεςον ἢμοῖα. Cf. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 19, 540:

His top was dockud lyke a preest biforn.

8055. *golde helohyn = golde begone*, l. 8057, edged with gold, gilt. I do not remember *helohyn* in this sense mentioned anywhere.

8062. I do not understand the meaning of this line. The corresponding line of the French poem is:

Al sus saillir ne semblâ uileins.

8078. *fresch* is ‘vigorous,’ ‘quick’ very often. It renders here the French *fiers*. Cf. Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, 1105-6:

Ase *fresch* a was to fiȝt,
Ase grehonde to hare.

In Generydes, ed. Wright, l. 3455, therefore,

Wherefore on hym right fressly he sett,

*fressly* (= *freshly*) need not be altered to *fersly*.

8087. In the French, as well as in the other English versions, Guy first replies that he is a Christian and an Englishman; upon which the Giant wishes his opponent may be Guy of Warwick. It is impossible to decide whether the alteration in our text was made by the translator or a scribe.

8094. The French has no corresponding line. A similar fault occurs in l. 1627.

8127-8. A very frequent shortness. The complete sentence would, of course, be: ‘When he had got the permission he was so glad as never before.’ Cf. ll. 11623-4; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 6189-91:

When Herhand yherd ðis,
Dat Gij and Tirri comen is,
Neuer nas he so blys;

ib. 7053-4:
Now þou wilt spouse mi dohter hende,
Was y neuer are so blys;

Orfeo, ed. Laing, 59-60:

When Orfeo herd þat tiding,
Neuer him nas wers for noþing.

N.E. *never so*, *never such*, which some grammarians think to be incorrect, owe their origin to a similar shortness of expression (cf. Mätzner, III, 139-40.

8132. *he thrate*. The French:

De la riuere beut a plentiful,

does not explain *thrate*. Halliwell (Dictionary, p. 867) understands it to mean ‘urged; pressed.’ I think it is O.E. *preáltian*, to chide, to
urge, to compel. M.E. *prete* generally means to threaten. But in Morris's Specimens, II, IV, D, 7:

pe *prestelcoc* kim *prete* oo

perhaps *kim* *prete* is 'urges himself,' 'exerts himself.' At least I cannot think either Morris's or Wülcker's (*Altenglisches Lesebuch*, I, p. 170) explanation of this passage satisfactory. In our line the reflexive pronoun is omitted.

8138. *wythowten* care = without doubt.

8142. *wyth* *ony* gras = by any happy chance. Cf. note to l. 1216.


Bot, ef sco *gif of him no tale*,

Than wantes wine at hire bridale;


Suile ribaudie *pei led*, *pei gaf no tale of wham*;

Richard (Weber, Rom. 1, 173), 4341:

The toon folk ne *gaff no tale*.

Cf. note to l. 4459 and *helden tale* in a passage quoted in the note to l. 7923.

8145-6. I cannot see what *That þynge* refers to if l. 8146 precedes l. 8145 as it does in the MS. If we let the two lines change places, l. 8146 means: 'Thou wilt not get me intimidated.'

8149. *a strawe brede* = the breadth of a straw. The word is, of course, a compound.

8212-13. *Arste* . . . *Then*. Though *arste* is a superlative (O.E. ëwr, ëwr, ëreat), yet it is often used in a comparative sense (= sooner, rather, before), and may, therefore, be followed by *then, than*; cf. 11123, 11170, 11864; Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 49, 708:

*That schapen was my deth erst, than my scherte;*

Tryamoure, 228:

*Arste* ye schalle not blyrne;

ib. 681:

*Arste* wolde he not blyrne

8214. *soche a quede* = such a devil. Cf. Mätzner's note to *Sprachproben*, I, 93, 82, and Mall's to Harrowing of Hell, 36; Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8788-9:

*Y schall bring sir Gij to nijt*

*To nijt aijain þat qued.*

8220. *os* = as. See note to l. 4602.

8222. *wyde whare*, widely, far; cf. 8686, 11154; *marcandys of wyde where*, 8421; cf. Stratmann, s. v. *wid*, and Mätzner's note to *Sprachpr.*, I, 119, 176, where this *where* is referred to O.E. *hwâr*, aliecub, not to the interrogative *hwâr*; Altingl. Legenden, ed. Horstmann, p. 26, l. 740:

*And wyde sware hine hadde isoujt.*
NOTES, LINES 8229—8364.

8229. fame = defame, diffame (cf. note to l. 576), which occurs, e.g., in Skeat's Specimens of Engl. Lit., xxii, 4512:
To Fredrike emprior did diffame.
Cf. l. 8654 and note to l. 108. Fame, as a verb, 'to defame,' occurs, e.g., in Tryamoure, 20-21:
False and fekylle was that wyghte
That lady for to fame;
Squyer of Lowe Degre (Ritson, III, 161), 392:
That thou them fame for enmyte;
cf. also Alliterative Poems, ed. Morris, b. 188:
And for fals famacions.

8231. vnduyode = understood, learnt. Cf. l. 10804:
And hys moonyng vnduyode.
The word is wanting in Stratmann, but Halliwell (Diction., 901) quotes from our MS.:
The hors sone vnduyode,
That Befyse was not on hys rygge.
Cf. besides Alliterative Poems, ed. Morris, b. 796:
And þat þe þep vnzèrede, þat in þe ȝate syttez.
Morris, in the note to this passage and in the glossary, takes unzerede = underȝete, but this is certainly wrong. The word in question is not O.E. undergeat (= vnzere, l. 10430), but *undergeode = under-ode. As to the signification, cf. understand.

8239. or y go, a pretty common expletive; cf. 11093, or thou goo;
Chaucer, ed. Morris, III, 39, 337:
' That schall i telle,' quod sehe, 'er that i go';
ib. 44, 488: 'And sacrifice to oure goddes, er thou go.'

8271-2. The regular construction would have been: Eyther hath be-thought, how (the) other myght to grounde be broght. But the subject of the subordinate clause is placed as an object in the principal one (cf. note to ll. 1497-8).

8283-4. The French runs as follows:
Del matin treske la nuit,
Ke la clere estelle lur apparuit.
In our text to = till seems to belong to nyght as a preposition, but to l. 8284 as a conjunction (cf. Mätzner's Gramm., III, 467). But I do not remember any parallel passage.

8302. lessud, lessened. See note to l. 4776.
8334. kepe y noght, I do not care, have no mind. Cf. notes to ll. 5950 and 6727.

8336. No corresponding French line. Not greue on account of Guy's refusing to stay with him?
8363-4. Perhaps we ought to read:
'Syr,' sayde þe erle, 'say me, whye
That thou goyst thus, for goddys merey.'
Cf. ll. 7425-6: Some y schall telle þe, why
That y am so sorye.

8383. whome. See note to l. 3422.

8386. y vnderstande is a little odd here; perhaps originally ye vnderstande (cf. note to l. 1918), or ye schall vnderstande (cf. l. 9181)?

8391. thankande, MS. thankande. As ‘-end is a Midland form’ (Morris, Ayenbite, p. lxiv), and our poem is certainly a Midland one, I thought myself entitled to this alteration in order to get a perfect rhyme.

8401 and Chaucer, C. T. Prol., 17:
The holy blisful martir for to seeke.

Cf. M.H.G. einen heilegen swochen, and notes to ll. 7151, 7676.

8411. fant stone = font stone, font. The a is curious. But it occurs as early as O.E. Cf. O.E. fant and fantfot. Does it perhaps owe its origin to popular etymology connecting it with infans, enfant, infant? Cf. note to l. 5544.

8412. Cf. the French:
Rainbrun par noun le appellerent.

In our poem the name rhymes besides with Gyorne, ll. 8603, 11341, 11909; with towne, l. 8490; with resown, l. 11731; with pryson, l. 11603.

8418. do no more, do nothing else. Cf. the French:
A dous cheualers le fait garder
Ke unc ne eurent autre mester.

8421. of wyde where, from afar. See note to l. 8222.

8422. Rosse = Rossy = Russye, 8457, 8506, etc. Cf. note to l. 132—as ye harde jere: nothing of the kind has as yet been related. Perhaps ye is a mistake for y (cf. the note to l. 1918). See the French:
Avint, ke marchanz de autre terre,
De Russie, com loi retraire, etc.

—jere = O.E. ðoror, erre; cf. note to l. 60.


8427. Cf. the French:
A la cite de Lundres sunt ariue;

the Caius MS., p. 191:
At London they aryvede than;

Reinbroun, ed. Turnbull, l. 61:
Þai riuede at London þat cite;

Copland’s Guy, Ff iii:
Marchandes came into Englonde
Into London out of Russye.

Cf. also l. 8455: To London þey wente soone agane.
But there is no explaining how London got corrupted to deuer.—revyn. See note to l. 4244.

8430. sough. See note to l. 7676.
8432. tolde. See note to l. 1770.
8445. knyght cannot be right. Cf. l. 8447 and the French:
   Puis ont as chenalers demande.
8449. In = on account of. Cf. the French:
   La beaute del enfant mult loerent.
8462. marke = merke, mirke, dark. Cf. Stratmann, s. v. mirke, and Visions of Tundale, p. 13:
   Tyll thei come to another valay,
   That was bothe the yppe and marke.
8466. whodur = whider, N.E. whither. The same form in ll. 8936 and 10768.
8469. Hyt refers to wynde in l. 8463. Cf. l. 8473.
8474. borowe, save. Cf. e. g. Tryamoure, 602:
   Ther may no blys fro bale hym borowe.
The verb is formally O.E. borgian, N.E. borrow, but the signification was certainly influenced by a confusion with Bergen, O.E. beryen, berwen (cf. German Bergen), the participle past of which was beryen, borwen.
8481. freschly. Cf. note to l. 8078.
8485. The spelling marchaunce occurs in Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 9728, marchauns, Reinbroun, 73, 91, 127, 133, etc.; merchauns must be restored in Guy in the Caius MS., p. 191:
   Hyt befell so, that rych merchauntys
   Commyn from fer beyonde Fraunce.
8486. Cf. the French:
   Puis unt pris treis marchanz,
   Qui corteis furent e bien parlant.
Wele ydlyght of Romance = well versed in Romance, i. e. the Romanic language.
8489. in pe towne. Cf. note to l. 5841.
8492. And must be omitted. Cf. the French:
   Requis le ad par le conseil sa miere
   Al fier Argus, sun piere,
   Ke ele le peust en sa chambre norir.

hur lorde = sun piere. See note to l. 164.
8527. The French has Anelaf.
8529. heer, army, O.E. here, German heer. See Stratmann, s. v. here.
8541. From this line to 9874 the same version also in the Caius MS., pp. 195—242. aplyght, i. e. a plyght, on plyght = on (my, etc.) word. Cf. l. 10809, 10843, 10991, and Halliwell, s. v.
8563. Merof. Modred (and Modred) in the French, Medyok in the Auchinleck MS., Moderyse in the Caius MS.
8564. cruell is owing to some mistake of a scribe. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 195: *Of Cornweyle* he was lord and sire, and the French: *Qui de Cornwaille* ert auoe.

Cf. also II. 8727, 8743.

8565. whythore. See note to l. 4775.

8574. Perhaps rather *asaye*. See note to l. 576.

8582. *for nede*, i.e., distress, misery, denotes what Reynbrown is to expect after having been sold.

8584. *told*, received, pocketed; lit. 'counted.' Cf. Havelok, 775-6:

> Til he hauede wol (al?) wel sold
> And *perfore* he penies *told*;

ib. 1172:

> *Per weren penies pikke tolide.*

8614. *redde*. See note to l. 4410.

8624. *The devell pe honge*. See note to l. 3430.

8633. *The whych,* if I am not mistaken, the only instance in this work, although it frequently appears in others: e.g., Generydes, ed. Wright, 469, 622, 970, 1064, 1080, 1273, 1687, 1750, etc.

8639. *for to fyght,* by fighting. Similar instances in Shakspere; see Abbott's Sh. Grammar, 356.

8654. *fame*. See note to l. 8229.

8667. *sewyn yere* often used to denote a long time. Cf. l. 9213; Schmidt's Shaksp.-Lexicon, s. v. *seven*; Halliwell, s. v. *seven-year*; King Horn, ed. Lumby, 524:

> And *hat hire puist seue zer*;
> I schal wune *zer*
> Fulle seue *zer*;

ib. 911-12:

> *Pi sorwe schal ende
Or seue *zeres* ende*;

ib. 918, 1140; Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 6639:

> *Seuen zer* and more agon it is;
> This *seuen winter* no schaltow se
> Noifer fet no hond;

Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 248:

> For are the *vii. yere* wynne he may
> All hys costage in on daye;

Copland's Guy, *Hh iiiii*:

> And win in hope (?) more on a day,
> Then they should spend in *seuen yere* pay;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 45, 594:

> This *seuen yer* hath seten Palomon.

8682. Cf. ll. 8680, 8729, 8736, etc.

8686. *wyde whare*. See note to l. 8222.

8670. The Caius MS. Sisoyne, the French Sessoin.

8697. *flem* = Harrawde and his companye (l. 8721). Cf. note to l. 5672.

8701. The same clerical error, it seems, in Chaucer’s A B C (Morris, V, 81) k:

Kalendres enlunyned ben bothe they.

8706. Cf. the French:

En la terre al fier rei Argus.
The same name occurs in the Caius MS. and the French in l. 8717. In our poem the right form was kept in ll. 10879 and 10899.

8712. *to flem* Jordan. Halliwell (Dictionary, p. 362) cites from the same MS. (= Tryamoure, 142):

To flem Jordon and to Bedlem.
The corresponding line in the Caius MS. (p. 201) runs as follows:

There is no man so felle in *flamiordan*,

where *in* shows that *flamiordan* was mistaken for some country. We find generally *flum* Jordan; cf. Mitzner’s Gramm., III, 169; Mall’s note to Harrowing of Hell, 206; Genesis and Exodus, 2486, *to flum Jurdon*, or with the article, ib. 806, *Se flum Jurdon*; Miscellany, ed. Morris, 38, 24, and 92, 75, *in pe flum Jurdon*. But cf. also Ayenbite of Inwyt, p. 202, *ine pe flom Jordan*. Without a name following we find in Alliterative Poems, c. 309:

*Pe grete flem of *hy* flod folded me_vmbe*;
cf. the dialectical *fleme*, ‘a river, or stream; a large trench cut for draining. West.’ (Halliwell), ‘a millstream’ (Morris, glossary to All. P., s. v. *flem*). I think Stratmann is wrong in taking *flem* in the Allit. P. = O.E. *fleán*. Cf. Genes. and Exod., l. 490, *flum Noe* = Noah’s flood. Nor can *flum* be connected with O.N. *flaumr* (Morris), or derived directly from the Lat. *flumen* (Stratmann), but is O.F. *flum*. Cf. the French here:

*Ni ad tan felum al flum Jordan*.

That *flumm* occurs several times in the Orrnulum, cannot disprove my opinion (see note to l. 9529). But the form *form* (*fleme*) may have been in some measure influenced by O.E. *fledm*, M.E. *flem*, flight. Cf. also *fleme*, to flow, in Destruction of Troy, 10004:

Blode *flemsgt o fer* in flottes aboute.

8714. *admymrs Presane*. See note to l. 7921.

8720. *bedene*. See note to l. 2408.

8722. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by the French:

Deuant le admirail les amenent errament.

8724. *Of mete . . . small*. See note to l. 7483.

8733. MS. *tressure*. But the form required by the rhyme appears in the Caius MS., p. 202:

And yave hem gold and rich *tressoure*.

8738. *eyr amonge*. See note to l. 650.
8761. Though allas may be used with the vocative (Mätzner’s Gramm., II², 235), yet, as my lyfe in the following line is the accusative, the reading of the Caius MS. seems to be preferable.

8766. ‘As God free thee from sorrow’; slake, ‘to untie; to loosen’ (Halliwell). But I know no quite parallel passage. The Caius MS. reads:

So god the shyl frow sorrow.

But the reading of our MS. is more suitable here and nearer the French:

Si deu te alleghe de ta dolur,

8822. Me forthynkyth. See note to l. 984.

8831. trewepleyght. See note to l. 4330.

8863. of hys swyrde dynte, ‘of the dint of his sword’; cf. note to l. 503.

8864. schulde of, viz. go. Cf. note to ll. 855-6.

8885. in lande. See note to l. 5841.

8886. they in a general sense, but hym in l. 8888 refers to an individual case. Cf. note to ll. 6994-5.

8889. wyth hym, by him. See note to l. 3766.

8898. they seems impossible as preceded by he in ll. 8896-7 and followed by hym in ll. 8899, 9000-1. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 207:

Yf hym had wrothyd prince or kyng
Were he neuer so hye a lordynge.

8908. askyd is hardly correct. Cf. the French:

De la mort sun uncle me apella.

In the Caius MS., p. 208, this and the preceding lines run thus:

When i cam before the emperoure,
Berrard ascoyped me thore.

Accoupe = to accuse, O.F. encouper, Lat. inculpare. I do not think it improbable that askyd is a corruption of ascoyled. By the bye, the rhyme in the Caius MS. becomes perfect when we read emperere (cf. note to l. 4802): there.

8916. MS. pan, but the Caius MS., p. 208, then. Cf. 1132, 2246, 3167, 4260, 4889.

8930. Cf. l. 8257, bestadde sore. In the Caius MS., we find only two lines instead of ll. 8921—8930:

For dred of the duke Berrarde.
Tho hit fell with me so harde.

This omission confirms the transposition we have made. For it is most easily accounted for by supposing that the scribe’s eyes erred from one harde to another. Cf. the foot-note to l. 7837.

8935. But sche hyed away on hur stede cannot be right. On hur stede, if taken = on her stead (place), does not make sense; on the other hand stede cannot be ‘steed,’ for ladies did not ride steeds. The Caius MS., p. 208, reads:

But she ys hyd in stronge stede.
On comparing the French:

Mes ele sen fuist en estrange terre,
we see that stronge is corrupted from strange, as very likely in l. 1493 (see the note). But whether sche hyed away or she ys hyd is the original reading I dare not decide. The former seems to be nearer the French, but who has a mind to defend the latter, may refer to l. 9777.

8936. whodur. See note to l. 8466.—so god me rede; cf. l. 7187.—In the Caius MS., p. 208, the line runs as follows:

But i not, vhere, so god me spede.

8944. go. See the note to l. 954.
8948. þen = then if. See note to l. 992.
8950. The same clerical error as in l. 843. Cf. the French:

A parent ne ad ami one ne parlai.

8960. in fere must mean 'in fear'; but on comparing the French:

Mon compaignon quere alai
E en Engleterre trouer le quidai,

with the Caius MS., p. 210:

Fer haue i sowght Gye, my trew fere,
In-Englond fer and nere,

we cannot doubt that the rhyme-word in l. 8969 originally was fere or yfere, companion. Perhaps the whole line was:

I have soght Gye, myn yfere.

8986. redde. See note to l. 4410.
8992. soberlye, gravely, seriously, but utterlye in the Caius MS., p. 210, seems to be nearer the French mult.
8995. beseyn, looked to, provided.
8996. in scarlet in greyne. The French has:

Sun cors que il nit ia si bien uestu.

Our MS. has a better reading here than the Caius MS., p. 210:

That were wonde to were scarlet and grene.

As to scarlet in greyne, i.e. scarlet dyed in grain, cf. Marsh's Lectures on the English Language, ed. Smith, pp. 54-62 and p. 64, and Skeat's Selections from Chaucer, note to B, 1917:

Hys rode is lyk scarlet in grayn.

9005. The scribe made here the same mistake as in ll. 8448 and 10933, but did not correct it here as he did there. This line and the next are wanting in the Caius MS., p. 212, but cf. the French:

Ce est la gute, dunt homme chet,
Le mal, ke homme del mund plus heet.

9018. Cf. the French:

Par la terre ai oi parler,
Ke nostre emperere Reiner
A Espire un conceil tendra.

The same name is corrupted in l. 9114.
NOTES, LINES 9023—9054. 431


Cf. the French: La est nun iur atermine.

9030. redde. See note to ll. 1199, 1200.

9031-2. The rhyme might be made perfect by reading a-eng (cf. I. 11049), but the obscurity of take þe wey fro þen excites a suspicion that the two lines are not preserved in their original form. Cf. the French:

Pur coe ne sai ieo, quei faire,
De auant aler ou de moi retraire,

and the Caius MS., p. 213:

Whether i wend to take my payne
Or i now turne ageyne.

9039. A tewar felowe, þen he was oon. Cf. Copland's Guy, II iiiii:

A richer burying, then she made one,
King ne duke had never none;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 3983-4:

Morgadour answerd anon,
Stalworþ kniht, as he was on;

ib. 5719-22:

In alle þe world is so swift a best,
Libard no re, in no forest,
No dromedarie no is per non
So swifþe goand, so is he on.

9043-4. Cf. the French:

Ja ne me doint deus manger,
Si nel uoise hastiument tenger,
Si le felIRC pusse trouer
E en eise of lui parler,
Si un coup ne li doins, etc.;

and the Caius MS., p. 212:

Hangid be i this like daye,
But i avenge hym, yf that i maye.
Myyght i spake with the duke at my will,
That of his dedys ys so yll,
But i reuyd hym hys lyfe, etc.

9054. The French runs as follows:

Le doiller mes ore rien ne uus ualt,
Lessez ester, si deu uus salt.
Si deu uus ad unl bien puruen,
Ja ne uus et pur homme tolu,
Ke uus nel aiez, asseur seiez.
Ceo dutl per quei demenez?
Enuers la court ore en alums, etc.

The Caius MS., p. 212, omits ll. 9053-4:

'Leve sir, be not sorye.
Hyt wyll the helpe nothyng
To make sorrow or mornynge.
Go we now the corte merehande, etc.

I do not know how to correct our text.
9055. *the co(u)rt* is evidently omitted before *nerchande*. Cf. the French and the reading of the Caius MS. quoted in the preceding note.

9085. *armyne* (cf. note to l. 8425). The French has:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Kant uit par mi sa bouche is sir} \\
\text{Vne hermine tote blanche.}
\end{align*}
\]

Cf. the Caius MS., p. 213:

\[
\text{As hit were a white ermyne.}
\]

The Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnbull), l. 8834:

\[
\text{Pan seije he an ermine com of his mouthe.}
\]

But cf. Copland’s Guy, Gg i:

\[
\text{Out of his mouth a whyte wesell ran.}
\]

Cf. Grimm's Mythology, p. 789: ‘*Aus entzuckten, schlafenden menschen entlaufl die seele in gestalt einer schlange, wiesel, maus.*’

9086. *wele and fyne*. The Caius MS., p. 213, has *be seynt Martyn* instead of it. *Fyne* as an adverb is ‘perfectly,’ ‘quite,’ ‘very.’ The adjective *fyn*, O.F. *fia*, is abbreviated from *finius*, ‘brought to an end, perfect.’ Stratmann should pot have mentioned M.H.G. *fin* and Icel. *fían* before O.F. *fia*, as the word is of Romance origin in all the Teutonic languages. The adverb *fyne* is not found either in Stratmann or in Halliwell, but it occurs, e. g., in Destruction of Troy, 7168:

\[
\text{Iche freike was fyn hole of þere fell hurttes,}
\]

Orfeo, ed. Laing, 56:

\[
\text{And hold hir þere fyns fast;}
\]

Meditations, ed. Cowper, 656:

\[
\text{And nayled þe touþer hand þer fyne faste.}
\]

The same phrase in Copland’s Guy, H iii:

\[
\text{I rede, we arme vs well and fyne,}
\]

This phrase is sometimes corrupted to *well afyne*. See Halliwell, s. v. *afyn*.

9089. *os* = *as*. See note to l. 4602. The Caius MS. *as*.

9114. ‘Let us set off to ask the way’; cf. spere, ll. 7362, 11373; *gate*, 376. But the French is to the following effect:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Ambdui puis leuez se sunt,} \\
\text{Enuers Espire ore sen uunt,}
\end{align*}
\]

‘Sire pelerin,’ ceo ad dit Gui, etc.,

Cf. the Caius MS., 214:

\[
\text{Toward Spire they tokyn the waye,}
\]

‘Pylgryme,’ quod Gye, ‘i red, we abyde,’ etc.,

which, being so near the French, has every claim to having been the very reading from which our text was corrupted.

9144. *of no tresure yf y noght*, ‘I do not care for any treasure.’ Cf. notes to ll. 1538 and 4459. The Caius MS., p. 215, has the synonymous verb *rech* = to reck:

\[
\text{That of tresoure rech i nowyt.}
\]

9155. *hardelye*. See note to l. 2691.
9162. as a man, that. Often the article is omitted; cf. ll. 7558, 8390, 8590, 9552.—coude of, understood, knew. Cf. Mätzner’s Gramm., II, 262.

9178. pur amoure = for charyte. See note to l. 471.

9188. Scham and skathe depends of course on men sey þere of yow, which is to be supplied from l. 9186. Cf. the French:

‘Sire,’ fait il, ‘ia le sauerez,
Kant uus sauere le uolez.
Malt dient de uus grant mal,
Ke par le conseil durn senescal
Le counte Terri desherite auez.’

9191. Cf. the French desherite auez. If we had not another MS. here, the double subject ye might be defended. See the note to ll. 2893-4.

9194. lorde is, of course, an erratum for londe.

9198. to geue à brayde = to start up. Cf. note to l. 10303, and Skogin’s Jests cited in Halliwell’s Dict., p. 204, s. v. braid: The woman...
gave a braid with her head. The Caius MS., p. 217, has:

He began vp to brayde.

9203-7. The corresponding lines in the Caius MS., p. 217, run thus:

He seyd: ‘thow lyest, false treytour:
I was never losynoure.
Yf hyt ne were for dyshonoure
Of my lord, the emeroure,
I shuld shake thy berd so sore, etc.

Cf. the French:

‘Pelerin,’ fait il, ‘uus i mentez,
Qui tant de moi mesdit auez.

Pur losengier ne fu une tenn.
Mes, si me ait deus e sa uertu,
Si ne fust deuant le empereur,
Ia te feisse tel deshonur, etc.

We clearly see that in our text a line is omitted after l. 9203, and another interpolated after l. 9205. Cf. the notes to ll. 1800-10 and 7837.

9206. schoure, fight, attack. Cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 69:

Sone there beganne a straunge shoure;

Destruction of Troy, 5804:

Sharpe was the shoure;

ib. 11048:

Thies hurlet on a hepe with a hard shoure;

William of Palerne, l. 4514:

And many a scharp schour for þi sake þoled;

Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 133, 519; 141, 779; 144, 907; 150, 130, etc. This use of ‘shower’ is Old Teutonic. Of course, a shower of missiles (and sometimes of blows) is meant. Cf. O.E. flána scúras, showers of arrows, Judith, 221; Elene, 117; iercucír, shower of swords, Beowulf, 3116. But the simple scúr appears in Judith, 79, secarpne méce, scúrum heardne, a sharp sword, hard in fights. Cf. the adjective scúrheard, Icel. þessi skúr leð skjott yfir cited by Vigfusson, s. v. skúr; Helian, WARWICK.
NOTES, LINES 9213—9427.

156, 21, *wuópnes eggjun, scarpun scûrin*; Hildebrandslied, 63-4, *askin scitan, scarpén scûrim*, and Müllenhoff's note.

9213. *Thys vii yere*. See note to l. 8607.

9217. Cf. the French:
   'Sire,' fait Gui, 'estes ceo uus?'

The Caius MS., p. 218, reads:
   'Sir,' quod Gye, 'yt ys yee?'

This is certainly nearer the original reading than our text.

9226. *Y take recorde of the kynge.* Cf. Lydgate's Story of Thebes (in Skeat's Specimens of Engl. Lit., III B), 1202:
   Record i take of worthy Tydeus.

9237. *-yf = if*, O.E. *gif*. See note to l. 7639. In the Caius MS., p. 218, l. 9233 is immediately followed by l. 9237:
   Ote i have herd, trewlye
   That thow were that ilke kny^t, etc.

But cf. the French:
   Ke cYPES nen out, tres bien le sai.
   La verite souten oi ai.'
   Lï dux resport, qui plein est de ire :
   'Kar plust a deu, nostre sire,
   Ke tu uassal itel fussez,
   Ke le counting Terri defendisses!'

9243. Cf. the French:
   Ke il de sa mort cypes ne aueit.

9244. We expect *a* instead of *pe*. But on comparing the Caius MS., p. 219:
   The false duke, that wyked glotoune
   with the French:
   de la mort le duc Otun,
   Le fel, li traitre, li glotun ;

we see that *That was* in our text is spurious, and after *fell* something is omitted. Perhaps the original reading was:
   *pe* felle traytowre and false gloton.

9285. *for godys love of myght.* See note to l. 503.

9341. *pedur = pedur, pere or pedur, as or pere as* (cf. 1143-4).

9351. *paytrelle*, 'The breastplate; the strap that crosses the breast of a horse,' Halliwell, s. v. *petrell*. Cf. The Flower and the Leaf, in Chaucer, ed Morris, IV, 95, 246-8:
   And every bosse of bridle and *paytrelle*,
   That had they, was worth, as i would wene,
   A thousand pound.

Cf. N.F. *poitrail*, Lat. *pectoralis*.

9384. *to helpe*. See note to l. 1925-6.

9412. *hongre = hungry*. See note to l. 132.

9427. *sight* cannot be defended by a reference to l. 11385. On the other hand, *l* and *f* are easily mistaken for each other. We find, e. g., in Pierce the Ploughman's Crede, l. 100, *wilen* in MS. A for *wifen*; in Orfeo, ed. Laing, l. 473, we find printed:
And sonde he sett on him a crie,
where the editor mistook loude in the MS. for fonde. Cf. the note to l. 9459.

9433. in pat stoure. Stoure seems to mean 'time' here as in a passage quoted from Greene's Works (II, 231) by Halliwell, s. v. stoure:

Whilom while Venus' son did seek a bower
To sport with Psyche, his desired dear,
He chose her chin, and from that happy stoure
He never stints in glory to appear.

But cf. the Caius MS., p. 225:

Anon he dyd klepe with honoure
Fowre barouns of gret valoure.
'Lordes,' quod the emperoure,
'Here hath bene an herd stoure.'

and the French:
Li emperere puis appella
Quatre dux, ou il se afa.

9459. a lofté bedde. The same expression occurs in l. 9591. The French word is chaïlir or chaïlît:

En un grant chaïlir de or fin.
Al chaïlît mistrent tuz lur mains (= l. 9462).
Le chaïlît en la mie lesserent (= l. 9464).
Ore unt le chaïlît en la mie mis (= l. 9467).

Chailir is N.F. chaïlît, 'bedstead,' but originally 'bed of state.' Cf. It. cataletto. In a glossary in the Bodleian Library (Cod. Bodl., 730, fol. 144) occurs 'hoc torreuma i. chaïlîd i. hefbed et grobatum idem.' It is clear that the French gloss must end in t and the English in d instead. Hefbed would be N.E.* heavebed, German *hebebett. But I find neither hefbed nor the synonymous lofted bed in any dictionary. In the Caius MS. lofted bed is corrupted in both passages in which it ought to occur. Cf. p. 226:

He was leyd in softe bed,
with the fault mentioned in the note to l. 9427, and p. 232.

I found a lofted a bed fletynge (= l. 9591).

The former corruption occurs also in Copland's Guy, Gg iii:
I a softe bed then slepte Guy.

9503. oght. See note to l. 7799.

9529. Barrardyne: pylgryme; cf. l. 9596, Barrardyne: wythynne, but Barrarde: harde, ll. 8921, 8929, 9333, 9401. The Auchinleck MS. also employs both forms: e. g. 9063, Berard: lipard; 9120, Berardine: Sarazine: fine: Costentine. Both versions follow the example of the French; cf.:

Par la traison del due Berard (= l. 9493),
Qui se combati a Berardin (= l. 9510).

The longer form is the diminutive of the shorter (cf. Diez, Gramm., II², 315), so that this change is different from that mentioned in note to l. 365. But it explains very well the double form of the name by which the author of the Omramulum calls himself. Cf. Preface 1:
NOTES, LINES 9531—9617.

\[\text{piss boc iss nemmnedd Ormulum,}\]
\[\text{Forrpi }\text{att Ormu }\text{tt wrohhte,}\]

but Dedication, 323-5:

\[\text{Iec wass }\text{h}e, \text{h}e\text{r i cristnedd wass,}\]
\[\text{Or} \text{rmun }\text{bi name nemmnedd.}\]
\[\text{Annd icer }\text{Ormun }\text{full innwarrdli, }\text{etc.}\]

Mützner, *Sprachproben*, I, 8, note to l. 324, asks: 'sollte an latinisierung des namens durch—inus zu denken sein?' But, if Latinized, the name would have been *Orrminus*. My opinion cannot be refuted by the assertion that there is no trace of French influence in the Ormulum. For this assertion, often as it has been repeated (cf. e. g. Mützner, II, I, p. 3, 'der noch von jeder romanischen beimisung freie dialect'), is erroneous. Kington Oliphant, Standard English, p. 93, is perfectly right in attributing to the Ormulum 'four or five French words.' Cf. *bikechen, cariteh, flavum* (note to l. 8705), *riime* (Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum und deutsche litteratur, II, p. 15), *serrfenn*, very probably *sorcvenn*, *turnenn* (O.E. *tyrann* would have become *tirnenn* in the Ormulum).

9531. The Caius MS., p. 230, reads:

The foure barouns soth gan wend.

Though *soth* is evidently a mistake for *forth*, yet *The* is certainly right. Cf. the French:

*Puis sunt li quatre dux alez.*

9533. *they* does not refer to the four barons, but means 'people,' 'one.' Cf. the French:

\[\text{Mes hon }\text{est demant venuz}\
\text{E dit ke li pelerin est perduz}\
\text{E le chailit, ou il mis fu,}\
\text{Ne sevem, ou il sunt deunuz.}\]

The Caius MS., p. 230, has two more lines between ll. 9532 and 9533:

\[\text{He commaundlyd at that tyme}\
\text{To bring forth that pylgryme.}\]

But as they are quite unnecessary (cf. l. 9530) and there is nothing like them in the French, we must consider them to be spurious.

9536. The reading of the Caius MS. is confirmed by l. 9542. But our author departed in this from the French original, which does not mention any such thing. Cf. the preceding note.

9562 *schal of.* See the note to ll. 855-6.

9565. *vynde.* See note to l. 3872.

9566. *hardelye.* See note to l. 2691.

9591. *a lofte bedde.* See note to l. 9459.

9617. *repulde = replid,* in the Caius MS., p. 233:

\[\text{He replid hys face and hys chyn.}\]

It is N.E. *ripple*, which in the North has still retained the sense required here. Cf. the first of the Glossaries reprinted for the Dialect Society: *'Ripple, v. to scratch.'* Archbishop Trench, in his 'Select Glossary,'
s. v. *ripple*, refers to a Glossary of Yorkshire Words and Phrases (1855), p. 140: ‘To ripple, to scratch slightly as with a pin upon the skin,’ and cites from Holland’s *Ammianus*, p. 264: *On a sudden an horseman’s javelin, having slightly rippleth the skin of his left arm,* etc. Koch, Graunm., III 1, 2, p. 167, errs in taking N.E. *ripple* (which he erroneously understands to mean ‘to gurgle,’ *plätschern*) to be onomatopoetic. It is the German *riffeln*, to ripple flax, spelt also erroneously *räßeln*, in the figurative sense of rebuking. Cf. M.H.G. *riffelen*, *rifelen*; O.H.G. *rijflu̇n*, vellere, serrare; O.H.G. *ripta*, rostrum serrans; M.H.G. *rifel*, *rifel*; N.H.G. *rifel*, ripple, flax-comb. Cf. also the Flemish *ryffelen*, to scratch, and Diez, *Wörterbuch*, I, s. v. *ripta*. The word is akin to German *raffen.*—The corresponding lines of the French run thus:

La face li *rast* e le mentun
E tut le peil del destre gernun.

9618. *ryght* is omitted before *cheke.* Cf. the French in the preceding line (though there is made no mention of the cheek, *gernun* being ‘moustache’ and ‘beard on the chin,’ and *peil = pilus*, not = *pellis*) and the Caius MS.:

And of hys *ryght* cheke all the skyn.

9620. *vnryde.* See note to l. 1647.

9622. *Os = as.* See note to l. 4602.

9625. *as sparke of fyre.* Cf. the note to Havelok, ed. Skeat, l. 91.

9629. Barrarde has two helmets (cf. l. 9365). Guy’s stroke damages both. *‘Of hys odur helme’* depends on *‘a quartere.’* Cf. the French:

*Vn quarter en fist noler*
*E del halme plat tut ensement.*

Of the two helmets *‘li un ... ert plat, li autre agu.’*


9634. *vythouven othe.* Cf. note to l. 10862.

9651-2. After Guy’s speech the French goes on:

*Sur le cors se est il dunc repose.*
*Ceo dient cil de la cite :*
*‘Cest hom est uerraimeant faie.*
*Tel coup ne fu une mes done,*
*Puis ke le mund fu estore’*

The Caius MS., p. 234, reads:

*By the cors he reste a whyle,*
*Well the mountanaunce of a myle,*
*All, that abowte gan stond,*
*Seyd, he was a knȳt of fer land.*

As to *mountanaunce* cf. the note to ll. 5229-30, as to *m. of a myle* that to l. 2810; *fer* is an obvious mistake for *feiry, fairy* (cf. *faie* in the French). It is clear that in our text two lines are omitted before 9651, and, besides, ll. 9652-3 much corrupted by a scribe, who referred them to Barrarde instead of to Guy.
9656. Cf. the French:

Lesguard de sa court ad demande,
Si Terri doet estre quites clame.

The reading of the Caius MS., p. 234:

And askyd, yf Terry shuld be quyte
Of all perell and all dyspyte,

is, at least, without fault, although it must remain uncertain whether the original words of the translator are preserved.

9658. The Caius MS., p. 234, has the same inaccuracy:

Yea, be hym, that dyed on cross,
and it occurs also in Copland’s Guy, I i:

In his forehead Guy made a crosse
And sterte on steede with that voyce.

But cf. croiye: voice (i.e. voice) in Morris’s Specimens, II, vii, 47-8; vois: croys, Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 235, 106-108, etc.

9661. also tyte, very quickly. See note to l. 1343.

9687. or y etc mete. See note to l. 3695.

9700. councele seems to be a mistake for soule. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 236:

Qf hys soule can i no rede,

i.e. I do not know how to help his soul. Cf. note to ll. 1199, 1200.

The corresponding French line runs as follows:

Desuz la uile git sun cors.

9701. hardelye = hardylye. Cf. note to l. 2691.

9709. The punctuation is doubtful here. Cf. the French:

En grant dolur ai multe este:
An e demi ai ia erre,
Ke une un iur ne reposai, etc.;

the Caius MS., p. 236:

I haue bene in sorrow stronge
Yere and halfe (me thynketh longe),
That i had neuer reste on daye, etc.

9719-21. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 237:

Now herd i seye, that a pylgryme
(Have he goddys benyson and myne),
He hath the duke Berard schent;

and the French:

Ore oi dire he vn pelerin
(A qui deu doiut bone fin)
Le fel duc Berard ad occis.

9781—9792. These twelve lines occur also in the Caius MS., p. 239, but neither in the French (in the Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS., at least), nor in the Auchinleck MS., nor in Copland’s version.

9792. wyth the remlauent = with that other, Caius MS., 239. Remlauent is a corruption of remnauent, remenauent = remnant, remainder. Halliwell, s.v., cites only this passage, but cf. also his articles Remelant
(where he mentions the Northern remling) and Remlet.—store = astore in the Caius MS. = O.F. estorer, Lat. instaurare. Cf. note to l. 576.

9814. some dele, a great deal, much, very well. Cf. Ae. Leg., ed. Horstmann, 66, 45 = 67, 45:

Somdel hem longede þo;

Morris’s Specimens, I, Ia, 163-4:

þe bataile ilaste strong
Vorte it was heid midouernon, and þat was somdel long.

ib. 467: þo king Willam hurde þis, he made him somdel wroþ.

M.H.G. ein teil is used with the same force. Cf. e. g. Nibelunge Nót (ed. Lachmann), 438:

Zuo ir ingesinde ein teil si lûte sprach.

This use is called ironical by M.H.G. scholars, but I have pointed out in ‘Einführung in das studium des mhd.’ 12, 4 (p. 62 of the second edition), that this denomination is wrong, and I prefer calling it ‘litotetical, since ‘more is meant than meets the ear.’ In such litotetical sense ‘little’ means ‘nothing’ (cf. 4558, 7221, 11761), ‘a little’ means ‘much’ (11026), ‘enough’ means ‘too,’ ‘very much’ (cf. 10278, and Morris’s Spec., II, Ia, 501:

Er he ssolde þat abbe ydo; for it was þo late ynow)

and the like.

9827. soyorned. See the note to l. 133.

9847. yow. See the note to l. 4192. But cf. the Caius MS., p. 241:

But hyt were ye, leve sir Gye.

9854. Cf. the French:

E les jambes decreues,
Ke tant soleient estre bien chaleees.

9882. Whome = home. See note to l. 3422.

9902. Hyl. Cf. note to l. 1051.

9906. amonge. Cf. note to l. 2301.

9913 read to Whytesande. Wissant near Calais is meant. Cf. Two Saxon Chronicles, ed. Earle, p. 231: on þisum geare [i. e. 1095] wës se cyng on Hwitsand.

9914. ryued. See note to l. 4244.

9919. bede, to order, O.E. beódan. See note to l. 2703.

9938. to stroye. See note to l. 1925-6.

9952. Wherethorow, MS. only Where; but cf. l. 10015.

9959. Or seems spurious. Perhaps the scribe took it by a mistake from l. 9966. Cf. the French:

E si il iceo ne uoille grantor,
Dunc troisse tost un chualer.

9983. In the French there are four lines in which Guy asks and is answered about Earl Roholde. Cf. the Caius MS., p. 246:

‘Where ys;’ he seyd, ‘the erle Roholde,
A dowȝty knyȝt and a bolde?’
NOTES, LINES 9992—10135.

'Sir,' he seyde, 'par ma faye,
He ys dede full many a daye.'

9992. verraye = verylye, 2644, 3580, 4064, 4832, 8359, 9219, 9788 = veramcnt, 3920, 5291.

10010. fendys sone. Cf. Kindheit Jesu, ed. Horstmann (Leg.), 317-19:

Jesus him seide with hastiue wille
'A, pou feonde sone of helle,
3wi hast pou tobroke mi lay?'

ib. 417-18:
Jhesus, withoute more to telle,
Cleopede him pe feondes sone of helle;
cf. ib. 849:
I not, swat deuel hine bigat.

10021. I think it improbable that the means they (cf. the note to l. 1849); for the hostilities mentioned in ll. 10021-2 are no less only-anticipated than those in ll. 10019-20. We might simply omit The, but I rather think it corrupted from to. Cf. the note to ll. 1925-6.

10031. fyrste; MS. fyrste, spoiling the rhyme in the same way as in l. 6682.

10040. the halfen dele. See note to l. 5916.

10075. And seyde, viz. the angel. See note to l. 10.

10078. Take pou the redy waye. Cf. Generydes, ed. A. Wright, l. 604:
To ther logging they take the redy waye:

ib. 644:
To the sawdon they take pe redy waye;

ib. 3273:
To his chamber he take the redy waye.

Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10306:
To bid pe make pe redi waye.

The redy waye = pe graith gate, on which see Skeat's note to Piers the Pl. (Clarendon Press), Pass. ii, 103.

10104. tary, detain. It is O.E. tergan, tyrgan, but may be influenced by O.F. targer, *tardicare. See Skeat's Glossary to Select. from Chaucer.

10112. Lese is here not O.E. (for)léosan, to lose, but O.E. liésan, lésan, lýsan, to deliver (Germ. lösen). Cf. the French:
Ke par le cors de un cheualer
Deis la ma terre desréiner
Enuers un sedne Colebraunt,

10117-18. Thou . . . pou in the same sentence. Cf. note to l.l. 2893-4:

10119-21. See note to ll. 4921-4.

10135. Who was gladde, but Adelston? Such rhetoric questions are common enough in M.E. poetry. Cf. Generydes, ed. Wright, 848-9:
Now who was gladde and who was well apayde
And endly mery, but Generydes?

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 45, 596-7:
Who feleth double sorwe and hevyнесse,
But Palamon?
ib. p. 58, 1012-13:
Who loketh lightly now, but Palomoun?
Who spryngeth up for joye, but Arcite?

ib. p. 115, 559-61:
Who rubbith now, who froteth now his lippes . . .,
But Absolon?

ib. p. 339, 711:
Who studieth now, but faire freisshe May?

ib. p. 353, 1166:
This January, who is glad, but he?

etc., etc.

10140. delowyry seems here to mean 'to dispatch.' Cf. Morte Arthure, ed. Brock, 2081:
'Me lykez wele,' sais sir Loth, '3one lordez are delowyred.'

10141—10164. There is nothing like this passage either in the French work (at least, in the Corpus Christi College, Cambridge, MS.) or in any other M.E. version.

10143. By restoring the form which is etymologically the most correct (Lat. armatura = O.F. arméure = O.E. armêtre, armetere) we get a perfect rhyme here as well as in l. 10853.

10146. In peyne = upon pain ; cf. l. 10204, in peyne of renayenge of hys laye.

10164. peyred. See note to l. 7993.

10165. nommen, appointed. Cf. tane in l. 5742 (see the note), Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 1180-1:
Tyll the day of bataylle was kommen,
That they had before nomen ;
and a passage cited from the same MS. in Halliwell's Dict., s. v. nome.
After this the day was nomyn,
That the batelle on schulde comyn.

10175. I cannot conceive how the scribe understood sayle, by which he spoiled the rhyme. But it cannot be doubted that this word supplanted nasel. Cf. the French:
Al frunt a munt en som le nasel
Out un charbucle assis tant bel.

O.F. nasel = Mediaeval Latin nasale, nasile, 'pars cassidis demissa, quae nasum tegit' Ducange. In English nasel seems not to have been very common, since it is wanting both in Stratmann and Halliwell. But it occurs pretty often in Guy, ed. Turnbull; cf. II. 2061-2:

l. 4911:
His hauberk was al totore
And his nasel anaed before ;

l. 4990:
Bi þe nasel he tok Gij ;

l. 5029:
And sij þe he tok him bi þe naselle ;

l. 8173:
Bi þe nasel it gan doun founde ;

l. 9385:
Þe nasel he carf atvo.
10196. Cf. the French:

Susanna socurrustes uers les feluns,
Qui occire la noelicent par trasums.

10204. *In preyne.* Cf. note to l. 10146. *Of renayenge of hys laye* =
of abjuring his faith. Cf. e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 181, 278-9:

And seyd him, that sche wolde *reney hir lay*
And cristendam of prestes handes fonge.

There is nothing like this line either in the French or in the other M.E.
versions.

10205. *to clayme.* See note to ll. 1925-6.

10206. *whome.* See note to l. 3422.

10211-12. *That . . . that.* Such a repetition of the conjunction *that*
is not uncommon. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, ll. 6853-6:

Gij him perceyued in *hat stounde,*
*hat* neuer more *purh wepen ygrounde*
*hat* fram *he nauel vpward so*
No *sloq* him man *neuer mo ;

Copland's Guy, Q i :

For he well wist for certaynly,
*That,* who so went to the soudan,
*That* in haste he should him slone;

Holy Grail, ed. Furnivall, 105, 127-9:

So thanne it happed, as i telle now the,
*That owte of Miaux, that cite,*
*That* tweyne maydenes chose weren, for sothe ;

ib. 110, 293: And *that thy man that i moot be ;*

Morris's Specimens, II, Ia, 118-20:

*Ne ssame je neqt, hat Harald, hat euer was of luıp wrencche,*
And biuore *you* was worswor, *hat* he wolde mid is talie
Turne is wombe toward vs and is face in bataile?

Chaucer, ed. Morris, II, 68, 1337-8:

*That yit men wene, that no mannnes wyt*
Of non estat *that cowde amende it ;*

Generydes, ed. Wright, 146-7:

*Hyre chere, hyr porte, it was in soche a wyse,*
That *more goodly that cowde noman devise.*

In l. 146 the MS. and the Editor read *sothe awysse,* which I think does
not make sense.—Cf. note to l. 6840 and Mätzner's Gramm., III2, 421.

10215. *zolde,* infinitive, O.E. *gieklan, gyldan.* Cf. *zulden, zulde,* in
Stratmann, s. v. *zelden.*

10224. Cf. the French:

*A pie tut dis se combateit,*
*En bataile chiual ne quereit.*

kepte noght, did not care. Cf. note to l. 319.

10235. I am inclined to suppose that some participle past is omitted
after *were.*
10243-8. There is no verb in this sentence, perhaps only by a mistake of the scribe.

10245-6. Rather smyten: byten? Does smyte here mean 'to stud'? Cf. the German 'beschlagen.'

10253-4. prykkeþ: flyeth, a very unsatisfactory rhyme if it be a rhyme at all. I think it probable that the two lines originally ran thus:

Hys hors wyth the spurres he pryghte
(That ranne as faste, as fowle in flyghte).

The preterit pryghte (from priken, O.E. prician, Ælfric's Grammar, ed. Somner, p. 32) occurs in the rhyme, e.g., in Skeat's Chaucer, 117, 418, rhyming with skryghte, in Morris's O.E. Homilies, II, 257, 53, rhyming with diȝte, miȝte, riȝte. As for fowle in flyghte cf. l. 5804 of our poem:

Lyon nor swalowe nor fowle in flyght.

10260. porow . . . hyt schould, viz. go, get. Cf. l. 10300 and note to ll. 855-6.

10266. hote, quickly. See note to l. 1049.

10275. they, an erratum for then.

10278. ynowe, very much. See note to l. 9814.

10282. For cannot be right. Cf. the French (Reg. MS., 8, F ix):

Mos Gui tant haut ne pust ateyndre.

Cf. l. 10284.

10290. tamedde. Tame for attame or entame (cf. note to l. 576). But even entame = F. entamer is derived from Latin attaminare, to violate. As to attame see Mätzner's Wörterbuch, p. 131. Entame occurs, e.g., in Chaucer's A B C (ed. Morris, V, 81), K:

Lat not my foo no more my wounde entame.

Halliwell cites a dialectical tame, 'to cut,' 'divide.' It means 'to broach' in the Chester Plays, I, 124 (cited by Halliwell, p. 849):

Now to weete our mouthes tyme were.

This flagette will i tame, yf thou reade us.

In our passage tamedde means also 'broached,' but in a figurative sense.

10299. os = as. See the note to l. 4602.

10303. wyth the vpbrayde = wip þe ouatbraiding in the Auchinleck MS. (ed. Turnbull, l. 10045) = as he drew his sword oȝyme in the Caius MS., p. 257. Upbraid generally means 'reproach' (cf. l. 11849). But here braid (O.E. bræyd) is used in its original meaning of 'quick motion' (cf. note to l. 9198); hence vpbrayde, 'quick upward motion,' or 'up-stroke,' as Halliwell explains it.

10314. wyth that, on condition that, in case that; cf. ll. 10399, 11830. But in l. 10870 the conjunction seems to have another meaning. See the note.

10318. lyppynge. See the note to l. 2022.

10329-32 render two French lines which run thus:

Armes a grant plente auez,
Dune une partie me presterez.
It is clear that l. 10329 must mean the same as l. 10331. But as gode oon makes no sense, we must suppose that it is corrupted from some expression synonymous with grete plente. To get such a one we need but add w. Cf. l. 11098:

And sende hym strokys gode won.

Won may be used with of or without it (cf. the note to l. 7173). Cf. e. g. Chaucer, ed. Morris, V, 169, l. 475:

I have of sorwe so grete won.

In our passage the scribe, seeing won in the MS. from which he copied, perhaps mistook it for that woon, won, of which we have treated in the note to l. 7927, and hence spelled it oon. In Zeitschrift für die österreichischen gymnasien, 1875, p. 131, I have shown that wön, wän, plenty, etc., cannot be derived from O.E. wīnan, N.E. win. Nor do I think that it is merely varied from Sc. quhoyn, a few (A.S. hwéne, a little), which was afterwards extended to the notion of an indefinite number, a ‘lot,’ a quantity’ (cf. Morris’s Specimens, II, gloss., s. v. vone). Not to mention difficulties as to the significiation, I think it impossible that Scotch ō, oy (e. g. he had to quhine in his company; O.E. hwön, hwéne, hwéne; cf. Mätzner’s note to Sprachproben, I, 385, 730) should have become a in Northern M.E. and Early Southern M.E. (cf. Mätzner’s note to Sprachproben, I, 326, l. 93, and Stratmann, s. v. especially waneles, cited from Marharete, 11, 21). L. c. I have proposed an etymology which seems to me pretty probable. Having the forms wän, wön (wane, won), we must start from wän. Now we find in Icel. ván etymologically = O.E. wón, M.E. wone. But Icel. ván does not only mean ‘hope, expectation,’ but is also used in such instances as that cited by Vigfússson, p. 684 b, pá er allar vánir vóru rannsakaSir = all places where it could be expected to be found. Hence the significiation ‘chance’ that wän, wön, often has in M.E. is quite natural. Now nobody that remembers Latin copia, plenty, opportunity, chance, or knows the American a smart chance (of cigars, of snow, etc.), will be surprised that gode or grete won (wan) means ‘plenty.’

10337. brayton must mean ‘fool.’ Cf. the French:

Mult freie, com mal bríkan,
Si arnes te baillasse a bandon;

brícan, nominative originally brícs (= O.E. bríca, from brecan, to break), rascal, fool. But brayton is not to be found in any dictionary.

10347. skypte: smete is no rhyme. Schete = O.E. secút, ‘shot,’ in an intransitive sense (cf. shooting-star) as it is used, e. g., in l. 10219.

10353. of of. See the note to l. 2906.

10367. The kyng . . . was . . . woo. See the note to l. 1251.

10368. hys odur folke. See note to l. 559.

10376. precession; cf. precessione, l. 6963, and Copland’s Guy, II ii, the priestes and clarkes met him with precessyon.
10382. *in what lande... in.* The first *in* is the preposition, the other the adverb (cf. note to l. 2906). Cf. Chaucer, C. T. Prose., 41:

> And eek, *in what array that they were inne.*

See also Abbott’s Shaksp. Gramm., 407.

10395. *That of course depends on mercy in l. 10391.*

10399. *injth... that.* See note to l. 10314.

10414. The omission of *ye* can hardly be justified by a reference to l. 1591 or the note to l. 10.

10444. The French (MS. Reg.) has nothing corresponding:

> Dengleterre tute la meyte
> Vous doyns ore hui cast iour.

But we expect that Guy is desired to tell himself what reward he wishes.

10477. *sonde* means what is sent: 1. message, ll. 6009, 6047, 10019, 10705 (*sond* messanger is a different word); 2. what is sent from the kitchen, dish; e.g. Gen. and Exod., ed. Morris, 2295-6:

> Of euerile *sonde*, of euerile win
> Most and best he gat Benjamin.

Cf. Lat. *ferculum*; N.E. *mess*, O.F. *mes*, N.F. *mets* = Lat. *missum*; 3. gift that has been sent, but often ‘present’ in a general sense; e.g. *Legenden*, ed. Horstmann, p. 3, 25-6:

> Derafter *pre kinges of vncoube londe*
> To *fat childe brouhten heore *sonde.*

4. what is sent by God, ‘godsend,’ grace, mercy; e.g. William of Palerne, 63-4:

> oft Crist *þonkes,*
> *pat hadde him sent þo *sonde* swiche prey to finde;

Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8888:

> ‘Lord,’ seyd sir Gij, ‘y *þanke þi *sond*;

ib. 9450 and 10115:

> *purch grace of godes sond."

Of course, the last signification takes place here.

10487. *curtes* seems to be out of place here. Cf. the French:

> La *contesse* Felice i estoit.

10504. *vythowten noo.* See note to l. 3054.

10512. *fayre* = *fare*; see note to l. 3070. ‘He took food to the pilgrim.’

10520. Cf. note to ll. 2893-4.

10531. I have altered *was to wes* also in ll. 10696 and 10752.

10532. *dredeles.* See note to l. 3739.

10550. *nere* = *ne'er*, never. Cf. l. 10716.

10552. so in a relative sense = *as,* perhaps also l. 11117. Cf. the note to l. 615.
10583. MS. Thys halfe ryngue; halfe evidently has crept in from the next line. Cf. ll. 10588, 10617, etc., and the French:

C'est anet lui aporter ez.

10586-7. There is no predicate to the subject pe same pylvryme. This anacoluthon is owing to And sey to hur being repeated.

10590. MS. schewe. See note to 1. 807.

10593. MS. moest. The scribe was going to write most, but after having written mo, saw that the rhyme required mest: so he added est, but forgot to expunge o. Cf. l. 10614. The superlative mest (meste) occurs in the rhyme, ll. 6824 and 10639, but in the latter line it was perhaps most originally.

10597. And pat peere pou longe ne dwelle as if Y prey pe, or something to the same effect, preceded. Cf. Mätzner's Gramm., III, p. 430.

10601. for seynt Charyte. See note to l. 7154.


10618. in presente. See note to l. 7904.

10620. An aposiopesis.

10624-5. See note to l. 2645.

10626. heyle. See note to l. 3070.

10631. MS. lyeth. But cf. the French:

Ou il se maint en la hermitage,

and the Caius MS., p. 264:

Now nonnyth he ther in that forest
And leuyth, as a wyld beste.

The scribe's eyes perhaps wandered to l. 10634. But cf. the same fault in l. 2268.

10633. That he be beryed. Guy wanted to be buried in the hermitage, and Felice learnt that from his messenger; see l. 10705. The corresponding passage in the French work runs as follows:

De par li uus faz ceo message,
Ke enterrer vieuez son cors
En le hermitage, ou il est mortz,
E ke dilek nel facez porter,
Mee la le facez enterrer.

It is difficult to decide whether the author was inaccurate or a scribe has corrupted this passage.

10637. to = too, also, moreover. Cf. ll. 10996, 11099, and 11549. Stratmann quotes only William, 19, as showing to with this signification. But cf. also Meditations, ed. Cowper, 361-2:

pe same orysun, pat he preyd before
He preyd now and ded to more,

where Cowper is wrong in explaining to as 'two or twice' (cf. Anzeiger für deutsches alterthum, etc., I, p. 124); Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 126:

Whan they had ete and dronke to;
Arthur, ed. Furnivall, 357:
And þut ferþermore to;

ib. 532:
Seyþ a Paternoster more to;

Chaucer, ed. Morris, IV, 130, 540-1:
This words and ful many another to
He spak.

We find this employment of to as early as O.E. Cf. (Cædmon’s) Genesis, 1223-4:
nigonhund wintra
and hundseofontig tó.

10639. Perhaps mast. See note to l. 10593.

10644. ‘Nobody may be a looker (spectator) more sorrowful ’ (than Felice), is very strange. Perhaps the passage is corrupt. Cf. the French (Codex Reg.):
Mult durement sen ioy,
Qe leurerit sun seignur,
E de autre part en ad dolur,
Qle moryr lui urreyt:
Pur ceo estrange deol feseit.

10653-4 are very likely to be spurious. Neither the French (at least the Cambridge and the Royal MSS.) nor the other English versions have anything like them. Nor have we any reason to think the translator himself so stupid as to add such an absurdity.

10662. as sche standys. Cf. notes to ll. 4062 and 1535.

10674. amonge. Cf. note to l. 2301.

10675. The same fault in l. 76.

10680. the rynges, rings of mail. Cf. Havelok, 2739-41:
Pat he dide ûndo undo
Of his brinie rings mo,
Den ûndo ich kan tellen fro.

10687. As and, as if.

10690. Swete and swote. The two different forms of the same word joined by and occur also St Marharete, p. 11:
Swotest and sweetest alre schefte schuppent;

Ancren Riwle, p. 102:
Unime swote and swete;
ib. p. 398: Nam ich alre þinge swotest and sweetest?

To these examples collected by Mätzner, Sprachproben, II, 23, 20, add Wright, Spec. of Lyric Poetry, p. 54:
Ant bisecheth that swete and swote.

10695. wythouten lees. See note to l. 550.

10696. wes. See note to l. 10531.

10697. dyzt, carried. Cf. note to l. 4350.

10707. through coffin = sarku in the French. It is O.E. þrûh, e.g. in Ælfric’s Glossary: ‘Mausoleum þrûh (one MS. þrûh) oððe ofergeweorc
Sarcofagum 

Elltmiller and Stratmann give the word a short vowel, but u must be long if I am right in identifying it with O.H.G. 

Ettmüller and Stratmann give the word a short vowel, but u must be long if I am right in identifying it with O.H.G. and especially steinpró, stone-coffin. The word is yet preserved in the Scotch and Northern through-stane. But though Ic. pró means 'trough,' yet N.E. trough = O.E., Icel., German 
ró and Jíra^r, treu; and especially stemlprú, stone-coffin. The word is yet preserved in the Scotch and Northern through-stane. But though Ic. pró means 'trough,' yet N.E. trough = O.E., Icel., German 
ró and Jíra^r, treu; and especially stemlprú, stone-coffin. The word is yet preserved in the Scotch and Northern through-stane. But though Ic. pró means 'trough,' yet N.E. trough = O.E., Icel., German 

10709. Thretty masses called trental. Cf. Halliwell, s. v., and Trentalle of St Gregory in The Visions of Tundale, ed. Turnbull, pp. 77-83.

10710. 
type=

10716. 

10718. to serve wolde. See note to 1. 1925-6.

10730. The scribe made the same mistake here as he corrected in 1. 11. Cf. 

10733. rede, tell. See note to 1. 313.

10734. ys = are. See note to 1. 3194.

10738. in oon, in one, together. Cf. M.H.G. enein, enein, and note to 1. 5308.

10749-50. Do these lines mean 'Listen to what I am going to tell you about Tyrry's noise (lamenting),' or, 'Don't make any noise, but listen to what I tell you about Tyrry'? I should prefer the latter if I were able to point out a parallel passage. But cf. in the mean time Copland's Guy, G iii: 

10751. 

10752. wes. Cf. note to 1. 10531.

10754. ys = are. See note to 1. 3194.

10757. lohodur. Cf. note to 1. 8466.

10775. for hys wyfe, 'for his wife's.' See note to 1. 688.

10780. and owres alsoo is added, as if god schylde did not depend on prey, 1. 10779.

10786. The French has nothing like 11. 10779—10786. The last line is a little strange after what precedes. Perhaps the passage has been tampered with, if not entirely added, by a scribe.

10791. besemyld, fitted out, provided for. Cf. Ippomedon (ed. Weber, Rom. 2, 294), ll. 352-3:
There was non in all hir land
So were besemyd, doughty of hand;

Tryamoure, ed. Halliwell, 718-20:

Ther was no prync that day in felde,
That was so semely undur schylde,
Nor better besemyd a knyght.

10794. The French does not suggest any explanation or emendation of the reading of the MS. As to forthykyth see note to l. 984.

10795. The subject he is omitted either because hym precedes, or because l. 10794 is parenthetical.

10803. >ere he stode. Cf. note to 1. 1535.
10804. vndurşode. Cf. note to l. 8231.
10809 and 10845. aplayght. Cf. note to l. 8541.

10837. he was hymselfe knowe, he had acknowledged (confessed) himself. Several instances in which the participle has the prefix i, are collected by Mätzner in his note to Sprachproben, I, 223, l. 983. In his Wörterbuch, p. 440-1, he has no example of the simple participle. But cf. Copland’s Guy, M iii:

‘I am knowen,’ sayd Segwyn,
‘That i myselfe slough thy cosyn’;

and Joseph of Arimathie, ed. Skeat, l. 665:

He is so feol in himself, for no þing be known.

Skeat’s text has be-knowne, which he in the glossary explains to mean ‘to confess,’ adding ‘Unless it is two words.’ I think it is, but it must mean ‘confess,’ ‘own,’ notwithstanding.

10853. MS. armoure. See note to l. 10143.
10856. hawde for hawde, Herawde, the older spelling of the name.

10862. I think wythowte was the original reading. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 8858-60:

In þe hilt was mani precious ston:
As bryt, as ani sonne, it schon,
Wyþowten of ysworm;

Reinbrow, ed. Turnbull, 1015-16:

Ich telle þe a soþe word,
Wyþowte of iswore.

Cf. besides in our poen, l. 31, wyþowten othes; l. 5664, wyþowte othe; l. 9634,wyþowten othe; l. 6787,wyþowte othyng; Guy, in the Caius MS., p.2:

Of clothes of golde and of syluer bothe,
Riche of golde and of syluer bothe, withoute othe;

Copland’s Guy, M iii:

Of he did, withouten othes,
His weede, saue his lynnen clothes;

King Horn, 347-8: panne wolde, wiþuten oþe,
Þe kyng maken us wroþe;

Seven Sages, ed. Weber, 2293:

He went him doun, wiþuten oþ;
Kindheit Jesu, ed. Horstmann (Legenden), 1595:
And he aros up, withouten oth;
Cobsam’s Chaste Wife, 328-9:
He sayd: ‘felowe, wythouten oth,
For o erand we come bothe.’
This expletive generally means the same as Generydes, ed. Wright, 186:
That i shall sey, lere me withoute othe.

10868. be halifen dell. See note to l. 5916.
10870. wyth pat seems to denote here, not a condition, as in the instances quoted in the note to l. 10314, but an intention. Cf. wip pan in Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10230-5:

For þritten pouer men and þete mo
For hir lordes loue, sche loued so,
Ich day sche gan fede,
Wip þan god and our leuedi
Schuld sane hir lord sir Giij,
i. e. in order that god might save. Wit þat seems to be used in the same sense in Havelok, 19-20:

And, wit þat it note ben so,
Benedicamus domino!
Cf. Zeitschrift für die österr. gymn. 1874, p. 596.

10875. I have inserted bad as graype in l. 10876, being an infinitive, shows that schredde and dyzt must be infinitives too. Cf. the French:
Riche dras li fait liuerer.

10881. We may read even reame, which form occurs in Myrc’s Instructions, l. 719:

Agen þe king or the reame,
and in Destruction of Troy, 221:

Whyle you rixlis in this reame, no riot we drede.

10911. MS. dud bestryte. But bestryte cannot possibly be the infinitive. Omitting dud, we get bestryte = bestryt = bestrideth.

10915. comen, viz. Harrawde and his companions. Cf. note to l. 5672.

10919. Cf. the French:

Multz i eurent healmes aguz.

10926. folæ is an erratum for folæ. As to folæ hote cf. note to l. 1049.

10938. Nor more seryd, as if no sersyne was ever hardyar preceded.

10945. onyr ygoo. Cf. the French:

Li conestable est outre passe.

10996. bothe is often used even when more than two substantives are copulated by and. Cf. Tyrwhitt’s Glossary to Chaucer, s. v., and Mätzner’s Gramm., III2, 362. M.H.G. beidliu . . . and is used in the same way.—too; cf. note to l. 10637.

11020. a lytull, ‘much.’ Cf. note to l. 9814.

11021 and 11025. bede. See note to l. 2703.
11024. *he*, viz. the Amiral (l. 11022). *Les* = O.E. *(for)leás* is the strong preterit of *lese* *(forleósun)*, l. 11023. Cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, l. 568:

\[\text{Þat Heraud wan, Þanne les he.}\]

11026. *ledê*, people, country = O.E. *leóð*, whereas *lady*s, men, in 11798, is O.E. *lêðê* (German *leute*).

11038. Cf. the French:

Sun enseingne en haut l’oria.

11046. *wo he ys*. See note to l. 1251.

11053. *aspye*. Cf. l. 11077 and note to l. 3880.

11068. *fenne* = ^fine.

11075. The rhyme is certainly corrupt. One might think of reading:

Homewarde he faste fleth, but the French:

Li reis Arguzfiant sen nait

shows that *fleyng goyth*, upon the whole, must be right. Koch’s assertion, Gramm., I, 324, on the other hand, that *gep* does not occur after Layamon is erroneous; cf. Guy, ed. Turnbull, 10086, *gep* : *sep* : *dep* : *teþ*; Reinbroun, 621, *gep* : *dep*. The latest instance cited by Stratmann is from Torrent of Portugal, ll. 2141-3:

Thys ys the lond of Nazareth :
Se where the kyng gethe,
Of speche he is full bone.

11082. Cf. the French:

Ia le eust ateint ou mort ou pris
E en bataille conquis.

11084. *þe todur* = the others. Cf. note to l. 658.

11085. MS. *Then*. See the note to l. 6761.

11089. *forkoryd* = grown very hoary, gray. It is the participle of another *forhoren* than that mentioned in Stratmann. Cf. l. 11803 and the French:

Dan vielhard, ne alez auant.

11093. *or thou goo*. See note to l. 8239.

11098. *won*. See note to l. 10329.

11099. *to* = too, also. See note to l. 10637.

11102. *wythowe drely$s* See note to l. 3739.

11117. *so* = as? See note to l. 10552.


```
For þow eHT old and whit iHblowe;
```

```
hore yblowe, Guy, ed. Turnb., 6427 :
```

```
An hore yblowe kniHT he seye;
```

```
berd blowe (yblowe), ib. 3035 :
```

```
Tristor he het wip þe berd blowe;
```

and 4736 :

```
Wip whitehore heued and berd yblowe.
```
11135. *well strokyn in elde* = well stricken in years (Luc. i, 7). Cf. Bible Word-Book, p. 461, and note to l. 1617.

11141-2. Cf. the French:

Puis se uunt entreferir
Les uassals par grant hair :
Des healmes fult le feu saillir,
Les uals fult les coups retentir.
Le sanc lur rait an ual lur pez, etc.

_Gevyn_ : _todynnon_ is, of course, no rhyme, but _todynnon_ is very queer in itself. The use of _all to_ = all together, does not begin before the sixteenth century. See Bible Word-Book, s. v. _all to_, and Skeat's Note to William, l. 3884. _Torevyn_ would rhyme, but the _vales_ (valleys) cannot be said to have been riven asunder by the echo of the blows. Perhaps the two lines ran originally thus:

_Smarte strokys togedur þey gevyn_,
That the _mayles_ all torevyn,

and were followed by two lines in which the echo of the valleys was mentioned (cf. ll. 11779-80):

_Suche strokys gevyn þe knyghtys stowte_,
That _þe valess dynnon_ all abowte;

or (cf. Guy, in the Caius MS., p. 177):

_The erthe dynued all abowte_
Of her _strokys herd and stowte)_
_The valess dynnon_ all abowte
Of her _strokiis herd and stowte_;

which lines were omitted by a mistake after _valess_ and _dynnon_ had been introduced into a preceding line. I give this, of course, as a mere guess, and every one is welcome to propose a more satisfactory explanation or emendation.

11148. _yf_. See the note to ll. 5115-16.

11154. _wyde whare_. See note to l. 8222.

11170. _Arste_. See note to ll. 8212-13.

11181. The scribe has spoiled the rhyme by introducing the Southern _o_ for the Northern _y_ (i). Cf. note to l. 3108.

11200. _dyght_. See note to l. 4350.

11287. Cf. the French:

_Al hus de la salere sunt descendu_:
_Serjanz i sunt encontre corsz,
Lur lances receiuent e lur esuz_,
_Les cheualers aunciente sus_.

The words in Italics confirm my emendation of the odd words of the MS.

11310. _recetted_, received; cf. N.E. _to receipt_. O.F. _recetter_:

_Pur Gui de Warewik, quil tant ama_,
_Ke en sun chastel le recetta_
_Apres la mort le duc Otun._

The word is wanting in Stratmann, and quoted only from this passage in Halliwell.
NOTES, LINES 11314—11408.

11314. It is perhaps better to read (against the MS.) ofstande = astande in the corresponding passage of the Auchinleck MS. (Reinbroun, 876-7):

And made vs fle out of that londe
And in pis contre we beh astande.

We were ofstande, 'we dwelt.' The French runs thus:

De la terre puis enfuimes,
En cest pais ici uenimes.

11315. MS. eluysche. The mistake was occasioned by l. 11317.

11320. svorde, that is required by the rhyme instead of swyrde, occurs in l. 3711, rhyming with borde.

11324. vnryde. See note to l. 1647.

11340. Not very clear. The French is to the following effect:

Compaignous fumes, bien le conuz:
A li esteit tut nostre refuz.
Compainons fumes en Alemaigne:
Souent demenames riche compaine.

But our text seems to mean: 'to him I would go even from a distance,' which reminds one of Hávamál, 34:

Afhvarf mikit er til ilz vinar,
þótt á brauto búi;
enn til góðs vinar liggja gagnvegir,
þót hann sé fírr farinn.

11382. wonde. See the note to l. 3872.

11393. All maner flowrys, 'flowers of every kind'; cf. l. 11421, and all maner vessels of ivory, Revelation xviii, 12 (Bible Word-Book, s. v. manner). Compare the German 'aller art blumen,' 'aller hand blumen.' All (no, etc.) maner was originally a genitive as all (no) kyn is = alles (nones) kynnes, etc.

11399—11408. I will give the whole passage in French, since our text has several difficulties which I am unable to remove. It seems that corall in l. 11399 is a mistake for crystal:

Les meseres sunt de crestal
Entailles de fin amail,
Les cheuerons dreit de cipres,
Ki douz flor iettoient ades.
Les trefes erent de fin corail
Ensemble roinz de metal.
El frunt amunt un charbucle estoit,
Ke tote le ille elluminout.
Le pomels, ke erent en sum,
Entaillez erent tut enuirun.
Li uns er taphir de un sardeine,
Li autres erent adirmaude fine.
Enuirun ezt enclos li paleis
De un auncien mur sarazineis.
Tut entur ezt bataille
De diuerse flurs entaille.
11406. Perhaps the translator has kept the French adjective. That the plural pe vallys, though repeated in l. 11409, is not original, seems to be proved by *Hyt* in l. 11407. Perhaps:

Wythynne a walle sarazyneys?

11417-18. The French runs thus:

Rainbrun mult se enmerueilla
De la meruaille, ke il esguarda.
Leve passer pas ne osa.
De sun espec le gue tasta.

Perhaps in our text two lines are omitted between ll. 11417 and 11418 with the same rhyme, e. g.:

Of pe mervayle in pe place,
And he dorste noght in pat case, etc.?

11420. Yf *pat*. See note to ll. 5115-16.

11421. *no maner grownde*. See note to l. 11333.

11428. *wonde*. See note to l. 3872.

11441. *he hym dyght*. See note to l. 4350.

11444. *calle*, address? The French:

Home uiuant ni ad troue.


11457. *so dere*. See note to l. 1343.

11472. *Men* = ‘one’; cf. *he* in the following lines. The French has *home*.

11488. *grylle* must, of course, be a substantive here. Halliwell, who cites it only from this passage (it is wanting in Stratmann), explains it by ‘guile, deceit.’ But that cannot be right, since *quentys* is deceit. The French does not help:

Home en cest ylle ne entra
Ne lames entrer ne porra,
Si li sires nel amenast,
Ou par sun congie ni entrast.

The adjective *grylle* (cf. 11926), *grille* is ‘stern, cruel, horrible, hideous, severe,’ and the like. I therefore suppose the substantive in our passage means ‘cruelty,’ ‘fierceness.’

11490. The translator has mistaken the French. See the preceding note.

11501. MS. *he*. But cf. the French:

Ainz ke del paleis fussums issi,
Tuz *noz* estres auerez (*sic!*) veu.

11529. *He* can be defended, as the translator when writing this line may have thought of Reynbrown alone. But perhaps it is only a fault of a scribe instead of *pey*. Cf. especially l. 11528.

11538. *my preson to breke*. Cf. note to l. 5950.
NOTES, LINES 11546—11714. 455

11546. dy3t. Cf. note to l. 4350.
11549. to seems to be ‘too, also’; cf. note to l. 10637. Or is it here the preposition?
11557. The French has no such exaggeration:

Vn coup en haut li dona,
Ke jus a la terre le agrauenta.

11589. so dere. See note to l. 1343.
11590. MS. hoole and sere. Halliwell, in his Dictionary, s. v. Sere (3), citing this passage, suggests ‘safe’ as the signification of sere. But I make no doubt that here s or rather f stands for f. Cf. serva in the Paris MS. and in Tyrwhitt’s Text of C. T. Prol., 14, instead of ferne, which, by the bye, cannot mean ‘old’ as Morris now explains it. See also l. 4626.

11637. bedene. See note to l. 2408.
11648. Into Ynglond warde. Mätzner, Gramm., II, 329, only cites in toward, not into . . . ward, and even that only from Layamon. Perhaps the scribe had To Ynglond warde before him, but, copying negligently, he wrote Into Ynglond, and, perceiving his error, added warde over the line, though he forgot to expunge In.

11659. The French runs thus:

Heraud ad a un homme demande:
‘Ki cel pais ad ici destruit?’
E il erraument li ad dit,
Ke li duc Milon li pruz, li biers,
Qui mult est orguillus e fiers
Vn son conte ad guerree,
Par eco qu’il vert uers li irez.
Ne li remist de terre plein pe
Fors un chastel, qu’il out ferme
Sur une roche, ke haute esteit:
La dedeins se defendeit.
Mes venux li est un soudeer,
De estrange terre un cheualer, etc.

One might be inclined to think that two lines corresponding with those printed in Italics are omitted in our text; but l. 11663 seems to prove that the translator, misunderstanding the whole passage, thought that it was Duke Mylon that lost everything except a single castle.

11692. wynde. See note to l. 3872.
11710. To hym he wolde. See note to ll. 855-6.
11714. The todur must be Asslake, who, however, comes down the hill, not toward the hill. Cf. the French:

Rainbrun mult grant air i ua,
E cil de la guarde avala.

There are several ways in which the sense required may be got: e. g. by reading towarde hym fro the hylle. But the best emendation seems
to be to alter *towarde* to *frowarde*, the now obsolete reverse of *towarde*. Mätzner's Gramm., II², 330, gives examples of the prepositional use of *framward* and *fraward* from Layamon and Robert of Gloucester; but cf. also Ormulum, 4672-3:

\[
\text{pa turmesst tu } \text{be} \text{ framward} \text{ godd}
\]
\[
\text{Annd toward eorþlic ahhte.}
\]

ib. 6607:
\[
\text{All turmedd framward Criste;}
\]

ib. 14199-200:
\[
\text{Fraward te defless wille}
\]
\[
\text{Annd toward hire laferrd Crist;}
\]

e tc. But that the word had not yet got out of use in the fifteenth century is proved by Torrent of Portugal, ed. Halliwell, 953-5:

\[
\text{Loo come ther folkes hym ageyne}
\]
\[
\text{Fast folloyng with cart and wayne}
\]
\[
\text{Froward the sytte.}
\]

11721. MS. helme. But the plural is required; cf. *scheldys* and the French:

\[
\text{Grant coups fierent as healmes clers.}
\]


11761. *lyttill*. See note to l. 9814.


11786. *so faste*. See note to l. 1343.

11790. *mysfare* = O.E. *misfaran* means to fare ill (cf. 1118), but also to behave ill: e. g. Gen. and Ex., 1911:

\[
\text{If he sag hisre breþer misfaren.}
\]

But in our passage the word seems to be used as a transitive verb in the sense of the Icel. *misfara með eina*, to treat amiss, outrage.

On comparing the French, however:

\[
\text{Des ois comence a plorer}
\]
\[
\text{Del grant damage, ke serreit,}
\]
\[
\text{Si a nul de eus mesaueneit}
\]

we scarcely can help questioning the correctness of our passage. Perhaps one may suggest:

\[
\text{Yf eþer schulde of them mysfare.}
\]

11803. *old hore*, 'old gray-headed man'; cf. l. 11089.

11815. *in what maner of wyse*. See note to l. 4346.

11816. *faytysse*. See note to l. 3204.

11821. *do wey þy fure*. See note to l. 3007.


11830. *vyth that*. See note to l. 10314.

11852. *Te seke my fadur, where he*. See note to ll. 1497-8.

11862. *hys oper wede*. See note to l. 559.


11871. *where = were*, war. See note to l. 5416. But it is possible that the scribe, after the omission of *of*, gave the word the *h* only
because he mistook _no were_ for _nowhere_. That _of_ must be inserted is shown by the French:

Vnc noi parle _de guerre_,  
Ou ieo ne alassee mon piere quere.

11926. _grylle_. See note to l. 11488.
11929. _pere he stode_. See note to l. 1535.
11930. _be gode_ refers to _Harrowdys_. See note to l. 687.
11946. _Into Ynglondé_, viz. to go. See note to ll. 855-6, and especially l. 7672.

11956-7. In these lines the king alone is understood as the subject. But I think it is not absolutely necessary to alter _They_ in l. 11955 to _He_. Cf., however, the French:

Le rei encontre eus est ale  
Od li le meulz de la cite.  
Mult duement les _ad honure_  
E del suen assez done, _etc._

11960. _soyorned_. See note to l. 133.

11963. One might expect _Of hys men Raynbrown toke_. Cf. the French:

_Rainbrun prent de ses hommes feute._

11973. _names sevyn_. See note to l. 2682. Add to the examples quoted there, Isumbras in the Caius MS., 3, 8-9:

_On Jesu Cryst þouȝte he nouȝt_  
Ne on his _names sevyn_.

11976. _Amen, amen, for charyte_, a very common conclusion. In the Auchinleck MS. the end of Reinbroun is wanting, but Guy ends thus (l. 10479):

_Amen, par charite;_

Copland's version: _Amen, amen, for charitie;_

The Land of Cokaygne, 190:

_Amen, per seinte Charite;_

cf. Sir Perceval, ed. Halliwell; _The Erle of Tolouse_ (Ritson, III, 144); _The Squyere of Lowe Degre_ (ib. 192); _Ywain and Gaw._ (ib. I, 169); _Tryamoure_, ed. Halliwell, etc. In _Amis and Amiloun_ (Weber, II, 473), _Amen for charyte_ is added by the scribe. Cf. notes to ll. 471 and 7154.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>armynw, 8425</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arsometryck, 68</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arste, in a comparative sense, 8212</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>article omitted, 9162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arype, strong verb, 4244</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as, there as, where, 1144-5; as and,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as if, 10687; as rathe, 1343; as that, as</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as if, where, 4062</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>as- = es-, 3880</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aspye, spy, to espy, 3880</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>at one, at oon, attone, 5308</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>auentere, 3238</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ay = e, 3070</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ayle to be often restored for -ell,</td>
<td>857</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amen for charyte at the end of poems, 11976</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amonge, adv., 650, 2501</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amouere, pur a, 9178</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anacolutha, 58-9, 1187-9, 2352, 2377-9, 6699-700, 7057-8, 7409, 10586-7, 10597, 10782, 10938</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and for a, 6352</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anonur, on other, 7299</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>anythynge, adv., 5985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aplyght, 8541</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ðaðo svorv, 1704</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>aposiopesis, 10620</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>apposition without inflexion, 7921,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>placed after the word governing the</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>possessive genitive to which it belongs,</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>687</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>armewre, 10143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b, corrupted from or to m, 2408</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bad, prayed, 5782</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barrarde and Berrardyne, 9529</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>batayle, rhymed, not batell, 857</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be for but, 7853</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be drawe, 4147</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be knowe, confess, 10837</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be lent, 778</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>be then (that), 6447</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>becalle, 7596</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bede and bidde confounded, 2703</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bedene, 2408</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begle, bigly, 2872</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>begoune, golde b., 8055</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behet, behetynge, 169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>behyght, to promise, 5478</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>belappe, 7464</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>beloken, golde b., 8055</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bere, to strike, 1944</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL NOTES.

besechen = besoęt, 5367
besemyde, 10791
besyn, 8995
beste, wyth the b., 1496
blame, wythoue bl., 3069
blys, so haue y bl., 615
bordys, jousting, 1285
borowe, to save, 8474
bothe miswritten for but, 8701
bothe . . . and, referring to more than two substantives, 10996
boure, 2674
braoun, brawn, 2497-8
brayde, geue a hr., 9198; cf. 10303
brayfon, fool, 10337
bredde, bread, in phrases, 2990, 3695-6
breke my preson, 11538
broke, to rejoice in, 1747
browe, be my hr., 974
bryghte in howre, 2674
care, doubt, 8138
carpe, to speak, to fight, 3322
change of construction, 2324-7; of the persons addressed, 1753, 2355, 5591; from indirect speech to direct, 1785; of number, 100, 2753-5, 6994-5
charyte (for, pur), 471
chauence, so haue y ch., 615
chesowne, 576, 4314
colde, dead, 1149
comyne belle, 2187
confusion of two constructions, 1301-3, 4019-21, 7993-4
conjunctions repeated, 6840, 10211-12
Constantyne the nobel, 2726
construction karē oïνeη, 100, 122, 1051, 2025-6, 5625
contractions in the second pers. sing. of weak preterits, 4657
corde, to accord, 576
cordement, accord, agreement, 576
corse, be my c., 3344
Constantyne, 2726, 5361
covenande, wyth (on) that c., 2601
couyre, to recover, 576
counsaye and counsell rhymed, 857
cowteraye, to encounter, 576
crowne, be my cr., 974
croyse, cross, to be restored, 9658
crye, 2850
d omitted in growne, 5527
day, be thys d., 1581
de- or di- dropped, 576
defaute, withowte d., 4006
defendaunt, me, hym d., 1421
delay, wythoue d., 1902
delyuwr, to despatch, 10140
dere, dearly, 1451
derey, 1110
dest, didst, 4657
dexyull, the d. yow honge, 3430
di- dropped, 576
dialect of the poet more Northern than that of the scribe, 3108
direct speech abruptly after indirect, 1785
do voy, 3097
donye, to din, 11780
dowte, wythoue d., 3996
drawe = drawe wyth horsy s., 227
drawe, be dr., 4147
drede, wythoue dr., 3739
dredes, 3739
dromande mistakenly for dromedarie, 5805
dyght, to prepare, to carry, to go, 4350
e = y, 132
e dropped in the beginning of words, 576
elde, age, 11135
-ell in the place of -aye, -eyle, 857
ellipsis of conjunctions after than (then), 992; of verbs denoting movement, 855-6
elliptical sentences expressing a wish, 7639-40
em- omitted, 576
empere for emperere, 4205
emperere, 4802
emperice, empress, 4205
emperowre, 4802
en- omitted, 576
ende, on e., 1549
-end, partic. pres. in -e, 8391
endurs day, 2828
enuye, at, of, to, vnp, 600
ermyne, 8425
errande, purpose, wish, object, 5995
ethical dative, 385, 2297, 3872
etyth n-euer hredde, 2990; cf. 3695-6
euer amonge, 650
eye = e, 3070, 7730
eye, lohe, see, grete, wepe wyth e., 367

f mistaken for f, 11590
f for th, 346
fabull, wythowte f., 3254
faint, 3204
fame, wythowte f., 108
fame = defame, 576, 8229
fan, pret. of fyne, 4244
fant stone, 8411
fantyse, 3204
fare, do way (let be) by f., 3097
fay, faye, per (par) ma f., be my f., 2954
fayle, wythowte (saws) f., 465
faynyte, 3204
fayre = fare, 3070
febull grace, 1216
felowerde ? 1667
fendes sone, 10010
fenne, fine, 11068
fere, hole and f., 4626
feyne, sb., 3273
figurative superlatives, 4708
flome, 8712
flexionless genitives, 503
flom, 8712
flowre, bere, haue pe f., 77
flowres corrupted to foules, 4264
flum, 8712
fon, pret. of fyne, 4244

fonde, to try; to hasten; found, 1372
for lefe nor lothe, 7225
force = aforce, 576
forhoryd, 11089
forpenke, -ynke, 984
forys, furrows, 1992
fote as a plural, 598
fote hole, 1049
French words in the Ormulum, 9529
fresch, vigorous, quick, 8078
frowarde, reverse of towarde, 11714
furlong way, etc., 2810
fyne, adv., 9086

gemang, on g., 2301
genitives, flexionless g., 503, 688
geserne, 3351
geth, goes, used after Layamon, 11075
gisarme, giserne, 3351
glase, to glide, 5067
go, cf. goo
god of hevyn, 5671; g. the see, 163; g. saue the, 1223-4, cf. 615; so g. me helpe, rede, schylde, spede, etc., 615
gode spede, 1876

God's seven names, 2682, 11973
golde begone, 8055
golde beloken, 8055
goo, so mote y g., 2572; for hym schall g. no rawsome, etc., 954; maydyn g., 7020; or y g., 8239
grace, luck, 1216, 4979
grete supplanted by wepe, 2534
grete wyth eyen, 367
grete, sorrow, 4731
greyne, scarlet in g., 8996
grylle, 11488
guess(-ed), in another gu. manner, 4346
Gye, 365
gynne = ingyne, engine, 576
Gyowne, 365
gysarme, 3351
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL NOTES.

h, parasitical, 2303
halfen dele, 5916, 7173
hande, be my h., 3121
hardelye, -dlye, 2691
hate, quickly, 1049
hate, to call, to be called, 169
hatte, hat, be my h., 2884
hatte, am called, 169
have away, 4758
hedde, head, be my h., 974; cor-
rupied from heued, 1021
heer, army, 8529
hefsed, 9459
hele, also have y hele, etc., 615
helpe, so god (Mahownde, etc.) me
h., 615
het, hete, hette, 169
heued to be restored for hedde,
1021
heyghe, 169
heyle = hele, 3070
hight, highte, 169
hode, be my h., 2884
hole and fere, 4626
hole and sounde, 968
honge, the dewyll yow h., 3430
houte, quickly, 1049
hote, to call, to be called, 169
howe, to dwell, to remain, 6338
hyght, hyghte, 169
hyrn, yede hym, etc., 385
hys mistakenly doubled, 1627
hyt omitted, 1474, 2091

i-, cf. y-
in, on account of, 8449
in . . . in(we), 10382-3
in oon, 10738
in peyne, on pain, 10146
in present, as a present, 7904
in- omitted, 576
indirect speech abruptly followed
by direct, 1785
interruptions of the narrative by
the narrator asking for something
to drink, 5859-60

into . . . warde ? 11648
it omitted, 1474, 2091

kepe, to care for, to pay regard to,
to have a mind, 349, 5950, 6727,
8334, 10224; to receive, en-
counter, 4403
kin, alter h. maner, 4346
knowe, be k., to confess, 10837
kyn, all kyns wyse, 4346
kynd, no maner k., 4346

l and f mistaken for each other, 9427
lady, as an exclamation, 5671
lasse, lessen, 4776
late to be restored for lette, 1363
lay, be my l., 2953
laye, pere hyl l., etc., 1477
laye, to conceal, 2994
layne, wythouete l., 2994
lede, nation, country, 11026
ledys, men, people, 11026
lefe, for l. nor lothe, 7225
lende, to land, to arrive, to stay, 778
lent, be lent, 778
lere and lerne, confounded, 6352
les, lost, 11024
less of ? 1846
lesse, to deliver, 10112
lesse, lesynge, wythouet l., 550
lesse, lessen, 4776
let be, 3097
lett, lettynge, delay, 175
leuer, me and y had l., 5077
-lily, adverbs in -lily, 3276
‘litotetical’ use of some dele, etc.,
9814
londe, in l., 5841
lofte bed, 9459
loke wyth eye, 367
lorde, father, 164
lorde, as an exclamation, 5671
lothe, for lefe nor l., 7225
love for leue, live, 10730
love dere, 1451
loude and (or) stytle, 792
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL NOTES.

lye for lyue, 2268

m corrupted to or from b, 2408
manere, in m., 5521; on (in) all m., 1228; on (in) hys (etc.) m., 779; all m. floures, 11393; m. of (a) wyse, no m. weye, what skynnes m., another guess(ed) manner, etc., 4346
mantelye, 3276
marshauns, etc., 8485
mare, wythowten m., 719
marke, dark, 8462
may, ye y m., 983; m. no more, 6947
maydyn gone, 7020
men, one, followed by he, 11472
mende, so god me m., 615
meste, wyth the m., 1496
melt, measured, 6954
mistakes of the translator, 39, 5361, 5805, 6094, 6969-72, 7905, 11490, 11659, etc.
mo, wythowten mo, 719
moest = mest, 10593
more, wythowten m., 719
mossel, morsel, 2144
mote, so mote y goo, etc., 2572
movement, verbs denoting m. omitted in the infinitive and participle past, 855-6
mowntance of a myle, 2810
mowntance, 5229-30
mowthe, spake wyth m., 367
myle, used to denote time, 2810
mynte, blow, to aim a blow, 6579
mysfalle, 992

n transferred to the following word, 612
n omitted by the scribe, 843
names, God’s seven n., 2682, 11973
Nan, 612
names, arms, 612
nasel, 10175
nay, wythowten n., 3054
Ned, 612
negative omitted, 1301-3

Nell, 612
neme, uncle, 612
nende, end, 612
nera, never, 10550
newen, even(ing), 612
newe, to become new, 237
newt, 612
nickname, 612
nime, to appoint, 10165
no, wythowten no, 3054
nodur, other, 612
noke, oak, 612
NoL, 612
nolle, be my n., 974, 5544
nominative instead of an accusative after but, 889-90; as an apposition, 2377-9
none, noon, or n., 5928
nones, once, 612
nore = ore, mercy, 612
nost, host, 612
not = ne wot, 6760
nothing, other, 612
nowne, own, 612
noye, to annoy, 576
number, change of n., 100, 2753-5, 6994-5
nye, eye, 612; be my n., 3252

odur, cf. other
of omitted after duke, 633; after halfen dele, fylle, plente, smalle, etc., 7173; lose of? 1846; of the Almayns, some Germans, 1961; therof thought he no symne, 3786; of of, off of, 2906; of for on, 5334
ofstaide, 11314
oght, adv., 7799
oghte, me o. and ye o., 7798
omission of negatives, 1301-3; of a principal sentence, 2645, 4921-4; of to loke, etc., 5115-16
on for of, 5334; on ende, 1549; on gemang, 2301; on blade renne, 5056; on . . . on, 2906
one, cf. oon
oon, on, 389
oon to be changed to woon, 10329-32
oon, one after a, 7447; after than (then), as, so, 9039; oon of the two (tweye), used conjunctionally (= either), 1925-6
or y goo, etc., 8239
Orrm and Orrmin, 9529
Orrm employs a few French words, 9529
os, as, 4602
ote, wythowe o., etc., 10862
other, used pleonastically, 559
other, other's ?, 4716
oure, o'er, 4555
partitive use of of?, 1961
paryle to be restored for parelle, 7217
pase, a gode (grete) p., 1876
poytrelle, 9351
peyre, to impair, 576
plyght, preterit, 4647
popular etymology, 5544
Pore = Porus, 7923
precessyown, procession, 10376
prepositions in compounds dropped or mutilated, 576
present tense in subordinate clauses after a preterit in the principal sentence, 3332
presente, adv., 6364
preue of, 465-6
principal sentence omitted, 2645, 4921-4
pronouns as subjects omitted when preceding in the dative or accusative, 10
pronouns doubled, 2893-4
pryson, prisoner, 2507
pur charyte, 471
quede, devil, 8214
rage, y am rage ? 3474
reame, realm, 10881
recette, to receive, 11310
record, take r., 9226
redde, sb., 1199—1200, 4410
rede, to tell = rede, to read = rede, to advise, 313; so god me r., 7187
redy way, 10078
relative, a r. clause instead of a conditional one, 669-70
remlaunt, remlet, remling, 9792
remne on blode, 5056
repetition of pronouns, 2893-4; of conjunctions, 6840, 10211-12
repul, to ripple, 9617
reson, shewyd his r., 1862
reste, also so god geue yow r., 615; to r. goon, 855-6
rhyme, 820, 857, 1021, 1104, 1126, 1363, 1426, 1468, 1992, 2497-8, 2507, 2534, 3220, 3332, 3443, 3988, 4555, 5325, 6485, 6737, 7174, 8391, 8733, 8930, 9031-2, 10253-4, 10347, 10531, 10593, 10881, 11075, 11181, 11320
Romans, 8486
rone, corrupted from iorne? 5229-30
ryde = vryde, 1647
rynge, in a collective sense, 2772
rynges, rings of mail, 10680
ryue = aryue, 576; strong verb, 4244
s for f, 11590
s for l, 9427
sure, sorry, 3019
saue, god s. the, 1223-4
sauns fayle, 465
saute = asaute, 576
say = assay, essay, 576
sayle, to assail, 576
scape, to escape, 576
scarlet in greyne, 8996
schake, to move quickly, 5512
schelthys, men with shields, 1770
schete, to shoot, intransitive, 10347
schone, wynne my (etc.) sch., 436
schowe to be restored for schewe, 807
schowre, fight, attack, 9206
schust, shouldst, 4657
schyder ? 1468
seowmfyte, 576
seche, to visit, to come, 7151, 7676, 8394
seche for schede, 7291
see, god the s., 163; s. wyth eye (sight), 367
sege = assege, 576
sekrylge, 1684
seler for soler, 4059
sende af tyr hym wyth an erle, 2782-3
separation of words belonging together, 503, 687, 2641, 6327, 6796
serue, deserves, 576
seven, to be at seven(s) and seven(s), 5308
sevyn nameys of God, 2682, 11973
sevyn yere, 8667
seyn Charyte, 7154
shortness of expression, 4501, 4640, 8064, 8127-8
sittc, to last, 7100
six, cf. seven
skynnes, on what sk. maner, 4346
slowe, inorganic participle, 4216
smalle = smalle of, 7483
smyte, to rush, to fall, 1196; to study? 10215-6
so, in a relative sense, 615, 10552
so faste (dere, moche, etc.), 1343
soler, sollar, 4059
some = Danish som, 3187
some dele, a great deal, 9814
sonde, message, dish, present, mercy, 10477
song, lamentation, 5424
sotelte, 2496
soowode, hole and s., 968
special, particular friend, 4703
specyalte, friendship, 4703
spede, (a) gode sp., 1876
spede, so god me sp., 615

speke, to fight, 6048; sp. wyth mowthe, 367
sporys, spurs, 1992
ss = rs, 2144
stadde, bestead, 8028
stande, to last, 7100; there he stode, etc., 1535
St Charity, 7154
stere, strong, stout? 662
steype, 7730
store = estore and restore, 576
store, to stir, 3869
stownde, in a (lytull) st., 1049
storre, time? 9433
strauge corrupted to stronge, 1493
strauwe brede, 8149
strehyn in elde, 11135
stronge corrupted from strauge, 1493
strove, to destroy, 576
stryfe, strife, 346
stryke, to move, 1617
stryve, to strive, 346, 4244
stylle, loivede and (or) st., 792
subject omitted, 10, 2966
superlatives, figurative s., 4708
succage, to assuage, 576
sweete and scote, 10600
sword required by the rhyme, 11320
sycck, trap, 7580
sycyre, neck, be my s., 3598
sight, sighed, 2311
sündir, constructio, kata σ., 100, 122, 1051, 2025-6, 5625
synge, to lament, 5424

t transferred to the following word, 658
take, to appoint, 5742
tale, be t., 2043; gene no t., 8143
tame = attame, entame, 576, 10290
tary, to tarry, 10104
telle, cf. tolde
th- for wh-, 6761
thame, them, 6737
than (then), than that, than if, 992
INDEX TO THE PRINCIPAL NOTES.

than (then), that was th., 1293
par me or y par, 6770
that doubled, 6295, 10211-12; be
that, 6447; that as a dative,
5462; th added to as, 4062;
that he who, that his whose, etc.,
181-2; that was than (then, þe),
1293
þe, they? 1849
the, so mote y the, 615
the which, 8638
thedur, to where, 9341
then, cf. than
then, be then, 6447
thenke and thynke confounded, 984;
therof thought he no synne, 3786
there as, where, 1144-5
þere hyt laye, etc., 1477; þere he
stode, etc., 1535
they, referring to a singular person,
comprises the person’s com-
panions, etc., 5672
thon and ye, 356; in addressing
the reader or hearer, 5478
thrate, preterit of þrete, 8132
through, coffin, 10707
throwe, time, 1655
þryste, thirst, 6682
þrywe, so muste y th., etc., 615
þycke, crowded, numerous, 3329
þyckfolde, numerous, 3329
þþ for wþ', 4866
to, preposition and conjunction
at the same time? 8233-4; to, too,
also, 10637; to before infinitives
governed by auxiliary verbs
which are generally used with-
out it, 1925-6
todur, 658
toldre, in number, 1770; considered,
3288; fixed, determined on,
5327; received, 8584; wele of
tolde, 2220
ton, the t., 658
toschyder? 1468
tother, 658
towne, in t., 5841

transition, abrupt tr. from indirect
speech to direct, 1785; from
one’s words to another’s, 5717
transycle rhymed, not travell, 857
tresorye, 7911
tresoure, 8733
trewage, 3512
trowthe, faith, religion, 2933
trowþe, trusty, 4486
two, to be at two, 5308
tyne, 2564, 6666
tyþynge, 2022
evylle, to avail, 3577
verament, 9992
verraye, 9992
verre = veire, 1378
verylye, 9992
vnderȝete, vndurȝate, 8231
vnduryede, yode, 8231
vnryde, 1647
epbrayde, 10303
w, parasitical, 3422, 7927
ware, were, 4037
war(re) and wyse, 70
warse, cf. worre
was as a plural, 253
way, away, 3097
wele and (or a)jyne, 9086
wepe wyth eyen, 367
wepe supplants grete, 2534
wes, was, 10531
weȝt, whit, 419
wh- = h-, 3422
wh- = w-, 5416
whayle, hale, whole, 3070, 3422,
5199
whether . . . or, in direct questions,
11454
who . . . but? 10135
whythore, 4775
whyte yblowe, 11129
whodur, whither, 8466
whome, home, 3422
wo am y and wo ys me, 1251

WARWICK.

30
wonne, one, 7927
woon, chance, plenty, etc., 10329
word = ord, 7927
wordys, fates, 1155
worre (worse), gete (have) the w.,
5214
wost, wouldst, 4657
wot (wote), y wot, 1948
wother, other, 7927
wrath, to injure, 1462
w^ mistaken for y', 4866
wrye where (where), 8222
wyt, whit, 419
wyll, y w. not but, 6271
wyn, better man drank never wyn,
4708
wynde, to go, 3872, 6334
wynne my (etc.) schone, 436
wyse, all kyns w., maner (of, a) w.,
etc., 4346
wyse and war, 70
wyte, to blame, 3974
wyth, towards, against, to, 1722;
by, 3766; sende w., 2782-3; wyth the beste (meste, etc.), 1496; wyth that (pan), 10314, 10870
wytturly, 1008
wyue, wife, 820; wyueys, maydenys, 4225
3 (y), parasitical, 60; dropped, 1538
y = j, 133
yare (cf. 3019) corrupted to yore,
1104
ye and thou, 356, 5478
yede, 60
yf, 3yf in elliptical sentences, 7639-40
yf y may, 983
yf, give, 1538
ylke corrupted from ylyke, 658
yode, 60
zolde, yield, 10215
yore, incorrect for yare, 1104
zorthe, earth, 60
yore, as a nominative, 4192
ys, am, are, 3194
zeugma, 3531-2, 6184
zeugna, 3531-2, 6184
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

Text: 352. downe.
460. mee.
1021. no comma.
1298. bordys.
1348. blythe.
1512. cosyun).

Side-note: 1769. 2000

Text: 2091. sawe,
2824. bytterer, þen þe
3631. no comma.
3678. what for whyt
3762. fyght.
4480. sarsyus
6646. wey
7081. thys for thy
7657. Almayne,
8064. anoþ
8494. ownþ
9194. londe for lorde
9388. manþ
9408. wey
9581. say
9913. to Whytesande

Side-note: 9934. leaf 225a

Text: 10166. nonmenþ,
10267. dryue,
10275. then for they

Text: 10751. wythowtenþ
10926. fote for foþe
11163. men for me
11287. anon)
11547. no comma.
11556. eluysch

Notes: 669-70. Cf. Isumbras in the Naples MS.:
They, þat hym seke wyth mylde
mode, Þer lyues fode send wylle he,
1770. Cf. Tennyson’s Enid 1388:
Came riding with a hundred lances up.

Ibid. 1449:
And call‘d for flesh and wine to
feed his spears.
3097. Cf. Orpheo, ed. Laing, 188:
‘Do wey,’ quaþ he, ‘it schal be so.’
3695-6. Cf. Athelston (Reliquiæ
Antiquæ, II, 88), 15, 1-3:
Danne swoor þe kyng be cros and
roode:
‘Mete ne drink schal do me goode,
Tyll þat he be dedde.’
7447. Cf. Athelston (Rel. Ant.,
II, 98), 49, 11:
An hard doome now is þis on.
8127-8. Cf. the last lines of Ten-
nyson’s Enoch Arden:
And when they buried him the
little port
Had seldom seen a costlier funeral.